



*Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).*



## **Cisco MDS 9500 Series Hardware Installation Guide**

October 2008

### **Americas Headquarters**

Cisco Systems, Inc.  
170 West Tasman Drive  
San Jose, CA 95134-1706  
USA  
<http://www.cisco.com>  
Tel: 408 526-4000  
800 553-NETS (6387)  
Fax: 408 527-0883

Text Part Number: OL-17467-02

THE SPECIFICATIONS AND INFORMATION REGARDING THE PRODUCTS IN THIS MANUAL ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE. ALL STATEMENTS, INFORMATION, AND RECOMMENDATIONS IN THIS MANUAL ARE BELIEVED TO BE ACCURATE BUT ARE PRESENTED WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. USERS MUST TAKE FULL RESPONSIBILITY FOR THEIR APPLICATION OF ANY PRODUCTS.

THE SOFTWARE LICENSE AND LIMITED WARRANTY FOR THE ACCOMPANYING PRODUCT ARE SET FORTH IN THE INFORMATION PACKET THAT SHIPPED WITH THE PRODUCT AND ARE INCORPORATED HEREIN BY THIS REFERENCE. IF YOU ARE UNABLE TO LOCATE THE SOFTWARE LICENSE OR LIMITED WARRANTY, CONTACT YOUR CISCO REPRESENTATIVE FOR A COPY.

The following information is for FCC compliance of Class A devices: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio-frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case users will be required to correct the interference at their own expense.

The following information is for FCC compliance of Class B devices: The equipment described in this manual generates and may radiate radio-frequency energy. If it is not installed in accordance with Cisco's installation instructions, it may cause interference with radio and television reception. This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device in accordance with the specifications in part 15 of the FCC rules. These specifications are designed to provide reasonable protection against such interference in a residential installation. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

Modifying the equipment without Cisco's written authorization may result in the equipment no longer complying with FCC requirements for Class A or Class B digital devices. In that event, your right to use the equipment may be limited by FCC regulations, and you may be required to correct any interference to radio or television communications at your own expense.

You can determine whether your equipment is causing interference by turning it off. If the interference stops, it was probably caused by the Cisco equipment or one of its peripheral devices. If the equipment causes interference to radio or television reception, try to correct the interference by using one or more of the following measures:

- Turn the television or radio antenna until the interference stops.
- Move the equipment to one side or the other of the television or radio.
- Move the equipment farther away from the television or radio.
- Plug the equipment into an outlet that is on a different circuit from the television or radio. (That is, make certain the equipment and the television or radio are on circuits controlled by different circuit breakers or fuses.)

Modifications to this product not authorized by Cisco Systems, Inc. could void the FCC approval and negate your authority to operate the product.

The Cisco implementation of TCP header compression is an adaptation of a program developed by the University of California, Berkeley (UCB) as part of UCB's public domain version of the UNIX operating system. All rights reserved. Copyright © 1981, Regents of the University of California.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY OTHER WARRANTY HEREIN, ALL DOCUMENT FILES AND SOFTWARE OF THESE SUPPLIERS ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH ALL FAULTS. CISCO AND THE ABOVE-NAMED SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THOSE OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OR ARISING FROM A COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, OR TRADE PRACTICE.

IN NO EVENT SHALL CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS OR LOSS OR DAMAGE TO DATA ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THIS MANUAL, EVEN IF CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

CCDE, CCENT, Cisco Eos, Cisco Lumin, Cisco Nexus, Cisco StadiumVision, Cisco TelePresence, Cisco WebEx, the Cisco logo, DCE, and Welcome to the Human Network are trademarks; Changing the Way We Work, Live, Play, and Learn and Cisco Store are service marks; and Access Registrar, Aironet, AsyncOS, Bringing the Meeting To You, Catalyst, CCDA, CCDP, CCIE, CCIP, CCNA, CCNP, CCSP, CCVP, Cisco, the Cisco Certified Internetwork Expert logo, Cisco IOS, Cisco Press, Cisco Systems, Cisco Systems Capital, the Cisco Systems logo, Cisco Unity, Collaboration Without Limitation, EtherFast, EtherSwitch, Event Center, Fast Step, Follow Me Browsing, FormShare, GigaDrive, HomeLink, Internet Quotient, IOS, iPhone, iQuick Study, IronPort, the IronPort logo, LightStream, Linksys, MediaTone, MeetingPlace, MeetingPlace Chime Sound, MGX, Networkers, Networking Academy, Network Registrar, PCNow, PIX, PowerPanels, ProConnect, ScriptShare, SenderBase, SMARTnet, Spectrum Expert, StackWise, The Fastest Way to Increase Your Internet Quotient, TransPath, WebEx, and the WebEx logo are registered trademarks of Cisco Systems, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and certain other countries.

All other trademarks mentioned in this document or website are the property of their respective owners. The use of the word partner does not imply a partnership relationship between Cisco and any other company. (0809R)

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**



## **CONTENTS**

### **New and Changed Information** ix

#### **Preface** xv

Audience xv

Organization xv

Conventions xvi

Related Documentation xviii

Release Notes xviii

Compatibility Information xviii

Regulatory Compliance and Safety Information xviii

Hardware Installation xviii

Cisco Fabric Manager xix

Command-Line Interface xix

Intelligent Storage Networking Services Configuration Guides xix

Troubleshooting and Reference xix

Installation and Configuration Note xix

Obtaining Documentation, Obtaining Support, and Security Guidelines xx

---

## **CHAPTER 1**

### **Product Overview** 1-1

Chassis 1-2

Cisco MDS 9513 Director 1-3

Cisco MDS 9509 Director 1-6

Cisco MDS 9506 Director 1-7

Backplane and Clock Modules 1-8

Cisco MDS Fibre Channel Switch for IBM Blade Center 1-9

Power Supplies 1-9

Cisco MDS 9513 Power Supplies 1-10

Cisco MDS 9509 Power Supplies 1-12

Cisco MDS 9506 Power Supplies 1-15

Fan Modules 1-16

Supervisor Modules 1-16

Supervisor-2 Modules 1-17

Control and Management 1-18

Processor 1-18

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

Port Interfaces	1-18
LEDs on the Supervisor-2 Module	1-19
Supervisor-1 Modules	1-21
Control and Management	1-21
Crossbar Switching Fabric	1-22
Processor	1-22
Port Interfaces	1-22
LEDs on the Supervisor-1 Module	1-23
Crossbar Modules	1-25
Cisco MDS 9000 Series Module Compatibility	1-27
Port Index Availability	1-28
Switching Modules	1-32
48-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module	1-33
24-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module	1-33
4/44-port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized Fibre Channel Switching Module	1-33
48-Port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module	1-34
24-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module	1-35
12-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module	1-35
4-port 10-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module	1-36
LEDs on the Generation 2 Switching Modules	1-37
32-Port 2-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module	1-37
16-Port 2-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module	1-38
Switching Module Features	1-39
LEDs on the Generation 1 Switching Module	1-40
Services Modules	1-41
18/4-Port Multiservice Module	1-41
18/4-Port Multiservice Federal Information Processing Standards Module	1-42
LEDs on the 18/4-Port Multiservice Module	1-43
14/2-Port Multiprotocol Services Module	1-44
LEDs on the MPS-14/2 Module	1-45
IP Storage Services Modules	1-46
LEDs on IP Storage Services Modules	1-47
32-Port Fibre Channel Advanced Services Module	1-48
LEDs on the Fibre Channel Advanced Services Modules	1-49
32-Port Fibre Channel Storage Services Module	1-50
LEDs on the Storage Services Modules	1-51
Caching Services Module	1-52
LEDs on the Caching Services Module	1-54
Supported Transceivers	1-55

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

X2 Transceivers	1-55
Fibre Channel SFP Transceivers	1-56
Combination Fibre Channel/Gigabit Ethernet SFP Transceivers	1-56
CWDM Combination Fibre Channel/Gigabit Ethernet SFP Transceivers	1-56
Gigabit Ethernet SFP Transceivers	1-56
DWDM Fibre Channel SFP Transceivers	1-57

---

**CHAPTER 2**
**Installing the Cisco MDS 9500 Series 2-1**

Preinstallation	2-2
Installation Options	2-2
Installation Guidelines	2-3
Required Equipment	2-5
Unpacking and Inspecting the Switch	2-5
Installing the Chassis in a Cabinet or Rack	2-6
Installing the Cisco MDS 9513 Director in a Rack	2-7
Installing the Cisco MDS 9509 Director in a Rack	2-11
Installing the Cisco MDS 9506 Director in a Rack	2-15
System Grounding	2-17
Proper Grounding Practices	2-17
Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage	2-19
Establishing the System Ground	2-22
Required Tools and Equipment	2-22
Grounding the Chassis	2-23
Starting Up the Switch	2-28
Connecting the Power Supplies	2-28
Providing Power to an AC Power Supply for the Cisco MDS 9513 Director	2-29
Providing Power to an AC Power Supply for the Cisco MDS 9509 and Cisco MDS 9506 Directors	2-30
Providing Power to a DC Power Supply in the Cisco MDS 9509 Director	2-33
Providing Power to a DC Power Supply in the Cisco MDS 9506 Director	2-34
Powering Up the Switch and Verifying Component Installation	2-36
Removing, Installing, and Verifying Supervisor, Switching, and Services Modules	2-38
Removing Supervisor Modules	2-39
Installing Supervisor Modules	2-40
Removing a Caching Services Module	2-44
Removing Other Switching and Services Modules	2-45
Installing a Switching or Services Module, Including Caching Services Modules	2-45
Verifying Installation of Supervisor, Switching, and Services Modules	2-46
Removing and Installing a Crossbar Module	2-47

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

Maintaining a Caching Services Module	<b>2-50</b>
Maintaining the Batteries on the Caching Services Module	<b>2-50</b>
Maintaining the Disk Drives on the Caching Services Module	<b>2-51</b>
Removing and Installing a Power Supply or PEM	<b>2-51</b>
Removing and Installing the Power Supplies on the Cisco MDS 9513 Director	<b>2-52</b>
Removing an AC Power Supply from the Cisco MDS 9513 Director	<b>2-52</b>
Installing an AC Power Supply in the Cisco MDS 9513 Director	<b>2-54</b>
Removing an AC Power Supply from the Cisco MDS 9509 Director	<b>2-56</b>
Installing an AC Power Supply in the Cisco MDS 9509 Director	<b>2-57</b>
Removing a DC Power Supply from the Cisco MDS 9509 Director	<b>2-61</b>
Installing a DC Power Supply in the Cisco MDS 9509 Director	<b>2-62</b>
Removing and Installing the PEMs on the Cisco MDS 9506 Director	<b>2-64</b>
Removing an AC PEM	<b>2-64</b>
Removing a DC PEM	<b>2-64</b>
Installing an AC PEM	<b>2-66</b>
Installing a DC PEM	<b>2-66</b>
Removing an AC or DC Power Supply from the Cisco MDS 9506 Director	<b>2-67</b>
Installing an AC or DC Power Supply in the Cisco MDS 9506 Director	<b>2-67</b>
Removing and Installing Fan Modules	<b>2-68</b>
Removing a Front Fan Module on the Cisco MDS 9513 Director	<b>2-69</b>
Installing a Front Fan Module on the Cisco MDS 9513 Director	<b>2-70</b>
Removing the Crossbar Module Fan Tray	<b>2-71</b>
Installing the Crossbar Module Fan Tray	<b>2-72</b>
Removing a Front Fan Module on the Cisco MDS 9509 Director	<b>2-73</b>
Installing a Front Fan Module on the Cisco MDS 9509 Director	<b>2-73</b>
Removing a Front Fan Module on the Cisco MDS 9506 Director	<b>2-74</b>
Installing a Front Fan Module on the Cisco MDS 9506 Director	<b>2-74</b>
Removing and Installing CompactFlash Cards	<b>2-75</b>
Removing a CompactFlash Card	<b>2-75</b>
Installing a CompactFlash Card	<b>2-76</b>
Removing and Installing Clock Modules	<b>2-76</b>
Removing a Clock Module from the Cisco MDS 9513 Director	<b>2-77</b>
Installing a Clock Module into the Cisco MDS 9513 Director	<b>2-79</b>
Removing a Clock Module from the Cisco MDS 9509 Director	<b>2-80</b>
Installing a Clock Module into the Cisco MDS 9509 Director	<b>2-83</b>
Removing a Clock Module from the Cisco MDS 9506 Director	<b>2-83</b>
Installing a Clock Module into the Cisco MDS 9506 Director	<b>2-86</b>

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

---

**APPENDIX A**
**Migrating to Generation 3 8-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Modules A-1**

- Overview **A-1**
- Usage Guidelines **A-2**
- Before You Begin Upgrading the MDS 9513 Director **A-3**
- Migration Procedures for the MDS 9513 Director **A-3**
  - Installing the MDS 9000 4/44-Port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized Module **A-3**
  - Installing MDS 9513 Fabric 2 Modules and Running Cisco SAN-OS 3.x **A-5**
  - Installing MDS 9513 Fabric 2 Modules and Installing MDS 9000 24-port or 48-port 8-Gbps Modules **A-9**
    - Installing the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 Modules and Activating Higher Bandwidth by Reloading the Switch **A-10**
    - Installing the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 Modules and Activating Higher Bandwidth by Powering Down the Switch **A-11**
- Migration Procedure for the MDS 9509 Director and MDS 9506 Director **A-12**

---

**CHAPTER B**
**Connecting the Cisco MDS 9500 Series B-1**

- Preparing for Network Connections **B-2**
- Connecting to the Console Port **B-2**
- Connecting to the COM1 Port **B-4**
- Connecting to the MGMT 10/100/1000 Ethernet Port **B-6**
- Connecting to the MGMT 10/100 Ethernet Port **B-7**
- Connecting to a Fibre Channel Port **B-9**
  - Removing and Installing X2 Transceivers **B-9**
    - Removing an X2 Transceiver **B-11**
    - Installing an X2 Transceiver **B-11**
  - Removing and Installing SFP Transceivers **B-12**
    - Removing an SFP Transceiver **B-12**
    - Installing an SFP Transceiver **B-14**
  - Removing and Installing Cables into SFP Transceivers **B-14**
    - Removing a Cable from an SFP Transceiver **B-14**
    - Installing a Cable into an SFP Transceiver **B-15**
  - Maintaining SFP Transceivers and Fiber-Optic Cables **B-16**

---

**APPENDIX C**
**Cabinet and Rack Installation C-1**

- Cabinet and Rack Requirements **C-1**
  - General Requirements for Cabinets and Racks **C-1**
    - Cabinet and Rack Requirements for the Cisco MDS 9513 Chassis **C-2**
    - Cabinet and Rack Requirements for the Cisco MDS 9509 and Cisco MDS 9506 Chassis **C-2**

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

Requirements Specific to Perforated Cabinets	<b>C-3</b>
Perforated Cabinet Requirements for the Cisco MDS 9513 Chassis	<b>C-3</b>
Perforated Cabinet Requirements for the Cisco MDS 9509 and the Cisco MDS 9506 Chassis	<b>C-3</b>
Requirements Specific to Solid-Walled Cabinets	<b>C-4</b>
Solid-Walled Cabinet Requirements for the Cisco MDS 9513 Chassis	<b>C-4</b>
Solid-Walled Cabinet Requirements for the Cisco MDS 9509 and the Cisco MDS 9506 Chassis	<b>C-5</b>
Requirements Specific to Standard Open Racks	<b>C-5</b>
Requirements Specific to Two-Post Telco Racks	<b>C-6</b>
Cisco MDS 9000 Family Telco and EIA Shelf Bracket	<b>C-6</b>
Rack-Mounting Guidelines	<b>C-7</b>
Before Installing the Rack-Mount Support Brackets	<b>C-7</b>
Before Installing the Shelf Brackets	<b>C-8</b>
Required Equipment	<b>C-8</b>
Installing the Shelf Bracket Kit into a Two-Post Telco Rack	<b>C-9</b>
Installing the Shelf Bracket Kit into a Four-Post EIA Rack	<b>C-10</b>
Installing the Switch on the Rack-Mount Support Brackets	<b>C-11</b>
Installing the Switch on the Shelf Brackets	<b>C-12</b>
Removing the Shelf Bracket Kit (Optional)	<b>C-12</b>
Cisco MDS 9500 Shelf Bracket	<b>C-13</b>
Rack-Mounting Guidelines	<b>C-14</b>
Before Installing the Shelf Brackets	<b>C-14</b>
Required Equipment	<b>C-14</b>
Installing the Cisco MDS 9500 Shelf Bracket Kit into a Cabinet or Rack	<b>C-15</b>
Installing the Switch on the Shelf Brackets	<b>C-16</b>
<b>APPENDIX D</b>	<b>Technical Specifications D-1</b>
Switch Specifications	<b>D-1</b>
Module Specifications	<b>D-4</b>
Weight of Modules	<b>D-5</b>
Power Specifications for the Cisco MDS 9513 Director	<b>D-6</b>
Specifications for the Cisco MDS 9513 Power Supplies	<b>D-6</b>
Component Power Requirements and Heat Dissipation for the Cisco MDS 9513 Director	<b>D-7</b>
AC Power Consumption for the Cisco MDS 9513 Director	<b>D-8</b>
Power Specifications for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director	<b>D-9</b>
Specifications for the Cisco MDS 9509 Power Supplies	<b>D-9</b>
Component Power Requirements and Heat Dissipation for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director	<b>D-11</b>
AC Power Consumption for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director	<b>D-14</b>



**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

Power Specifications for the Cisco MDS 9506 Director	D-14
Specifications for the Cisco MDS 9506 Power Supplies	D-15
Component Power Requirements and Heat Dissipation for the Cisco MDS 9506 Director	D-16
AC Power Consumption for the Cisco MDS 9506 Director	D-19
X2 Transceiver Specifications	D-19
Cisco 10-Gbps Fibre Channel X2 Transceivers	D-20
General Specification for Cisco 10-Gbps Fibre Channel X2 Transceivers	D-20
Environmental Conditions and Power Requirement Specifications for Cisco 10-Gbps Fibre Channel X2 Transceivers	D-20
Cisco 10-Gbps Ethernet X2 Transceivers	D-21
General Specification for Cisco 10-Gbps Ethernet X2 Transceivers	D-21
Environmental and Power Requirements Specifications for Cisco 10-Gbps Ethernet X2 Transceiver	D-22
Cisco 10-Gbps Ethernet DWDM X2 Transceiver	D-22
SFP and SFP+ Transceiver Specifications	D-22
Cisco Fibre Channel SFP and SFP+ Transceivers	D-23
General Specifications for Cisco 8-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP+ Transceivers	D-24
Environmental and Power Requirements for Cisco 8-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP+ Transceivers	D-24
General Specifications for Cisco 4-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP Transceivers	D-26
Environmental and Power Requirement for Cisco 4-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP Transceivers	D-26
General Specifications for Cisco 2-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP Transceivers	D-27
Environmental and Power Requirement for Cisco 2-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP Transceivers	D-27
Maximum Environmental and Electrical Ratings for Cisco Fibre Channel SFP Transceivers	D-28
Cisco Fibre Channel and Gigabit Ethernet Transceivers	D-28
General Specifications for Cisco Fibre Channel and Gigabit Ethernet SFP Transceivers	D-29
Environmental and Power Requirement Specifications for Cisco Fibre Channel and Gigabit Ethernet SFP Transceivers	D-29
Cisco CWDM SFP Transceivers	D-30
Environmental and Optical Specifications for Cisco 2-Gbps CWDM SFP Transceivers	D-31
Environmental and Optical Specifications for Cisco 4-Gbps CWDM SFP Transceivers	D-33
Cisco Gigabit Ethernet Transceivers	D-34
General Specifications for Cisco Gigabit Ethernet Transceivers	D-34
Environmental and Power Requirement Specifications for Cisco Gigabit Ethernet Transceivers	D-34
Cisco DWDM SFP Transceivers	D-34

## APPENDIX E

### Cable and Port Specifications E-1

Cables and Adapters Provided E-1

Console Port E-2

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

- Console Port Pinouts **E-2**
- Connecting the Console Port to a Computer Using the DB-25 Adapter **E-2**
- Connecting the Console Port to a Computer Using the DB-9 Adapter **E-3**
- COM1 Port **E-3**
  - COM1 Port Pinouts **E-3**
  - Connecting the COM1 Port to a Modem **E-4**
- MGMT 10/100/1000 Ethernet Port **E-4**
- MGMT 10/100 Ethernet Port **E-6**
- Supported Power Cords and Plugs **E-7**
  - Power Cords **E-7**
    - Supported Plugs for 6000-W AC, 2500-W AC, and 1900-W AC Power Supplies **E-9**
    - Supported Plugs for the 4000-W AC Power Supply **E-11**
  - Jumper Power Cord **E-11**
  - Power Supply AC Power Cords **E-12**
  - AC Power Cord Illustrations **E-13**

**APPENDIX F**

**Site Planning and Maintenance Records **F-1****

- Contacting Customer Service **F-1**
  - Finding the Chassis Serial Number **F-2**
- Site Preparation Checklist **F-4**
- Contact and Site Information **F-6**
- Chassis and Module Information **F-7**



## New and Changed Information

This *Cisco MDS 9500 Series Hardware Installation Guide* applies to Cisco MDS NX-OS Release 4.1(1b) and earlier Cisco MDS SAN-OS releases.

[Table 1](#) lists the new and changed features available with each supported Cisco MDS NX-OS release and SAN-OS release for the Cisco MDS 9500 Series, with the latest release first.



**Note**

As of NX-OS Release 4.1(1b), SAN-OS has been changed to NX-OS. References to SAN-OS releases before 4.1(1b) still apply.

**Table 1** Documented Features for the Cisco MDS 9500 Series

Feature	Description	Changed in Release	Where Documented
48-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	Added 48-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module. The switching module offers 48 autosensing 1-, 2-, 4- and 8-Gbps Fibre Channel ports and can be used in the Cisco MDS 9500 Series Switches.	4.1(1b)	The “48-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module” section on page 1-33 and the “Technical Specifications” section on page D-1.
24-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	Added 24-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module. The switching module offers 24 autosensing 1-, 2-, 4- and 8-Gbps Fibre Channel ports and can be used in the Cisco MDS 9500 Series Switches.	4.1(1b)	The “24-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module” section on page 1-33 and the “Technical Specifications” section on page D-1.
4/44-port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized Fibre Channel switching module	Added 4/44-port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized Fibre Channel switching module. The switching module offers 48 autosensing 1-, 2-, 4- and 8-Gbps Fibre Channel ports and can be used in any of the Cisco MDS 9500 Series chassis and in the Cisco MDS 9222i Switches.	4.1(1b)	The “4/44-port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized Fibre Channel Switching Module” section on page 1-33 and the “Technical Specifications” section on page D-1.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Table 1 Documented Features for the Cisco MDS 9500 Series (continued)**

<b>Feature</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Changed in Release</b>	<b>Where Documented</b>
Migration to Generation 3 modules	Added the information associated with readying the MDS 9500 Series to support Generation 3 8-Gbps Fibre Channel switching modules.	4.1(1b)	<a href="#">“Migrating to Generation 3 8-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Modules”</a> section on page A-1.
Crossbar modules	Added DS-13SLT-FAB2 support	4.1(1b)	<a href="#">“Technical Specifications”</a> section on page D-1.
SFP+ transceivers	Added the SFP+ transceivers information.	4.1(1b)	<a href="#">“Technical Specifications”</a> section on page D-1.
Cisco MDS Fibre Channel Bladeswitch overview	Description of the Cisco MDS Fibre Channel Bladeswitch for IBM BladeCenter.	3.3(1a)	<a href="#">Product Overview</a> chapter.
18/4-port Multiservice (MSM-18/4) module	Added information on IPV6 support.	3.3(1a)	<a href="#">Product Overview</a> chapter.
18/4-port Multiservice (MSM-18/4) module	Added information on SAN extension support.	3.3(1a)	The <a href="#">“18/4-Port Multiservice Module”</a> section on page 1-41.
18/4-port Multiservice (MSM-18/4) module	Added the Storage Media Encryption information.	3.2(1)	The <a href="#">“18/4-Port Multiservice Module”</a> section on page 1-41.
18/4-port Multiservice (MSM-18/4) module	Added the new 18/4-port Multiservice (MSM-18/4) module.	3.2(1)	The <a href="#">“18/4-Port Multiservice Module”</a> section on page 1-41 and the <a href="#">“Technical Specifications”</a> section on page D-1.
18/4-port Multiservice FIPS (MSFM-18/4) module	Added the new 18/4-port Multiservice FIPS (MSFM-18/4) module.	3.2(1)	The <a href="#">“18/4-Port Multiservice Federal Information Processing Standards Module”</a> section on page 1-42 and the <a href="#">“Technical Specifications”</a> section on page D-1.
Cisco MDS 9513 Multilayer Director	Added Cisco MDS 9513 Multilayer Director. The chassis consists of 13 horizontal slots, where slots 1 to 6 and slots 9 to 13 are reserved for switching, services, and IPS modules, and slots 7 and 8 are for Supervisor-2 modules only.	3.0(1)	The <a href="#">“Chassis”</a> section on page 1-2 and the <a href="#">“Installing the Cisco MDS 9513 Director in a Rack”</a> section on page 2-7.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Table 1 Documented Features for the Cisco MDS 9500 Series (continued)**

<b>Feature</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Changed in Release</b>	<b>Where Documented</b>
Supervisor-2 module	Added Supervisor-2 module. Supervisor-2 modules can be used in the Cisco MDS 9509 and 9506 Director in slots 5 and 6. Dual Supervisor-2 modules must be used in slots 7 and 8 of the Cisco MDS 9513 Director.	3.0(1)	The “Supervisor-2 Modules” section on page 1-17.
48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	Added 48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module. The switching module offers 48 autosensing 1-, 2-, and 4-Gbps Fibre Channel ports and can be used in any of the Cisco MDS 9500 Series chassis and in the Cisco MDS 9216i and 9216A Switches.	3.0(1)	The “48-Port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module” section on page 1-34 and the “Technical Specifications” section on page D-1.
24-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	Added 24-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module. The switching module offers 24 autosensing 1-, 2-, and 4-Gbps Fibre Channel ports and can be used in any of the Cisco MDS 9500 Series chassis and in the Cisco MDS 9216i and 9216A Switches.	3.0(1)	The “24-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module” section on page 1-35 and the “Technical Specifications” section on page D-1.
12-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	Added 12-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module. The switching module can be used in any of the Cisco MDS 9500 Series chassis and in the Cisco MDS 9216i and 9216A Switches.	3.0(1)	The “12-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module” section on page 1-35 and the “Technical Specifications” section on page D-1.
4-port 10-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	Added 4-port 10-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module. The switching module offers four dedicated bandwidth Fibre Channel ports running at 10 Gbps with no oversubscription.	3.0(1)	The “4-port 10-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module” section on page 1-36 and “Technical Specifications” section on page D-1.
Crossbar modules	Added crossbar modules. The Cisco MDS 9513 Director supports two crossbar modules located at the rear of the chassis. Each Supervisor-2 module has an associated crossbar module.	3.0(1)	The “Crossbar Modules” section on page 1-25 and “Removing and Installing a Crossbar Module” section on page 2-47.
X2 transceiver	Added the X2 transceiver information. The X2 transceiver is a small form-factor pluggable optimized for 10-Gbps applications.	3.0(1)	The “X2 Transceivers” section on page 1-55 and the “X2 Transceiver Specifications” section on page 19.
Fibre Channel SFP transceiver	Added 4-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP transceiver.	3.0(1)	The “Fibre Channel SFP Transceivers” section on page 1-56 and the “SFP and SFP+ Transceiver Specifications” section on page D-22.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Table 1 Documented Features for the Cisco MDS 9500 Series (continued)**

<b>Feature</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Changed in Release</b>	<b>Where Documented</b>
3000W Power Supply for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director	Added 3000W power supply for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director.	3.0(1)	The “Cisco MDS 9509 Power Supplies” section on page 1-12, “Installing an AC Power Supply in the Cisco MDS 9509 Director” section on page 2-57, and the “Specifications for the Cisco MDS 9509 Power Supplies” section on page D-9.
Gigabit Ethernet SFP transceiver	Added Gigabit Ethernet SFP transceiver.	Not release specific	The “Supported Transceivers” section on page 1-55 and the “SFP and SFP+ Transceiver Specifications” section on page D-22.
32-port Fibre Channel Storage Services Module (SSM)	Added 32-port Fibre Channel Storage Services Module (SSM).	2.0(2b)	The “32-Port Fibre Channel Storage Services Module” section on page 1-50.
14/2-port Multiprotocol Services (MPS-14/2) module	Provided FCIP, iSCSI, and Fibre Channel capability in a multiprotocol module.	2.0(1b)	The “14/2-Port Multiprotocol Services Module” section on page 1-44.
Clock module installation	Added installation procedure for clock modules.	Not release specific	The “Removing and Installing Clock Modules” section on page 2-76.
9500 Shelf Kit	Added optional shelf bracket kit for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director.	Not release specific	The “Cisco MDS 9500 Shelf Bracket” section on page C-13.
4-port IP Storage Services (IPS-4) module	Provided FCIP services and iSCSI services capability in a 4-port Gigabit Ethernet module.	1.3(4a)	The “IP Storage Services Modules” section on page 1-46.
Jumper power cord	Added jumper power cord available for use in a cabinet.	Not release specific	The “Jumper Power Cord” section on page E-11.
Installation	Modified Cisco MDS 9509 installation options.	Not release specific	The “Installation Options” section on page 2-2.
Power supplies	Added information on Cisco MDS 9509 power supplies.	Not release specific	The “Installing the Cisco MDS 9509 Director in a Rack” section on page 2-11.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Table 1 Documented Features for the Cisco MDS 9500 Series (continued)**

Feature	Description	Changed in Release	Where Documented
Installation of SFP transceivers	Added instructions for installation and removal of SFP transceivers and cables.	Not release specific	The “ <a href="#">Removing, Installing, and Verifying Supervisor, Switching, and Services Modules</a> ” section on page 2-38.
Additional UK power cable	Added United Kingdom power cable BS89/13, BS 1363/A, for use with 1900-W power supply.	Not release specific	The “ <a href="#">Power Cords</a> ” section on page E-7.
Caching Services Module (CSM)	Added virtualization services for reallocating physical resources as virtual resources.	1.3(1)	The “ <a href="#">32-Port 2-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module</a> ” section on page 1-37.
Telco and EIA Shelf Bracket Kit	Allowed single-user installation and installation in a telco rack.	Not release specific	The “ <a href="#">Cisco MDS 9000 Family Telco and EIA Shelf Bracket</a> ” section on page C-6.
Advanced Services Module (ASM)	Added support for up to 32 Fibre Channel ports, provided distributed intelligent storage services, and enabled virtualization.	1.2(2a)	The “ <a href="#">32-Port Fibre Channel Advanced Services Module</a> ” section on page 1-48.
Console port to modem Connection	Added support for connecting the console port on the Cisco MDS 9500 Series to a modem.	1.2(2a)	The “ <a href="#">Connecting to the Console Port</a> ” section on page B-2.
COM1 port to modem Connection	Added support for connecting the COM1 port on the Cisco MDS 9500 Series to a modem.	1.2(1a)	The “ <a href="#">Connecting to the COM1 Port</a> ” section on page B-4.
Gigabit Ethernet and CWDM SFP transceivers	Added support for Gigabit Ethernet/Fibre Channel SFP transceivers and CWDM SFP transceivers.	1.1(1a)	The “ <a href="#">Supported Transceivers</a> ” section on page 1-55.
8-port IP Storage Services (IPS-8) module	Provided FCIP services and iSCSI services capability in an 8-port Gigabit Ethernet module.	1.1(1a)	The “ <a href="#">IP Storage Services Modules</a> ” section on page 1-46.
Cisco MDS 9506 Director	Added the Cisco MDS 9506 Director, a multilayer Fibre Channel switch that supports up to six modules.	1.1(1a)	This guide.
16-port Fibre Channel module	Added 16-port Fibre Channel hot-swappable switching module for use with the Cisco MDS 9500 Series.	1.0(2a)	The “ <a href="#">Switching Modules</a> ” section on page 1-32.
32-port Fibre Channel module	Added 32-port Fibre Channel hot-swappable switching module for use with the Cisco MDS 9500 Series.	1.0(2a)	The “ <a href="#">Switching Modules</a> ” section on page 1-32.
Cisco MDS 9509 Switch	Added the Cisco MDS 9509 Director, a multilayer Fibre Channel switch that supports up to nine modules.	1.0(2a)	This guide.

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***



**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**



## Preface

---

This preface describes the audience, organization, and conventions of the *Cisco MDS 9500 Series Hardware Installation Guide*. It also provides information on how to obtain related documentation.

## Audience

To use this installation guide, you must be familiar with electronic circuitry and wiring practices and preferably be an electronic or electromechanical technician.

## Organization

This guide is organized as follows:

Chapter	Title	Description
Chapter 1	<a href="#">Product Overview</a>	Provides an overview of the Cisco MDS 9500 Series and its components.
Chapter 2	<a href="#">Installing the Cisco MDS 9500 Series</a>	Describes how to install the Cisco MDS 9500 Series, including installing the chassis, modules, CompactFlash card, power supplies, and fan assembly.
Chapter B	<a href="#">Connecting the Cisco MDS 9500 Series</a>	Describes how to connect the Cisco MDS 9500 Series, including the modules.
Appendix A	<a href="#">Migrating to Generation 3 8-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Modules</a>	Describes the tasks associated with readying the MDS 9500 Series to support Generation 3 8-Gbps Fibre Channel switching modules.
Appendix C	<a href="#">Cabinet and Rack Installation</a>	Provides guidelines for selecting an enclosed cabinet, and the procedure for installing a switch using the optional Telco and EIA Shelf Bracket Kit.
Appendix D	<a href="#">Technical Specifications</a>	Lists the Cisco MDS 9500 Series switch specifications, and includes safety information, site requirements, and power connections.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

Chapter	Title	Description
Appendix E	<a href="#">Cable and Port Specifications</a>	Lists cable and port specifications for the Cisco MDS 9500 Series switch.
Appendix F	<a href="#">Site Planning and Maintenance Records</a>	Provides a site-planning checklist and sample maintenance and network records.

## Conventions

This document uses the following conventions for notes, cautions, and safety warnings.

Notes and Cautions contain important information that you should be aware of.



### Note

Means *reader take note*. Notes contain helpful suggestions or references to material that are not covered in the publication.



### Caution

Means *reader be careful*. You are capable of doing something that might result in equipment damage or loss of data.

Safety warnings appear throughout this publication in procedures that, if performed incorrectly, may harm you. A warning symbol precedes each warning statement.



### Warning

**This warning symbol means danger. You are in a situation that could cause bodily injury. Before you work on any equipment, be aware of the hazards involved with electrical circuitry and be familiar with standard practices for preventing accidents. Use the statement number provided at the end of each warning to locate its translation in the translated safety warnings that accompanied this device.** Statement 1071

### Waarschuwing

**Dit waarschuwingssymbool betekent gevaar. U verkeert in een situatie die lichamelijk letsel kan veroorzaken. Voordat u aan enige apparatuur gaat werken, dient u zich bewust te zijn van de bij elektrische schakelingen betrokken risico's en dient u op de hoogte te zijn van standaard maatregelen om ongelukken te voorkomen. Voor vertalingen van de waarschuwingen die in deze publicatie verschijnen, kunt u het document *Regulatory Compliance and Safety Information* (Informatie over naleving van veiligheids- en andere voorschriften) raadplegen dat bij dit toestel is ingesloten.**

### Varoitus

**Tämä varoitusmerkki merkitsee vaaraa. Olet tilanteessa, joka voi johtaa ruumiinvammaan. Ennen kuin työskentelet minkään laitteiston parissa, ota selvää sähkökytkentöihin liittyvistä vaaroista ja tavanomaisista onnettomuuksien ehkäisykeinoista. Tässä julkaisussa esiintyvien varoitusten käännökset löydät laitteen mukana olevasta *Regulatory Compliance and Safety Information* -kirjasesta (määräysten noudattaminen ja tietoa turvallisuudesta).**

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

<b>Attention</b>	<b>Ce symbole d'avertissement indique un danger. Vous vous trouvez dans une situation pouvant causer des blessures ou des dommages corporels. Avant de travailler sur un équipement, soyez conscient des dangers posés par les circuits électriques et familiarisez-vous avec les procédures couramment utilisées pour éviter les accidents. Pour prendre connaissance des traductions d'avertissements figurant dans cette publication, consultez le document <i>Regulatory Compliance and Safety Information</i> (Conformité aux règlements et consignes de sécurité) qui accompagne cet appareil.</b>
<b>Warnung</b>	<b>Dieses Warnsymbol bedeutet Gefahr. Sie befinden sich in einer Situation, die zu einer Körperverletzung führen könnte. Bevor Sie mit der Arbeit an irgendeinem Gerät beginnen, seien Sie sich der mit elektrischen Stromkreisen verbundenen Gefahren und der Standardpraktiken zur Vermeidung von Unfällen bewußt. Übersetzungen der in dieser Veröffentlichung enthaltenen Warnhinweise finden Sie im Dokument <i>Regulatory Compliance and Safety Information</i> (Informationen zu behördlichen Vorschriften und Sicherheit), das zusammen mit diesem Gerät geliefert wurde.</b>
<b>Avvertenza</b>	<b>Questo simbolo di avvertenza indica un pericolo. La situazione potrebbe causare infortuni alle persone. Prima di lavorare su qualsiasi apparecchiatura, occorre conoscere i pericoli relativi ai circuiti elettrici ed essere al corrente delle pratiche standard per la prevenzione di incidenti. La traduzione delle avvertenze riportate in questa pubblicazione si trova nel documento <i>Regulatory Compliance and Safety Information</i> (Conformità alle norme e informazioni sulla sicurezza) che accompagna questo dispositivo.</b>
<b>Advarsel</b>	<b>Dette varselsymbolet betyr fare. Du befinner deg i en situasjon som kan føre til personskade. Før du utfører arbeid på utstyr, må du være oppmerksom på de faremomentene som elektriske kretser innebærer, samt gjøre deg kjent med vanlig praksis når det gjelder å unngå ulykker. Hvis du vil se oversettelser av de advarslene som finnes i denne publikasjonen, kan du se i dokumentet <i>Regulatory Compliance and Safety Information</i> (Overholdelse av forskrifter og sikkerhetsinformasjon) som ble levert med denne enheten.</b>
<b>Aviso</b>	<b>Este símbolo de aviso indica perigo. Encontra-se numa situação que lhe poderá causar danos físicos. Antes de começar a trabalhar com qualquer equipamento, familiarize-se com os perigos relacionados com circuitos eléctricos, e com quaisquer práticas comuns que possam prevenir possíveis acidentes. Para ver as traduções dos avisos que constam desta publicação, consulte o documento <i>Regulatory Compliance and Safety Information</i> (Informação de Segurança e Disposições Reguladoras) que acompanha este dispositivo.</b>
<b>¡Advertencia!</b>	<b>Este símbolo de aviso significa peligro. Existe riesgo para su integridad física. Antes de manipular cualquier equipo, considerar los riesgos que entraña la corriente eléctrica y familiarizarse con los procedimientos estándar de prevención de accidentes. Para ver una traducción de las advertencias que aparecen en esta publicación, consultar el documento titulado <i>Regulatory Compliance and Safety Information</i> (Información sobre seguridad y conformidad con las disposiciones reglamentarias) que se acompaña con este dispositivo.</b>

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

**Varning!** Denna varningssymbol signalerar fara. Du befinner dig i en situation som kan leda till personskada. Innan du utför arbete på någon utrustning måste du vara medveten om farorna med elkretsar och känna till vanligt förfarande för att förebygga skador. Se förklaringar av de varningar som förkommer i denna publikation i dokumentet *Regulatory Compliance and Safety Information* (Efterrättelse av föreskrifter och säkerhetsinformation), vilket medföljer denna anordning.

---

## Related Documentation

The documentation set for the Cisco MDS 9000 Family includes the following documents. To find a document online, use the Cisco MDS NX-OS Documentation Locator at:

[http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/storage/san\\_switches/mds9000/roadmaps/doclocator.htm](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/storage/san_switches/mds9000/roadmaps/doclocator.htm).

## Release Notes

- *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Release Notes for Cisco MDS NX-OS Releases*
- *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Release Notes for Storage Services Interface Images*
- *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Release Notes for Cisco MDS 9000 EPLD Images*

## Compatibility Information

- *Cisco MDS 9000 NX-OS Hardware and Software Compatibility Information*
- *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Interoperability Support Matrix*
- *Cisco MDS Storage Services Module Interoperability Support Matrix*
- *Cisco MDS NX-OS Release Compatibility Matrix for Storage Service Interface Images*

## Regulatory Compliance and Safety Information

- *Regulatory Compliance and Safety Information for the Cisco MDS 9000 Family*

## Hardware Installation

- *Cisco MDS 9124 Multilayer Fabric Switch Quick Start Guide*
- *Cisco MDS 9500 Series Hardware Installation Guide*
- *Cisco MDS 9200 Series Hardware Installation Guide*
- *Cisco MDS 9100 Series Hardware Installation Guide*

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## **Cisco Fabric Manager**

- *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Fabric Manager Quick Configuration Guide*
- *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Fabric Manager Configuration Guide*
- *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Fabric Manager Database Schema*
- *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Data Mobility Manager Configuration Guide*

## **Command-Line Interface**

- *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Software Upgrade and Downgrade Guide*
- *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Storage Services Module Software Installation and Upgrade Guide*
- *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Quick Configuration Guide*
- *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide*
- *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Command Reference*

## **Intelligent Storage Networking Services Configuration Guides**

- *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Data Mobility Manager Configuration Guide*
- *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Storage Media Encryption Configuration Guide*
- *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Secure Erase Configuration Guide - For Cisco MDS 9500 and 9200 Series*

## **Troubleshooting and Reference**

- *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Troubleshooting Guide*
- *Cisco MDS 9000 Family MIB Quick Reference*
- *Cisco MDS 9000 Family SMI-S Programming Reference*
- *Cisco MDS 9000 Family System Messages Reference*

## **Installation and Configuration Note**

- *Cisco MDS 9000 Family SSM Configuration Note*
- *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Port Analyzer Adapter Installation and Configuration Note*
- *Cisco 10-Gigabit X2 Transceiver Module Installation Note*
- *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CWDM SFP Installation Note*
- *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CWDM Passive Optical System Installation Note*

■ ***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## **Obtaining Documentation, Obtaining Support, and Security Guidelines**

For information on obtaining documentation, submitting a service request, and gathering additional information, see the monthly *What's New in Cisco Product Documentation*, which also lists all new and revised Cisco technical documentation, at:

<http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/general/whatsnew/whatsnew.html>

Subscribe to the *What's New in Cisco Product Documentation* as a Really Simple Syndication (RSS) feed and set content to be delivered directly to your desktop using a reader application. The RSS feeds are a free service and Cisco currently supports RSS version 2.0.



# CHAPTER 1

## Product Overview

---

The Cisco MDS 9500 Multilayer Director elevates the standard for director-class switches. Providing industry-leading availability, scalability, security, and management, the Cisco MDS 9500 Series allows deployment of high-performance SANs with lowest total cost of ownership. Layering a rich set of intelligent features onto a high-performance, protocol-agnostic switch fabric, the Cisco MDS 9500 Series of Multilayer Directors addresses the stringent requirements of large data-center storage environments: uncompromisingly high availability, security, scalability, ease of management, and transparent integration of new technologies.

The Cisco MDS 9500 Series includes the Cisco MDS 9513 Director, the Cisco MDS 9509 Director, and the Cisco MDS 9506 Director, which all provide the following high availability features:

- Redundant Supervisor-2 modules with associated external crossbar modules for the Cisco MDS 9513 Director.
- Redundant Supervisor-2 modules with associated integrated crossbar modules for the Cisco MDS 9509 and 9506 Directors.
- Redundant Supervisor-1 modules with dual switching fabrics for the Cisco MDS 9509 and 9506 Directors.
- Optional hot-swappable switching or services modules.
- Switching module port interfaces that support field-replaceable, hot-swappable, form-factor pluggable X2 transceivers.
- Switching module port interfaces that support field-replaceable, hot-swappable, small form-factor pluggable (SFP) and Enhanced small form-factor pluggable (SFP+) transceivers.
- Redundant and hot-swappable power supplies and fan modules.
- Power and cooling management and environmental monitoring.
- Nondisruptive code load and activation.
- Redundant and self-monitoring system clocks.

For more information about high availability features, redundant supervisor operation, and how to configure the Cisco MDS 9500 Series, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide* and the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Fabric Manager Configuration Guide*.

The Cisco MDS 9500 Series supports the following hot-swappable, field-replaceable modules:

- 48-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module (DS-X9248-96K9)
- 24-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module (DS-X9224-96K9)
- 4/44-port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized Fibre Channel switching module (DS-X9248-48K9)

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

- 48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module (DS-X9148)
- 24-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module (DS-X9124)
- 12-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module (DS-X9112)
- 4-port 10-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module (DS-X9704)
- 32-port 2-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module (DS-X9032)
- 16-port 2-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module (DS-X9016)
- 18/4-port Multiservice (MSM-18/4) module (DS-X9304-18K9)
- 18/4-port Multiservice FIPS (MSFM-18/4) module (DS-X9304-18FK9)
- 14/2-port Multiprotocol Services (MPS-14/2) module (DS-X9302-14K9)
- 8-port IP Storage Services (IPS-8) module (DS-X9308-SMIP)
- 4-port IP Storage Services (IPS-4) module (DS-X9304-SMIP)
- Storage Services Module (SSM) (DS-X9032-SSM)
- Advanced Services Module (ASM) (DS-X9032-SMV)
- Caching Services Module (CSM) (DS-X9560-SMC)

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Chassis, page 1-2](#)
- [Backplane and Clock Modules, page 1-8](#)
- [Cisco MDS Fibre Channel Switch for IBM Blade Center, page 1-9](#)
- [Power Supplies, page 1-9](#)
- [Fan Modules, page 1-16](#)
- [Supervisor Modules, page 1-16](#)
- [Crossbar Modules, page 1-25](#)
- [Cisco MDS 9000 Series Module Compatibility, page 1-27](#)
- [Port Index Availability, page 1-28](#)
- [Switching Modules, page 1-32](#)
- [Services Modules, page 1-41](#)
- [Supported Transceivers, page 1-55](#)

## Chassis

This section describes the different chassis offerings in the Cisco MDS 9500 Series:

- [Cisco MDS 9513 Director, page 1-3](#)
- [Cisco MDS 9509 Director, page 1-6](#)
- [Cisco MDS 9506 Director, page 1-7](#)



***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## Cisco MDS 9513 Director

The Cisco MDS 9513 Director is a 13-slot Fibre Channel switch. The front panel consists of 13 horizontal slots, where slots 1 to 6 and slots 9 to 13 are reserved for switching and services modules only, and slots 7 and 8 are for Supervisor-2 modules only. A variable speed fan tray, with 15 individual fans, is located on the front left panel of the chassis.

The Cisco MDS 9513 Director uses a midplane. Modules exist on both sides of the plane. (See [Figure 1-1](#).) The Cisco MDS 9513 Director supports the following:

- Two Supervisor-2 modules that reside in slots 7 and 8.
- Switching and storage services modules. (See the “[Port Index Availability](#)” section on page 1-28 for possible configurations.)
- One hot-swappable front panel fan tray with redundant individual fans.
- Two power supplies located at the rear of the chassis. The power supplies are redundant by default and can be configured to be combined if desired.
- Two crossbar modules located at the rear of the chassis.
- One hot-swappable fan module for the crossbar modules located at the rear of the chassis.
- Two hot-swappable clock modules located at the rear of the chassis.



---

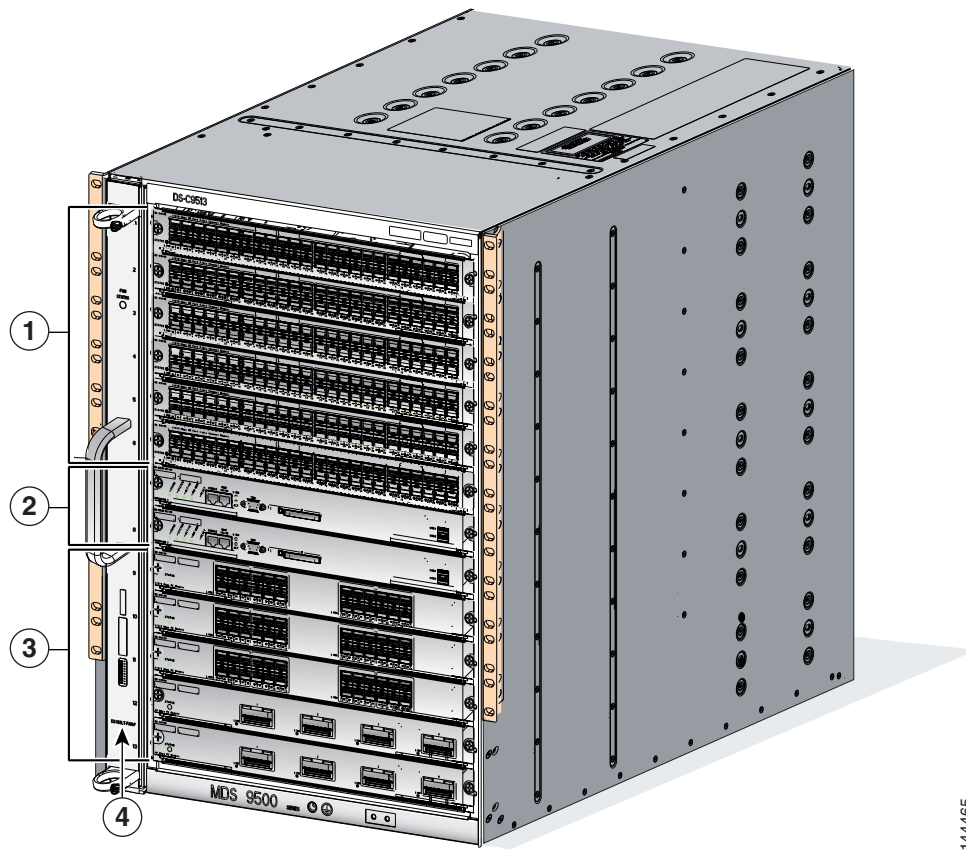
**Note**

The Cisco MDS 9513 Director does not support the Advanced Services Module (ASM) or the Caching Services Module (CSM).

---

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure 1-1 Cisco MDS 9513 Chassis Front Panel View**



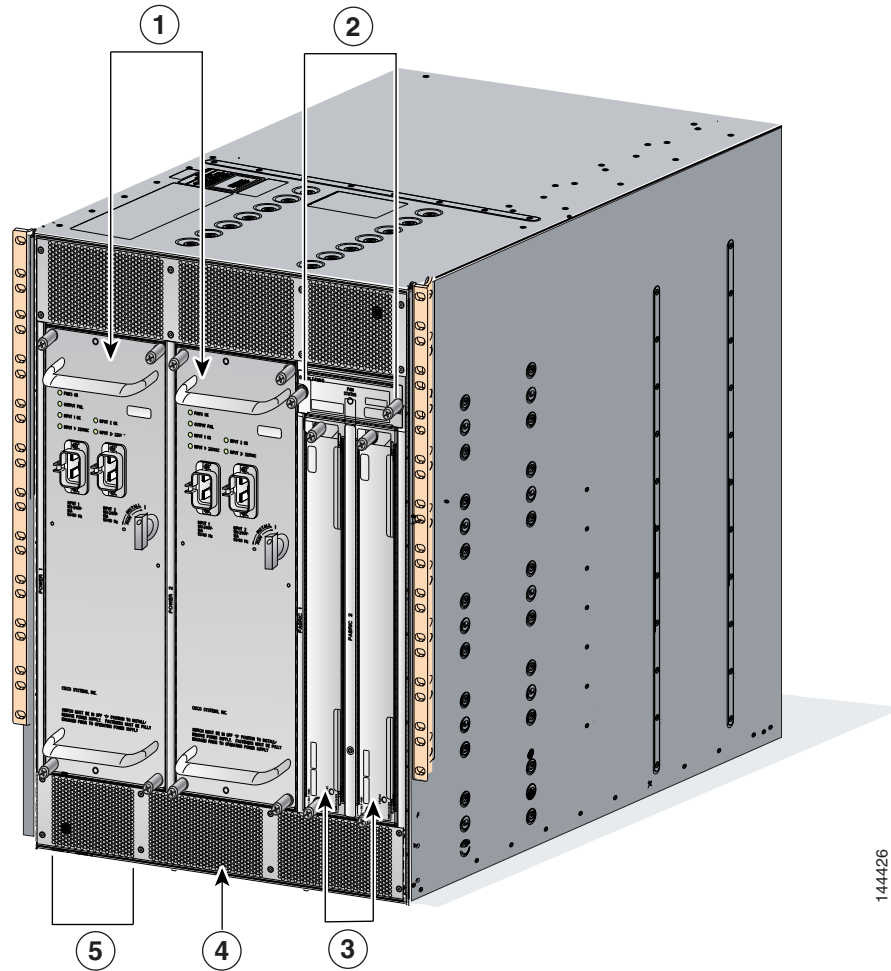
144465

<b>1</b>	Switching or services modules in slots 1–6	<b>3</b>	Switching or services modules in slots 9–13
<b>2</b>	Supervisor-2 modules in slots 7 and 8	<b>4</b>	Fan tray

The rear of the chassis supports two vertical, redundant power supplies, two clock modules, two vertical, redundant, external crossbar modules, and a variable speed fan tray with two individual fans located above the crossbar modules. (See [Figure 1-2](#).)

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure 1-2 Rear Panel 9513 Chassis**



<b>1</b>	Power supplies	<b>4</b>	Air vent panels
<b>2</b>	crossbar module fans	<b>5</b>	Clock module <sup>1</sup>
<b>3</b>	crossbar modules		

1. Clock modules are located inside the air vent panel. You must remove the air vent panel to access the clock modules.

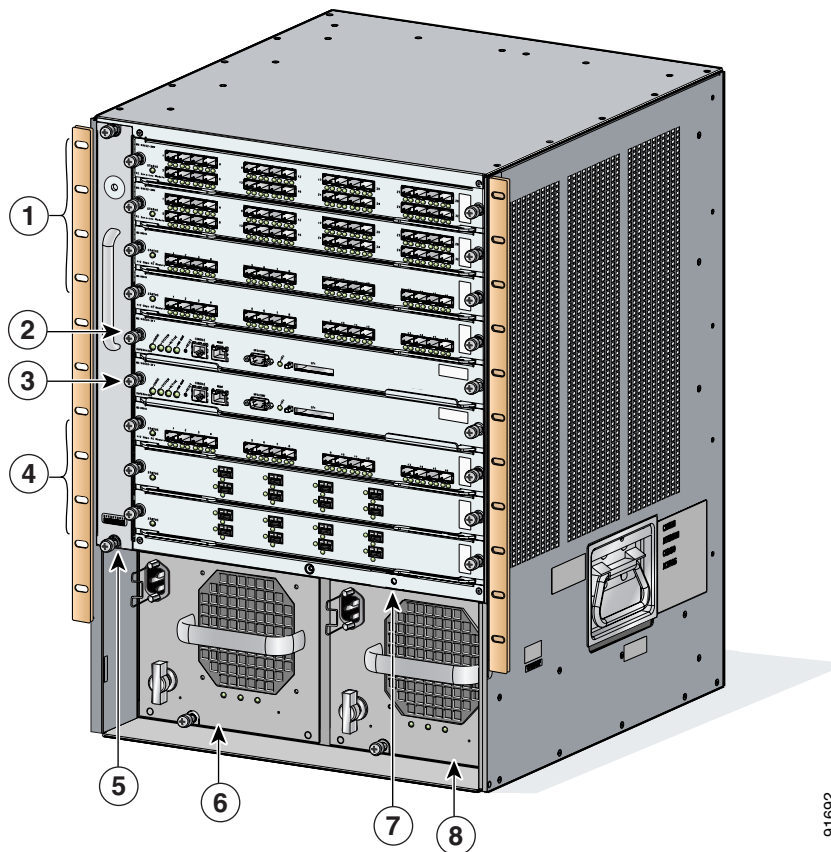
[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## Cisco MDS 9509 Director

The Cisco MDS 9509 Director has a 9-slot chassis as shown in [Figure 1-3](#), and it supports the following:

- Redundant Supervisor-2 modules with associated internal crossbar modules.
- Up to two Supervisor-1 modules that provide a switching fabric, plus a console port, COM1 port, and a MGMT 10/100 Ethernet port on each module. Slots 5 and 6 are reserved for the supervisor modules.
- Seven slots for optional modules that can include up to seven switching modules or six IPS modules.
- Two power supplies located in the front of the chassis. The power supplies are redundant by default and can be configured to be combined if desired.
- One hot-swappable fan module with redundant fans.

**Figure 1-3** Cisco MDS 9509 Chassis



<b>1</b>	Switching or services modules in slots 1–4	<b>5</b>	Fan module
<b>2</b>	Supervisor module in slot 5	<b>6</b>	Power supply 1
<b>3</b>	Redundant supervisor module in slot 6	<b>7</b>	ESD socket
<b>4</b>	Switching or services modules in slots 7–9	<b>8</b>	Power supply 2 (redundant)

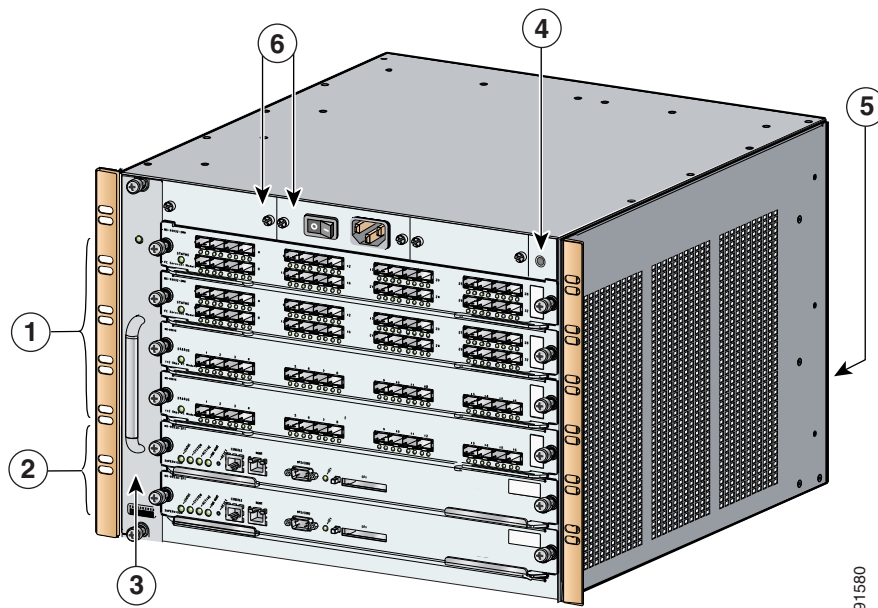
[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## Cisco MDS 9506 Director

The Cisco MDS 9506 Director has a 6-slot chassis as shown in [Figure 1-4](#), and it supports the following:

- Up to two Supervisor-1 modules that provide a switching fabric, with a console port, COM1 port, and a MGMT 10/100 Ethernet port on each module. Slots 5 and 6 are reserved for the supervisor modules.
- Four slots for optional modules that can include up to four switching modules or three IPS modules.
- Two power supplies located in the back of the chassis. The power supplies are redundant by default and can be configured to be combined if desired.
- Two power entry modules (PEMs) in the front of the chassis for easy access to power supply connectors and switches.
- One hot-swappable fan module with redundant fans.

**Figure 1-4 Cisco MDS 9506 Chassis**



1	Switching or services modules in slots 1–4	4	ESD Socket
2	Supervisor modules in slots 5 and 6	5	Power supplies (in back)
3	Fan module	6	Location of power entry modules (PEMs) -- one PEM shown and one filler panel shown.

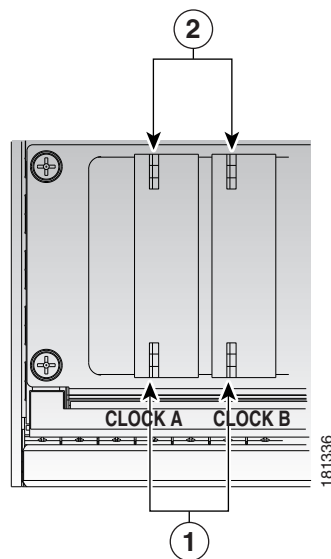
[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## Backplane and Clock Modules

The Cisco MDS 9500 Series includes one or more clock modules that are accessible from the back of the chassis. The Cisco MDS 9513 and 9509 Directors have two field-replaceable clock modules for redundancy and failover. The Cisco MDS 9506 Director has one field-replaceable clock module. In the unlikely event of a clock module failure, the Cisco MDS 9500 Series generates an error message and a switchover from one clock module to the other, causing the system to reset automatically. Cisco recommends that the failed clock module be replaced during a maintenance window. See the “[Removing and Installing Clock Modules](#)” section on page 2-76 for information on replacing clock modules.

There are two LEDs per clock module. [Figure 1-5](#) shows the upper and lower LEDs.

**Figure 1-5** Clock Module LEDs



<b>1</b>	Lower LEDs	<b>2</b>	Upper LEDs
----------	------------	----------	------------

**Table 1-1** Clock LEDs for the Cisco MDS 9500 Series Directors

LED	Status	Description
Upper LED	Green	Clock module is active and in use.
	Off	Clock module is in standby mode.
Lower LED	Green	Power supply is on and working properly.
	Red	Power supply is not in a stable state. If this indication continues after initial power on, check that all connections are secure.
	Off	Normal operation or power supply is turned off.

[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## Cisco MDS Fibre Channel Switch for IBM Blade Center

The Cisco MDS Fibre Channel Bladeswitch for IBM BladeCenter is designed for IBM BladeCenter environments. The Cisco MDS Fibre Channel Bladeswitch is based on the Cisco MDS 9000 Family SAN switching technology, which integrates the Cisco MDS 9000 Family of switches and directors into a blade-switch architecture. The advanced architecture of the Cisco MDS Fibre Channel Bladeswitch for IBM BladeCenter, along with 4-Gb technology, provides outstanding performance between Bladeswitches and the rest of the Fibre Channel infrastructure.

The Cisco MDS Fibre Channel Bladeswitch for IBM BladeCenter provides 4-Gb Fibre Channel performance to blade-server switching. It also provides network intelligence features such as virtual SANs (VSANs), quality of service (QoS), and N-port interface virtualization (NPIV). It also offers nondisruptive software upgrades and on-demand port activation and is the most complete embedded Fibre Channel switching available for the IBM BladeCenter, BladeCenter-T, and BladeCenter-H platforms.

The Cisco MDS Fibre Channel Bladeswitch for IBM BladeCenter provides up to 20 nonblocking 1-, 2-, and 4-Gb Fibre Channel ports that are available in two configurations: 7 internal ports and 3 external ports, or 14 internal ports and 6 external ports. Each port provides line-rate performance up to 4-Gb without any performance loss for integrated features such as VSANs, QoS, or Network Address Translation (NAT). The Cisco MDS Fibre Channel Bladeswitch for IBM BladeCenter supports up to 16 VSANs per blade switch.

Each external port on the Cisco MDS FC Bladeswitch for IBM BladeCenter also provides line-rate performance up to 4-Gb for Inter-Switch Links (ISLs) or additional device connectivity such as storage or host bus adapters (HBAs).

The Cisco NX-OS software provides role-based access control (RBAC) for management access of the Cisco Fibre Channel Bladeswitch for IBM BladeCenter command-line interface (CLI) and Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP). For more information, see the *Cisco 9000 Family Command Reference*.

## Power Supplies

The Cisco MDS 9500 Series supports dual hot-swappable power supplies, each of which is capable of supplying sufficient power to the entire chassis should one power supply fail. The power supplies monitor their output voltage and provide status to the supervisor modules. To prevent the unexpected shutdown of an optional module, the power management software only allows a module to power up if adequate power is available.

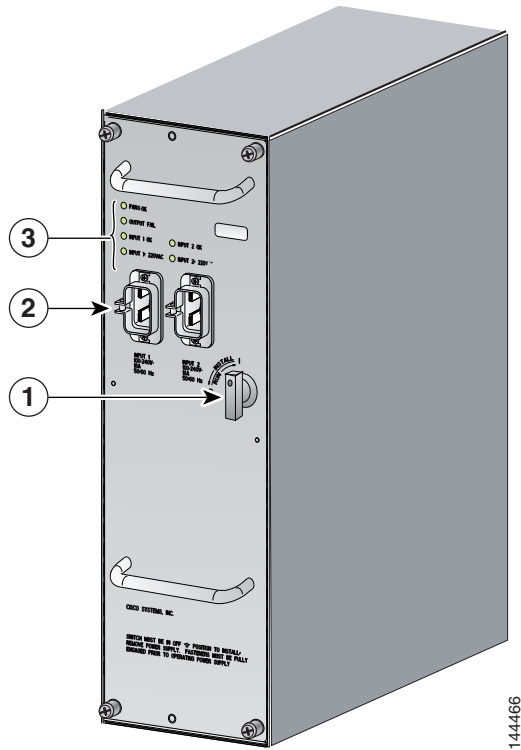
The power supplies can be configured to be redundant or combined. By default, they are configured as redundant, so that if one fails, the remaining power supply can still power the entire system. For information about how to configure the power supplies, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 CLI Family Configuration Guide*.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

## Cisco MDS 9513 Power Supplies

The Cisco MDS 9513 Director supports the 6000-W AC power supply (AC input). (See [Figure 1-6](#).)

**Figure 1-6** Cisco MDS 9513 Power Supply



144466

<b>1</b>	Power supply switch	<b>3</b>	Power Supply LEDs
<b>2</b>	AC power connection		



**[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)**

Table 1-2 describes the LEDs for the Cisco MDS 9513 Director power supplies.

**Table 1-2 LEDs for the Cisco MDS 9513 Director Power Supplies**

LED	Status	Description
Input 1 OK	Green	AC input at greater than 85 V is good and power supply is functioning normally if two single 110 V or one single 220 V are connected.
	Off	Power supply is turned off or power is not connected.
Input 2 OK	Green	AC input at greater than 85 V is good and power supply is functioning normally if two single 110 V or one single 220 V are connected.
	Off	Power supply is turned off or power is not connected.
INPUT 1 = 220VAC	Green	AC input is good at greater than 168 V and power supply should function normally.
	Off	AC input is 163 V or less or power is not connected.
INPUT 2 = 220VAC	Green	AC input is good at greater than 168 V and power supply should function normally.
	Off	AC input is 163 V or less or power is not connected.
FAN OK	Green	Power supply fans are operating properly.
	Off	Fan is not operating or power supply is off.
OUTPUT FAIL	Red	Power supply is not in a stable state. If this indication continues after initial power on, check that all connections are secure, including the system fan tray.
	Off	Normal operation or power supply is turned off.

[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## Cisco MDS 9509 Power Supplies

The Cisco MDS 9509 Director supports the following types of power supplies:

- 4000-W AC power supply (AC input and DC output)

The 4000-W AC power supply has a permanently attached power cable, and it requires 220-VAC input. (See [Figure 1-7.](#))

- 3000-W AC power supply (AC input)

The 3000-W AC power supply requires 220 VAC to deliver 3000 W of power. If powered with 110 VAC, it delivers only 1400 W. (See [Figure 1-8.](#))

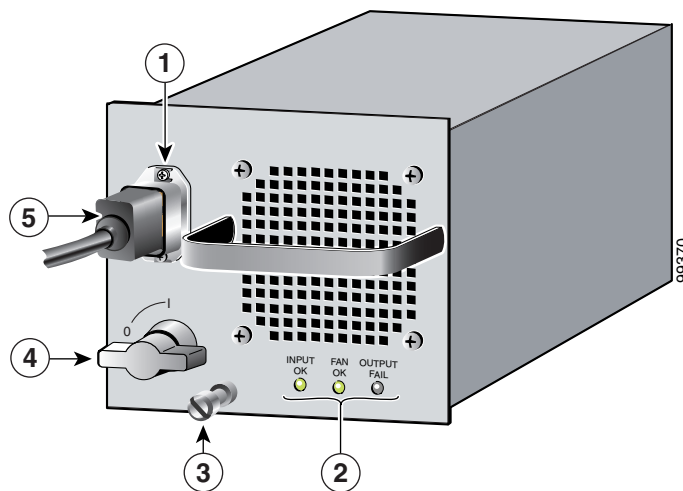
- 2500-W AC power supply (AC input and DC output)

The 2500-W AC power supply requires 220 VAC to deliver 2500 W of power. If powered with 110 VAC, it delivers only 1300 W. (See [Figure 1-9.](#))

- 2500-W DC power supply (DC input and DC output)

The 2500-W DC power supply requires positive, negative, and ground wires. (See [Figure 1-10.](#))

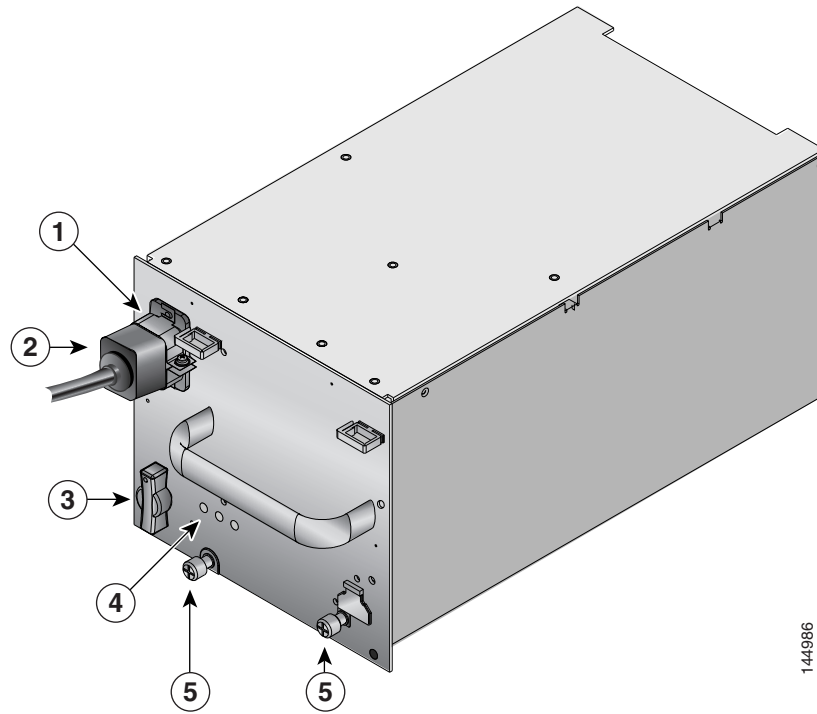
**Figure 1-7** 4000-W AC Power Supply for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director



1	AC power connection	4	Power supply switch
2	Power supply LEDs	5	Permanent power cable
3	Captive screws		

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

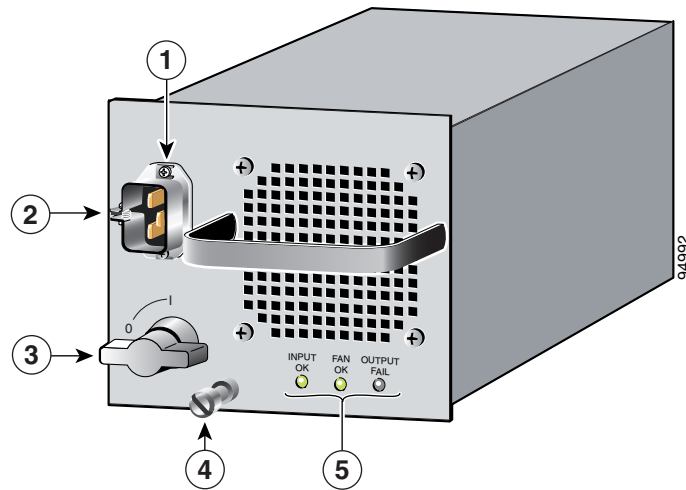
**Figure 1-8 3000-W AC Power Supply for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director**



<b>1</b>	AC power connection	<b>4</b>	Power supply LEDs
<b>2</b>	Power cable	<b>5</b>	Captive screws
<b>3</b>	Power supply switch		

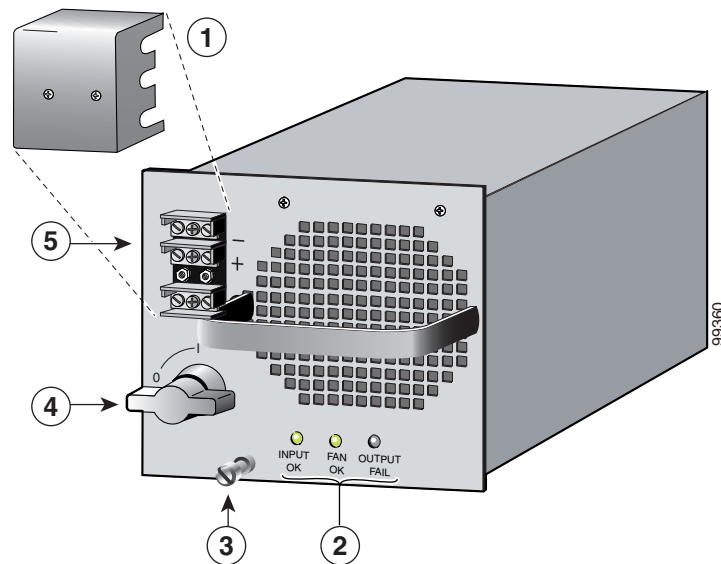
**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure 1-9 2500-W AC Power Supply for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director**



<b>1</b>	AC power connection	<b>4</b>	Captive screws
<b>2</b>	Cable retention device	<b>5</b>	Power supply LEDs
<b>3</b>	Power supply switch		

**Figure 1-10 2500-W DC Power Supply for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director**



<b>1</b>	Terminal block cover	<b>4</b>	Power supply switch
<b>2</b>	Power supply LEDs	<b>5</b>	Terminal block
<b>3</b>	Captive screw		

[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## Cisco MDS 9506 Power Supplies

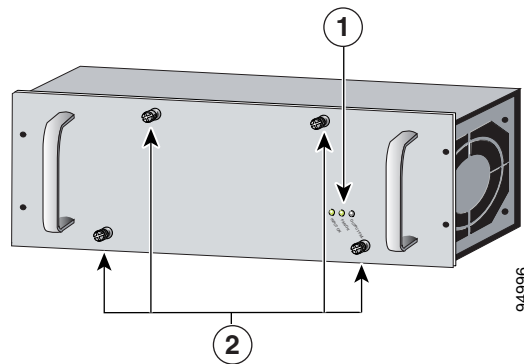
The Cisco MDS 9506 Director supports the following types of power supplies:

- 1900-W AC power supply (AC input and DC output)
- 1900-W DC power supply (DC input and DC output)

Power is supplied to the Cisco MDS 9506 power supplies through PEMs in the front of the chassis. The AC power requires an AC PEM, and the DC power requires a DC PEM.

The 1900-W AC and DC power supplies are similar in appearance (see [Figure 1-11](#)), except for the label that indicates whether the power supply is AC or DC.

**Figure 1-11** Cisco MDS 9506 Power Supply (1900-W AC or DC)



<b>1</b>	Power supply LEDs	<b>2</b>	Captive screws
----------	-------------------	----------	----------------

[Table 1-3](#) describes the power supply LEDs for the Cisco MDS 9509 and 9506 Directors.

**Table 1-3** Power Supply LEDs for the Cisco MDS 9509 and 9506 Directors

LED	Status	Description
Input OK	Green	AC input is good and power supply is functioning normally.
	Off	Power supply is turned off or is not seated properly in the chassis.
Fan OK	Green	Power supply fans are operating properly.
	Off	Fan is not operating or power supply is off.
Output Fail	Red	Power supply is not in a stable state. If this indication continues after initial power on, check that all connections are secure, including the system fan tray.
	Off	Normal operation or power supply is turned off.

[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## Fan Modules

The Cisco MDS 9513 Director has a front panel fan tray with 15 fans with an abrupt stop-to-fan rotation safety feature after power is disconnected or the fan tray is removed from the midplane. The Cisco MDS 9509 Director has a front panel fan module with nine fans and the Cisco MDS 9506 Director has a front panel fan module with six fans.

Sensors on the supervisor module monitor the internal air temperature. If the air temperature exceeds a preset lower-level threshold, the environmental monitor displays warning messages. If the air temperatures exceeds a preset higher-level threshold, the switch will shut down.

If one or more fans within the module fail, the Fan Status LED turns red and the module must be replaced. If the higher-level temperature threshold is not exceeded, the switch continues to run for five minutes after the fan module is removed. This allows you to swap out a fan module without having to bring the system down. For information on how to replace a fan module, see the [“Removing and Installing Fan Modules” section on page 2-68](#).

The fan module has one status LED that indicates the following conditions:

- Green—Fan module is operating normally.
- Red—One or more fans failed. Fan module should be replaced.
- Off—Fan module is not properly seated in the chassis or power supply has failed.



### Caution

The Cisco MDS 9000 Family switches have internal temperature sensors that are capable of shutting down the system if the temperature at different points within the chassis exceed certain safety thresholds. To be effective, the temperature sensors require the presence of airflow; therefore, in the event a fan module is removed from the chassis, the Cisco MDS 9000 Family switches will be shut down after five minutes to prevent potentially undetectable overheating. However, the switches will shut down sooner if the higher-level temperature threshold is exceeded.

The Cisco MDS 9513 Director also has crossbar module fan trays located at the back of the chassis. There is one fan per crossbar module. There is one LED that provides operational status. [Figure 1-2](#) shows the fan status LED on the Cisco MDS 9513 Director. To replace these fan modules, see the [“Removing and Installing Fan Modules” section on page 2-68](#).

## Supervisor Modules

The Cisco MDS 9500 Series supports two types of supervisor modules: Supervisor-1 and Supervisor-2 modules. Both the supervisor modules provide the control and management functions for the Cisco MDS 9500 Series. The Cisco MDS 9500 Series supports two supervisor modules for redundancy. In the event of an internal component failure, the standby supervisor module takes over, if installed. This section discusses the following modules:

- [Supervisor-2 Modules, page 1-17](#) (DS-X9530-SF2-K9)
- [Supervisor-1 Modules, page 1-21](#) (DS-X9530-SF1-K9)



### Note

The internal bootflash installed on the modules are not field-replaceable units. Do not remove or replace internal bootflash on the modules. Modifying the factory installed bootflash is not supported.

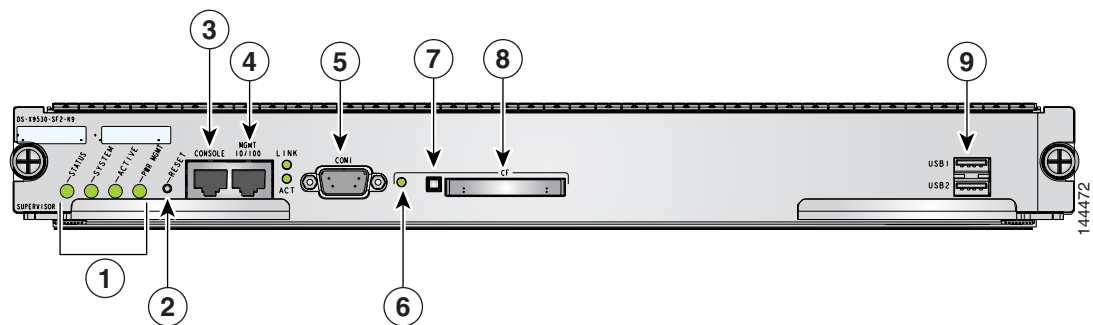
[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## Supervisor-2 Modules

The Cisco MDS 9500 Series offers redundant, hot-swappable, Supervisor-2 modules. (See [Figure 1-12](#).) Supervisor-2 modules can be used in the Cisco MDS 9509 and 9506 Directors in slots 5 and 6. Supervisor-2 modules must be used in slots 7 and 8 of the Cisco MDS 9513 Director.

Supervisor-2 modules provide an integrated crossbar switching fabric to connect all the switching modules when used in a Cisco MDS 9509 or 9506 Director. Single fabric configurations provide 720-Gbps full duplex speed with 80-Gbps full duplex bandwidth per switching module. Dual fabric configurations provide 1.4-Tbps speed with 160-Gbps full duplex bandwidth per switching module. This integrated crossbar switching fabric is disabled when a Supervisor-2 module is installed in a Cisco MDS 9513 Director. The Cisco MDS 9513 Director supports two external crossbar modules located at the rear of the chassis that handle this function. (For more information, see the “[Crossbar Modules](#)” section on [page 1-25](#).)

**Figure 1-12** Cisco MDS 9500 Series Supervisor-2 Module



<b>1</b>	Status, System, Active, and Power Management LEDs <sup>1</sup>	<b>6</b>	CompactFlash LED
<b>2</b>	Reset button	<b>7</b>	CompactFlash eject button
<b>3</b>	Console port	<b>8</b>	CompactFlash slot
<b>4</b>	MGMT 10/100/1000 Ethernet port (with integrated Link and Activity LEDs)	<b>9</b>	USB ports
<b>5</b>	COM1 serial port		

1. See [Table 1-4](#) on [page 1-20](#) for status LED descriptions.

The main functions and components of the Supervisor-2 modules are as follows:

- [Control and Management](#)
- [Processor](#)
- [Port Interfaces](#)
- [LEDs on the Supervisor-2 Module](#)

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## Control and Management

The Supervisor-2 modules provide the following control and management features:

- A redundant central arbiter that provides traffic control and access fairness.
- A nondisruptive restart of a single failing process on the same supervisor.

A service running on the Supervisor-2 module keeps track of the high availability policy of each process and issues a restart when a process fails. The type of restart issued is based on the process's capability:

- Warm or stateful (state is preserved)
  - Cold or stateless (state is not preserved)
- A nondisruptive switchover from the active Supervisor-2 to a redundant standby without loss of traffic.

If the Supervisor-2 module has to be restarted, then the secondary Supervisor-2 (which is continuously monitoring the primary) takes over. Once a switchover has occurred and the failed Supervisor-2 has been replaced or restarted, operation does not switch back to the original primary Supervisor-2, unless it is forced to switch back or another failure occurs.

## Processor

The Supervisor-2 module has a processor running at 1.4 GHz. It contains a PowerPC class processor and offers the following memory specifications:

Memory	Bytes
DRAM	1 GB
1 internal CompactFlash card <sup>1</sup>	512 MB
1 external CompactFlash slot <sup>2</sup>	NA <sup>3</sup>

1. The card stores software images.
2. The slot is for optional cards to store additional images, and for configuration, debugging, and syslog information.
3. NA = not applicable.

## Port Interfaces

The Supervisor-2 module provides the following port interfaces:

- RS-232 (EIA/TIA-232) console port with an RJ-45 connection that you can use to:
  - Configure the Cisco MDS 9500 Series from the CLI
  - Monitor network statistics and errors
  - Configure SNMP agent parameters
- RS-232 COM1 port with a DB-9 connector, which can be attached to a modem.
- Front panel triple speed (10/100/1000) management port with CTS function. This port is used as an out-of-band management port. There are two LEDs associated with it. The Link LED on the left side indicates the link status and the Activity LED on the right side blinks when there is traffic going through this port.



**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

- Two USB ports provide a simple interface allowing you to connect to different devices supported by Cisco MDS NX-OS. On the double decker connector, USB port 1 is on the lower position and port 2 is on the upper position.
- Supervisor CPU subsystem based on Motorola PowerPC 7447.
- Reset button that resets the Supervisor-2 without cycling the power.
- External CompactFlash slot for an optional CompactFlash card provides a convenient way to boot different images, back up the image, or store running-configuration data. The optional card can be used for storing additional software images and configuration, debugging, and syslog information. There is one LED that blinks when accessing this CompactFlash.



**Caution**

Use only the CompactFlash devices that are certified for use with Cisco MDS 9000 switches and are formatted using Cisco MDS 9000 switches. Using CompactFlash devices that are uncertified or are formatted using other platforms may result in errors.

## LEDs on the Supervisor-2 Module

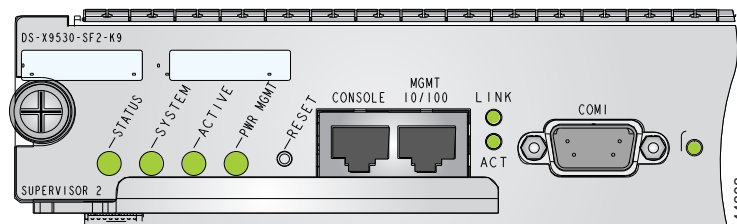
The front panel on the supervisor module has the following LEDs:

- Status LED
- System LED
- Active LED
- Power Management LED
- MGMT 10/100/1000 Ethernet port LEDs (at right of the port):
  - Link LED (on top)
  - Activity LED (on bottom)
- CompactFlash LED for external CompactFlash card

The front panel on the Supervisor-2 module also includes a reset button (see [Figure 1-13](#)).

The LEDs on the Supervisor-2 module indicate the status of the Supervisor-2 module, power supplies, and fan module. [Table 1-4](#) provides more information about these LEDs.

**Figure 1-13 Supervisor-2 Module LEDs**



***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

**Table 1-4 LEDs for the Cisco MDS 9500 Series Supervisor-2 Modules**

LED	Status	Description
Status	Green	All diagnostics pass. The module is operational (normal initialization sequence).
	Orange	One of the following occurs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The module is booting or running diagnostics (normal initialization sequence).</li> <li>An over-temperature condition occurred (a minor threshold was exceeded during environmental monitoring).</li> </ul>
	Red	One of the following occurred: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The diagnostic test failed. The module is not operational because a fault occurred during the initialization sequence.</li> <li>An over-temperature condition occurred (a major threshold was exceeded during environmental monitoring).</li> </ul>
System	Green	All chassis environmental monitors are reporting OK.
	Orange	One of the following occurred: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The power supply failed or the power supply fan failed.</li> <li>Incompatible power supplies are installed.</li> <li>The redundant clock failed.</li> </ul>
	Red	The temperature of the supervisor module exceeded the major threshold.
Active	Green	The Supervisor-2 module is operational and active.
	Orange	The Supervisor-2 module is in standby mode.
Power Management	Green	Sufficient power is available for all modules.
	Orange	Sufficient power is not available for all modules.
MGMT 10/100/1000 Ethernet Link LED	Green	Link is up.
	Off	No link.
MGMT 10/100 Ethernet Activity LED	Green	Traffic is flowing through port.
	Off	No link or no traffic.
CompactFlash	Green	The external CompactFlash card is being accessed.
	Off	No activity.

[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## Supervisor-1 Modules

The Cisco MDS 9509 and 9506 Directors support up to two Supervisor-1 or Supervisor-2 modules that can be installed in slots 5 and 6 only. The main functions and components of the Supervisor-1 modules are as follows:

- [Control and Management, page 1-21](#)
- [Crossbar Switching Fabric, page 1-22](#)
- [Processor, page 1-22](#)
- [Port Interfaces, page 1-22](#)
- [LEDs on the Supervisor-1 Module, page 1-23](#)

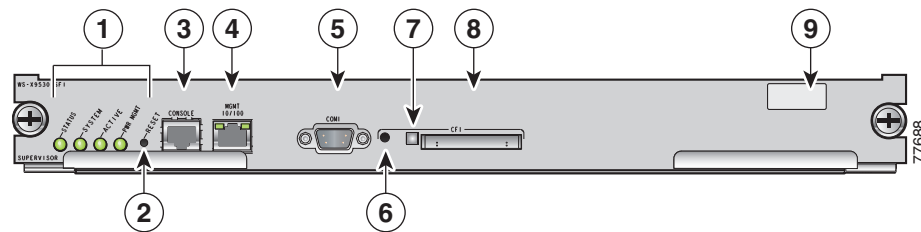


### Note

Supervisor-1 is not supported on the Cisco MDS 9513 Director.

Figure 1-14 shows a Cisco MDS 9500 Series Supervisor-1 module.

**Figure 1-14 Cisco MDS 9500 Series Supervisor-1 Module**



<b>1</b>	Status, System, Active, and Pwr Mgmt LEDs <sup>1</sup>	<b>6</b>	CompactFlash LED
<b>2</b>	Reset button	<b>7</b>	CompactFlash eject button
<b>3</b>	Console port	<b>8</b>	CompactFlash slot
<b>4</b>	MGMT 10/100 Ethernet port (with integrated Link and Activity LEDs)	<b>9</b>	Asset tag
<b>5</b>	COM1 serial port		

1. See [Table 1-5 on page 1-24](#) for status LED descriptions.

## Control and Management

The supervisor modules provide the following control and management features:

- A redundant central arbiter that provides traffic control and access fairness.
- A nondisruptive restart of a single failing process on the same supervisor.

A kernel service running on the supervisor module keeps track of the high availability policy of each process and issues a restart when a process fails. The type of restart issued is based on the process's capability:

- Warm or stateful (state is preserved)
- Cold or stateless (state is not preserved)

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

If the kernel service cannot perform a warm restart of the process, it issues a cold restart.

- A nondisruptive switchover from the active supervisor to a redundant standby without loss of traffic.

If the supervisor module has to be restarted, then the secondary supervisor (which is continuously monitoring the primary) takes over. Once a switchover has occurred and the failed supervisor has been replaced or restarted, operation does not switch back to the original primary supervisor, unless it is forced to switch back or another failure occurs.

## Crossbar Switching Fabric

The Cisco MDS 9500 Series supervisor modules provide an integrated crossbar switching fabric to connect all the switching modules. Single fabric configurations provide 720-Gbps full duplex speed with 80-Gbps full duplex bandwidth per switching module. Dual fabric configurations provide 1.4-Tbps speed with 160-Gbps full duplex bandwidth per switching module.

The Cisco MDS 9500 Series supports redundant supervisor modules. Upon power up with slots 5 and 6 active, the supervisors negotiate to determine which one is active and which is the standby supervisor.

Each supervisor exchanges its own status and updates the signal quality error (SQE) status periodically. If the active supervisor becomes disabled, the standby supervisor switches over to become the active supervisor.

Dual supervisor modules provide dual crossbar switching fabrics for redundancy.

## Processor

The Supervisor-1 module contains a Pentium III class processor. It has the following memory specifications:

Memory	Bytes
DRAM	1 GB
1 internal CompactFlash card <sup>1</sup>	512 MB
1 external CompactFlash slot <sup>2</sup>	NA <sup>3</sup>

1. The card stores software images.
2. The slot is for optional cards to store additional images, and for configuration, debugging, and syslog information.
3. NA = not applicable.

## Port Interfaces

The Supervisor-1 module provides the following port interfaces:

- RS-232 (EIA/TIA-232) console port with an RJ-45 connection that you can use to:
  - Configure the Cisco MDS 9500 Series from the CLI
  - Monitor network statistics and errors
  - Configure SNMP agent parameters
- MGMT 10/100 Ethernet port with an RJ-45 connection that provides network management capabilities.
- RS-232 COM1 port with a DB-9 connector, which can be attached to a modem.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

- CompactFlash slot for an optional CompactFlash card. The optional card can be used for storing additional software images and configuration, debugging, and syslog information.



**Caution**

Use only the CompactFlash devices that are certified for use with Cisco MDS switches and are formatted using Cisco MDS switches. Using CompactFlash devices that are uncertified or are formatted using other platforms may result in errors.

## LEDs on the Supervisor-1 Module

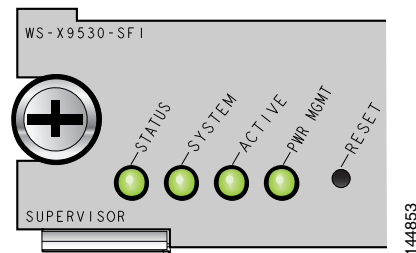
The front panel on the Supervisor-1 module has the following LEDs:

- Status LED
- System LED
- Active LED
- Power Management LED
- MGMT 10/100 Ethernet port LEDs (at top of port):
  - Link LED (on left)
  - Activity LED (on right)
- CompactFlash LED for external CompactFlash card

The front panel on the supervisor module also includes a reset button (see [Figure 1-15](#)).

The LEDs on the Supervisor-1 module indicate the status of the Supervisor-1 module, power supplies, and fan module. [Table 1-5](#) provides more information about these LEDs.

**Figure 1-15 Supervisor-1 Module LEDs**



**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Table 1-5 LEDs for the Cisco MDS 9500 Series Supervisor Modules**

LED	Status	Description
Status	Green	All diagnostics pass. The module is operational (normal initialization sequence).
	Orange	One of the following occurs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The module is booting or running diagnostics (normal initialization sequence).</li> <li>An over-temperature condition occurred (a minor threshold was exceeded during environmental monitoring).</li> </ul>
	Red	One of the following occurs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The diagnostic test failed. The module is not operational because a fault occurred during the initialization sequence.</li> <li>An over-temperature condition occurred (a major threshold was exceeded during environmental monitoring).</li> </ul>
System <sup>1</sup>	Green	All chassis environmental monitors are reporting OK.
	Orange	One of the following occurs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The power supply failed or the power supply fan failed.</li> <li>Incompatible power supplies are installed.</li> <li>The redundant clock failed.</li> </ul>
	Red	The temperature of the supervisor module exceeded the major threshold.
Active	Green	The supervisor module is operational and active.
	Orange	The supervisor module is in standby mode.
Pwr Mgmt <sup>1</sup>	Green	Sufficient power is available for all modules.
	Orange	Sufficient power is not available for all modules.
MGMT 10/100 Ethernet Link LED	Green	Link is up.
	Off	No link.
MGMT 10/100 Ethernet Activity LED	Green	Traffic is flowing through port.
	Off	No link or no traffic.
CompactFlash	Green	The external CompactFlash card is being accessed.
	Off	No activity.

1. The System and Pwr Mgmt LEDs on a redundant supervisor module are synchronized to the active supervisor module.

[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

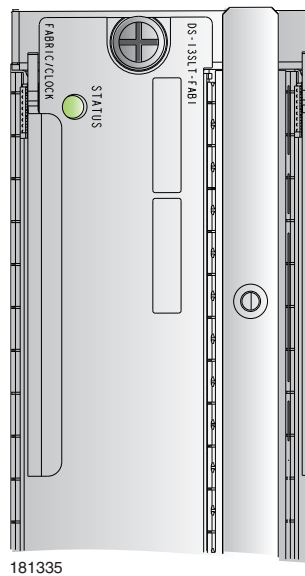
## Crossbar Modules

The Cisco MDS 9513 Director supports two external crossbar modules located at the rear of the chassis. Each Supervisor-2 module has an associated external crossbar module for redundancy. The Supervisor-2 module in slot 7 is associated with crossbar module 1 and Supervisor-2 in slot 8 is associated with crossbar module 2. Redundant crossbar modules act in an active-active method, where each switching module forwards traffic across both crossbar fabrics based on the intended destination. The traffic load is shared across both crossbar modules. Each crossbar fabric channel connects to a fabric interface ASIC on the switching modules through serial links on the midplane. Each Supervisor-2 processor also has a 20-Gbps (40-Gbps FDX) link to each crossbar fabric for participating in management and control protocols and for in-band diagnostics.

The LEDs on the crossbar modules indicate the status of the crossbar modules. [Table 1-6](#) provides more information about these LEDs.

For information regarding migrating to Generation 3 modules, see the “[Migrating to Generation 3 8-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Modules](#)” section on page A-1.

**Figure 1-16** Crossbar Module LEDs



***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

**Table 1-6** LEDs for the Cisco MDS 9500 Crossbar Modules

LED	Status	Description
Status	Green	All diagnostics pass. The module is operational (normal initialization sequence).
	Orange	One of the following occurs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The module is booting or running diagnostics (normal initialization sequence).</li><li>• An over-temperature condition occurred (a minor threshold was exceeded during environmental monitoring).</li></ul>
	Red	One of the following occurs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The diagnostic test failed. The module is not operational because a fault occurred during the initialization sequence.</li><li>• An over-temperature condition occurred (a major threshold was exceeded during environmental monitoring).</li></ul>



[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## Cisco MDS 9000 Series Module Compatibility

Table 1-7 lists the hardware modules available and the chassis compatibility associated with them.

**Table 1-7 MDS 9000 Modules and Platform Compatibility Matrix**

Module	9513	9509	9506	9222i	9216A	9216i	9216
Supervisor-2 module	X	X	X				
Supervisor -1 module		X	X				
48-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	X	X	X				
24-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	X	X	X				
4/44-port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized Fibre Channel switching module	X	X	X	X			
48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	X	X	X	X	X	X	
24-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	X	X	X	X	X	X	
12-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	X	X	X	X	X	X	
4-port 10-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	X	X	X	X	X	X	
32-port 1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	X	X	X		X	X	X
16-port 1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	X	X	X		X	X	X
8-port Gigabit Ethernet IP Storage Services module	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
4-port Gigabit Ethernet IP Storage Services module	X	X	X		X	X	X
32-port 1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel Storage Services Module (SSM)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
32-port Fibre Channel Advanced Services Module (ASM)		X	X		X	X	X
Caching Services Module (CSM)		X	X		X	X	X
18-port Fibre Channel and 4-port Gigabit Ethernet IP Services (MSM-18/4) module	X	X	X	X	X	X	
18-port Fibre Channel and 4-port Gigabit Ethernet IP Services FIPS (MSFM-18/4) module	X	X	X	X	X	X	
14-port Fibre Channel/2-port Gigabit Ethernet Multiprotocol Services (MPS-14/2) module	X	X	X		X	X	X

[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## Port Index Availability

The Cisco MDS 9500 Multilayer Directors are designed to operate with any combination of Cisco MDS 9000 modules. However, you should be aware of the maximum port availability your chassis can support. A port index is an internally assigned number that Cisco NX-OS uses to switch data packets within the director or fabric switch. When the maximum number of port indexes is reached in a chassis, any modules remaining or added to the chassis will not boot up. The number of physical ports on a Fibre Channel module is equal to its number of port indexes. However, for Gigabit Ethernet modules (IPS-8, IPS-4, MPS-14/2, MSM-18/4, and MSFM 18/4), one physical port is equal to four port indexes (one port index for iSCSI and three port indexes for FC IP tunnels). [Table 1-8](#) lists the physical ports and port indexes (virtual ports) available per Cisco MDS 9000 module.

**Table 1-8 Port Index Allocation**

Module	Physical Ports	Port Indexes Allocated
48-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	48	48
24-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	24	24
4/44-port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized Fibre Channel switching module	48	48
48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	48	48
24-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	24	24
12-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	12	12
4-port 10-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	4	4
16-port 2-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	16	16 <sup>1</sup>
32-port 2-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	32	32 <sup>1</sup>
8-port Gigabit Ethernet IP Storage Services module	8	32 <sup>1</sup>
4-port Gigabit Ethernet IP Storage Services module	4	32 (with Supervisor-1) 16 (with Supervisor-2)
32-port 2-Gbps Fibre Channel Storage Services module (SSM)	32	32 <sup>1</sup>
18-port Fibre Channel and 4-port Gigabit Ethernet IP Multiservice module (MSM-18/4)	22 <sup>2</sup>	34
18-port Fibre Channel and 4-port Gigabit Ethernet IP Multiservice FIPS module (MSFM-18/4)	22 <sup>3</sup>	34
14-port Fibre Channel/2-port Gigabit Ethernet Multiprotocol Services (MPS-14/2) module	16 <sup>4</sup>	32 (with Supervisor-1) 22 (with Supervisor-2)

1. All Generation 1 modules reserve port indexes on fixed boundaries with Supervisor-1. See [Table 1-9](#).
2. 18 Fibre Channel ports and four Gigabit Ethernet ports.
3. 18 Fibre Channel ports and four Gigabit Ethernet ports.
4. 14 Fibre Channel ports and two Gigabit Ethernet ports.

Using any combination of modules that include a Generation 1 module or a Supervisor-1 module limits the port index availability to 252 on all Cisco MDS 9500 Series directors. Generation 1 modules also require contiguous port indexes where the system assigns a block of port index numbers contiguously starting from the first port index reserved for the slot that the module is inserted in (See [Table 1-9](#)). This

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

means that while there may be enough port indexes available for a Generation 1 module, the module may not boot up because the available port indexes are not in a contiguous range or the contiguous block does not start at the first port index for a given slot.

**Example 1-1** shows a scenario with a Supervisor-1 module, where a 48-port Generation 2 module borrowed port indexes from the first slot. Slot 1 still has 16 port indexes available, but the full 32 indexes are no longer available (28-31 are used by the module in slot 4). This means that no Generation 1 module except a 16-port Fibre Channel switching module can be inserted into slot 1 because some of the port indexes for the slot are already in use.

**Example 1-1 Borrowing Port Indexes from Another Slot**

```
switch# show port index-allocation
Module index distribution:
-----+-----
Slot | Allowed |           Alloted indices info
      | range*  | Total |           Index values
-----+-----+-----+-----
1    | 0- 31  | -     | -
2    | 32- 63 | 32    | 32-63
3    | 64- 95 | 48    | 64-95,224-239
4    | 96- 127| 48    | 96-127, 240-252, 28-31
7    | 128- 159| 32   | 128-159
8    | 160- 191| 32   | 160-191
9    | 192- 223| 32   | 192-223
SU   | 253-255 | 3     | 253-255
*Allowed range applicable only for Generation-1 modules
```

Using any combination of modules that include a Generation 1 module and a Supervisor-2 module limits the port index availability to 252 on all Cisco MDS 9500 Series Directors. The Generation 1 modules can use any contiguous block of port indexes that start on the first port index reserved for any slot in the range 0-252. (See [Table 1-9](#).)

Using any combination of only Generation 2 with a Supervisor-2 module allows a maximum of 528 (with an architectural limit of 1020) port indexes on all Cisco MDS 9500 Series Directors. Generation 2 modules do not need contiguous port indexes. Generation 2 modules use the available indexes in the slot that it is installed and then borrow available indexes from the supervisors. If the module requires more indexes, it starts borrowing available indexes from slot 1 of the chassis until it has the number of port indexes necessary.



**Note**

Enter the **purge module** CLI command to free up reserved port indexes after you remove a module.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Table 1-9 Port Index Requirements**

Supervisor	Module	Port Index Requirements
Supervisor-1	Generation 1	Indexes must be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Contiguous</li> <li>• In the range assigned to the given slot</li> <li>• Start with the lowest value assigned to that slot</li> </ul> Maximum 252 assignable port indexes available,
	Generation 2	Indexes can be any available number in the range 0–252.
Supervisor-2	Generation 1	Indexes must be contiguous, but can be any available contiguous block in the range 0–252.
	Generation 2	Indexes can be any available number in the range 0–1020 if all modules are Generation 2 modules. Otherwise, indexes can be any available number in the range 0–252.

Table 1-10 shows a valid sample configuration for maximum capacity within the port index limits. The table lists a mixture of Generation 1 and Generation 2 modules on a Cisco MDS 9509 Director.

**Table 1-10 Sample Chassis Configuration on a Cisco MDS 9509 Director (Valid)**

Slot No.	Modules in Cisco MDS 9509 Director	Generation	Physical Ports	Port Indexes
1	12-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	1	12	12
2	48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	2	48	48
3	48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	2	48	48
4	48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	2	48	48
5	Supervisor-1	1		
6	Supervisor-1	1		
7	48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	2	48	48
8	48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	2	48	48
9				
	<b>Totals</b>		<b>252</b>	<b>252</b>

Table 1-11 shows a sample configuration that exceeds the port index limit. The table lists a mixture of Generation 1 storage IPS modules and Generation 2 modules on a Cisco MDS 9509 Director. In this example, one of the modules installed will not boot up because the number of port indexes needed has been exceeded.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Table 1-11 Maximum Chassis Configuration on a Cisco MDS 9509 Director (Exceeded)**

Slot No.	Modules in Cisco MDS 9509 Director	Generation	Physical Ports	Port Indexes
1	18-port Fibre Channel and 4-port Gigabit Ethernet IP Multiservice module (MSM-18/4)	2	22	34
2	14-port Fibre Channel/2-port Gigabit Ethernet Multiprotocol Services (MPS-14/2) module	1	16	22
3	8-port Gigabit Ethernet IP Storage Services module	1	8	32
4	4-port Gigabit Ethernet IP Storage Services module	1	4	16
5	48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	2	48	48
6	Supervisor-1	1		
7	Supervisor-1	1		
8	48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	2	48	48
9	48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	2	48	48
10	48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	2	48	48
	<b>Totals</b>		<b>240</b>	<b>296</b>

Using any combination of modules that include a Generation 1 module and a Supervisor-2 module limits the port index availability to 252 on all Cisco MDS 9500 Series Directors. But the Generation 1 modules can use any contiguous block of port indexes in the range 0–252 (See [Table 1-9](#)).

Using any combination of only Generation 2 with a Supervisor-2 module allows a maximum of 528 (with an architectural limit of 1020) port indexes on all Cisco MDS 9500 Series Directors. Generation 2 modules do not need contiguous port indexes. Generation 2 modules will use the available ports in the slot that it is installed and then borrow available ports from the supervisors, and then restart at slot 1 of the chassis until it has the number of port indexes necessary.

[Table 1-12](#) shows a valid sample configuration for maximum capacity within the port index limits. The table only lists Generation 2 modules in a Cisco MDS 9513 Director.

**Table 1-12 Maximum Chassis Configuration on a Cisco MDS 9513 Director (Valid)**

Slot No.	Modules in Cisco MDS 9513 Director	Generation	Physical Ports	Port Indexes
1	48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	2	48	48
2	48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	2	48	48
3	48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	2	48	48
4	48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	2	48	48
5	48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	2	48	48
6	48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	2	48	48
7	Supervisor-2	2		
8	Supervisor-2	2		
9	48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	2	48	48
10	48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	2	48	48

**[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)**

**Table 1-12** Maximum Chassis Configuration on a Cisco MDS 9513 Director (Valid) (continued)

Slot No.	Modules in Cisco MDS 9513 Director	Generation	Physical Ports	Port Indexes
11	48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	2	48	48
12	48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	2	48	48
13	48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module	2	48	48
	<b>Totals</b>		<b>528</b>	<b>528</b>

## Switching Modules

The Cisco MDS 9500 Series supports the following hot-swappable Fibre Channel switching modules:

- Generation 3 modules
  - [48-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module](#)
  - [24-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module](#)
  - [4/44-port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized Fibre Channel Switching Module](#)
- Generation 2 modules
  - [48-Port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module](#)
  - [24-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module](#)
  - [12-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module](#)
  - [4-port 10-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module](#)
- Generation 1 modules
  - [32-Port 2-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module](#)
  - [16-Port 2-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module](#)

The Cisco MDS 9500 Series supports up to eleven hot-swappable switching modules. By combining different switching modules in a single, modular chassis, you can design cost and performance optimized storage networks in a wide range of application environments.

The Fibre Channel switching modules provide system-wide power management and autonegotiation, which allows ports to negotiate for speed at the other end of the link. Each module has temperature sensors and an EEPROM that stores serial number and model number information.

The Fibre Channel port interfaces support hot-swappable Fibre Channel SFP and SFP+ transceivers, which can be short wavelength (SWL) or long wavelength (LWL). The port interfaces also support coarse wavelength-division multiplexing (CWDM) and dense wavelength-division multiplexing (DWDM) SFP transceivers, which can be used for extended long wavelength (ELWL) transmission or for coarse wavelength-division multiplexing (CWDM) and dense wavelength-division multiplexing (DWDM). See the [“Supported Transceivers”](#) section on page 1-55.



### Note

The internal bootflash installed on the modules are not field-replaceable units. Do not remove or replace internal bootflash on the modules. Modifying the factory-installed bootflash is not supported.

For configuration information about the modules, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide* or the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Fabric Manager Configuration Guide*.

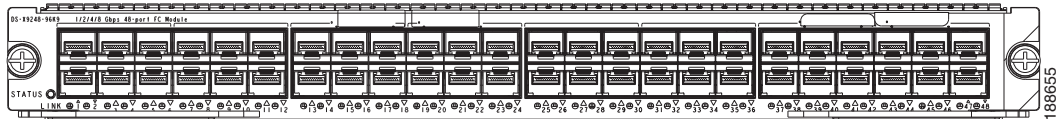
[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## 48-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module

The 48-Port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module offers 48 autosensing 1-, 2-, 4- and 8-Gbps Fibre Channel ports and can be used in the Cisco MDS 9500 Series Switches. The 48-port switching module can be configured in one of two operational modes: shared bandwidth mode (default) and dedicated bandwidth mode.

Figure 1-17 shows a 48-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module. The front panel connectors support standard modular SFP and SFP+ transceivers and the speed detection is autosensing.

**Figure 1-17** 48-Port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module

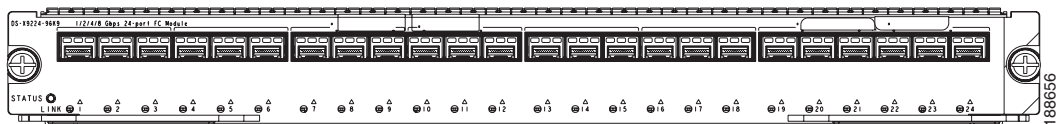


## 24-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module

The 24-Port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module offers 24 autosensing 1-, 2-, 4- and 8-Gbps Fibre Channel ports and can be used in the Cisco MDS 9500 Series Switches. The 24-port switching module can be configured in one of two operational modes: shared bandwidth mode (default) and dedicated bandwidth mode.

Figure 1-18 shows a 24-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module. The front panel connectors support standard modular SFP and SFP+ transceivers and the speed detection is autosensing.

**Figure 1-18** 24-Port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module



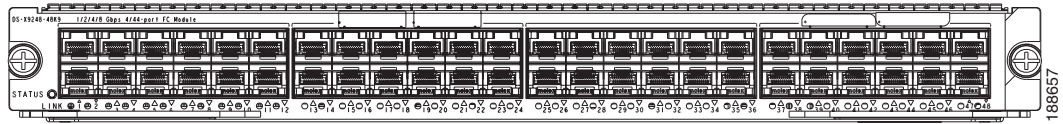
## 4/44-port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized Fibre Channel Switching Module

The 4/44-port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized Fibre Channel switching module offers 48 autosensing 1-, 2-, 4- and 8-Gbps Fibre Channel ports and can be used in any of the Cisco MDS 9500 Series chassis and in the Cisco MDS 9222i Switches. The 48-port switching module can be configured in one of two operational modes: shared bandwidth mode (default) and dedicated bandwidth mode.

Figure 1-19 shows a 4/44-port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized Fibre Channel switching module. The front panel connectors support standard modular SFP and SFP+ transceivers and the speed detection is autosensing.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure 1-19** 4/44-port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized Fibre Channel Switching Module



## 48-Port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module

The 48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module offers 48 autosensing 1-, 2-, and 4-Gbps Fibre Channel ports and can be used in any of the Cisco MDS 9500 Series chassis and in the Cisco MDS 9216i and 9216A Switches. The 48-port switching module can be configured in one of two operational modes: shared bandwidth mode (default) and dedicated bandwidth mode.

Figure 1-20 shows a 48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module. The front panel connectors support standard modular SFP and the speed detection is autosensing.

**Figure 1-20** 48-Port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module

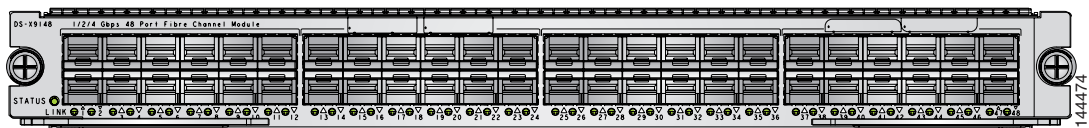
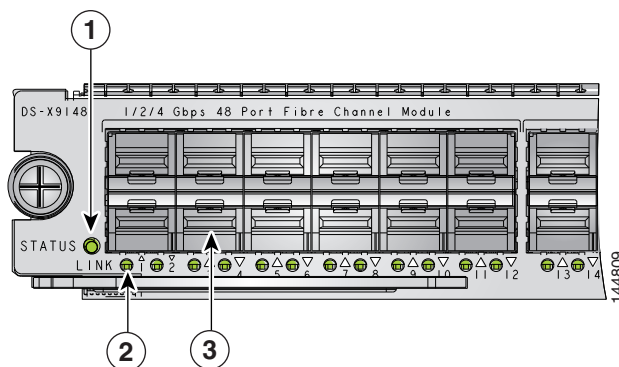


Figure 1-21 shows the port numbering and LEDs on the 48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module.

**Figure 1-21** 48-Port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module LEDs



1	Status LED	3	Fibre Channel ports
2	Link LEDs		



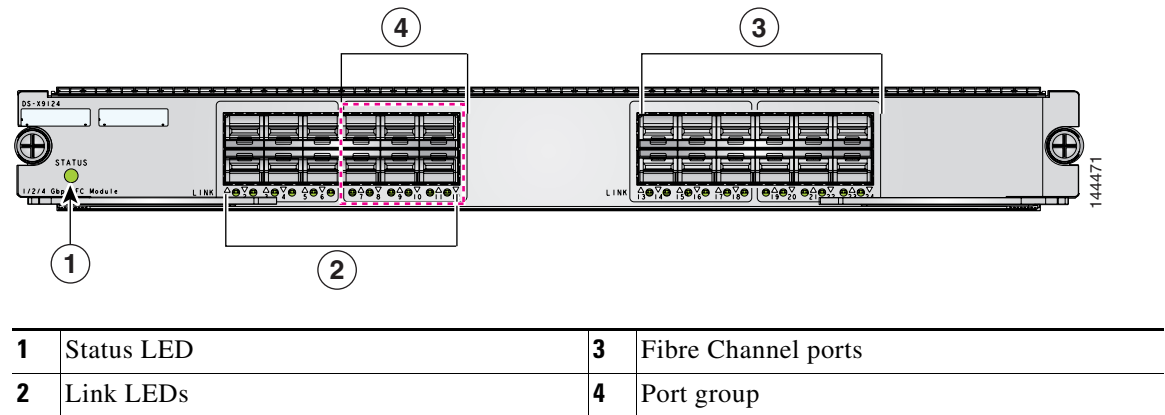
[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## 24-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module

The 24-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module offers 24 autosensing 1-, 2-, and 4-Gbps Fibre Channel ports and can be used in any of the Cisco MDS 9500 Series chassis and in the Cisco MDS 9216i and 9216A Switches. The 24-port switching module can be configured in one of two operational modes: shared bandwidth mode (default) and dedicated bandwidth mode.

Figure 1-22 shows a 24-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module. The front panel connectors support standard modular SFP and the speed detection is autosensing.

**Figure 1-22** 24-Port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module

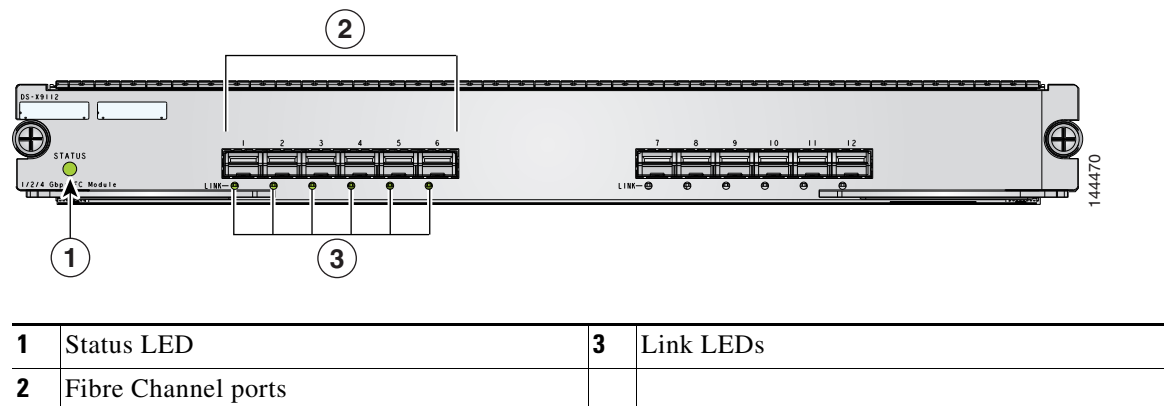


## 12-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module

The 12-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module can be used in any of the Cisco MDS 9500 Series chassis and in the Cisco MDS 9216i and 9216A Switches. The 12-port 4-Gbps switching module is a full rate mode module providing 12 SPF-based Fibre Channel interfaces. Each interface is capable of supporting full line rate operation at 4-Gbps interface speed. The module delivers a sustained data rate of up to 4 Gbps in each direction, on all ports simultaneously, and up to 96 Gbps of continuous, aggregate bandwidth when attached to high-performance servers and storage subsystems.

Figure 1-23 shows a 12-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module. The front panel connectors support standard modular SFP and the speed detection is autosensing.

**Figure 1-23** 12-Port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module



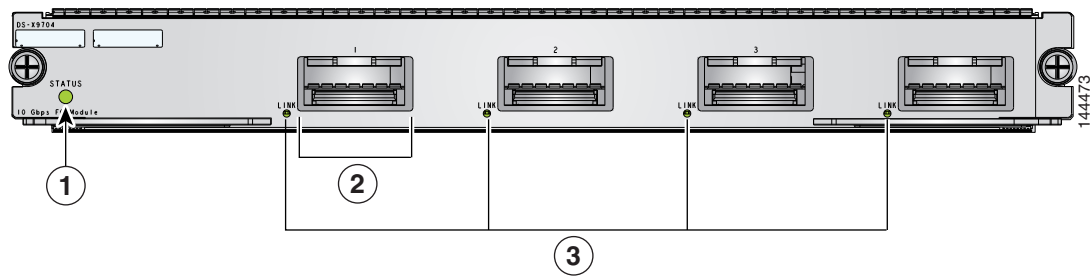
[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## 4-port 10-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module

The 4-port 10-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module offers four dedicated bandwidth Fibre Channel ports running at 10 Gbps with no oversubscription. This module can be used in any of the Cisco MDS 9500 Series chassis and in the Cisco MDS 9216i and 9216A Switches. The module delivers a sustained data rate of up to 10 Gbps in each direction, on all ports simultaneously, and up to 80 Gbps of continuous, aggregate bandwidth.

Figure 1-24 shows a 4-port 10-Gbps switching module. The front panel connectors support standard modular X2 interfaces and the speed is fixed at 10 Gbps.

**Figure 1-24** 4-Port 10-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module



<b>1</b>	Status LED	<b>3</b>	Link LED
<b>2</b>	X2 port interfaces		

[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## LEDs on the Generation 2 Switching Modules

Table 1-13 describes the LEDs for the 48-port, 24-port, and 12-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching modules and the 4-port 10-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module.

**Table 1-13** LEDs for the Cisco MDS 9000 Family Generation 2 Fibre Channel Switching Modules

LED	Status	Description
Status	Green	All diagnostics pass. The module is operational (normal initialization sequence).
	Orange	One of the following occurs or occurred: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The module is booting or running diagnostics (normal initialization sequence).</li> <li>The inlet air temperature of the system has exceeded the maximum system operating temperature limit (a minor environmental warning). To ensure maximum product life, you should immediately correct the environmental temperature and restore the system to normal operation.</li> </ul>
	Red	One of the following occurs or occurred: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The diagnostic test failed. The module is not operational because a fault occurred during the initialization sequence.</li> <li>The inlet air temperature of the system has exceeded the safe operating temperature limits of the card (a major environmental warning). The card has been shut down to prevent permanent damage.</li> </ul>
Link	Solid green	Link is up.
	Intermittent flashing green	Link is up (traffic on port).
	Solid yellow	Link is disabled by software.
	Flashing yellow	A fault condition exists.
	Off	No link.

## 32-Port 2-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module

The 32-port 2-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module can be used to allocate bandwidth optimally. The module is organized into eight four-port groups. Only the first port in each four-port group can be an ISL. If the first port is an ISL, the other three ports in the group are disabled. The four ports within a port group share a single internal channel resulting in a subscription ratio of approximately 3.2 to 1. The 32-port 2-Gbps switching module provides more ports at a lower price per port. Figure 1-25 shows a 32-port switching module.

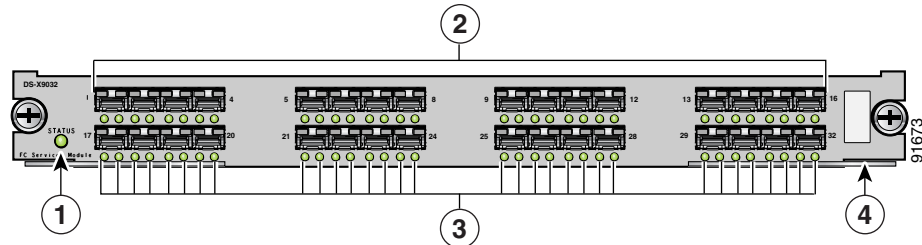
**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**



**Tip**

For a full 2-Gbps bandwidth between two hosts, connect one host to the first port group and the second host to the second port group.

**Figure 1-25 Cisco MDS 9000 Family 32-Port 2-Gbps Switching Module**

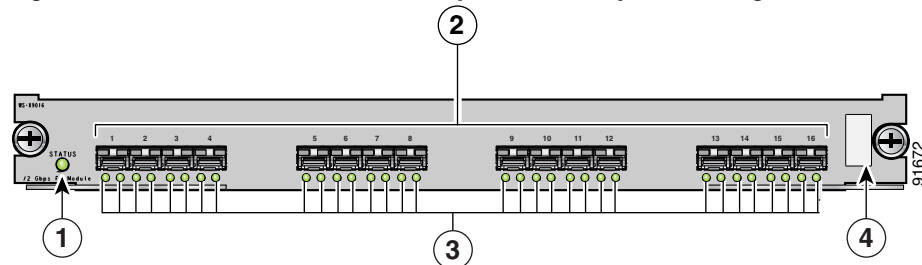


<b>1</b>	Status LED	<b>3</b>	Link LEDs (under ports, on left) and Speed LEDs (under ports, on right)
<b>2</b>	1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel port group	<b>4</b>	Asset tag

## 16-Port 2-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Module

The 16-port 2-Gbps switching module supports a sustained data rate of up to 2-Gbps in each direction, on all ports simultaneously. The autosensing 2-Gbps ports of the 16-port Fibre Channel switching module deliver up to 64-Gbps of continuous, aggregate bandwidth when attached to high-performance servers and storage subsystems. [Figure 1-26](#) shows a 16-port 2-Gbps switching module.

**Figure 1-26 Cisco MDS 9000 Family 16-Port 2-Gbps Switching Module**



<b>1</b>	Status LED	<b>3</b>	Link LEDs (under ports, on left) and Speed LEDs (under ports, on right)
<b>2</b>	1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel ports	<b>4</b>	Asset tag

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## Switching Module Features

Each switching module draws its power from the 42 V supplied on the backplane with local DC/DC power converters and regulators.

The control processor on the switching module provides power-on, offline, and online diagnostics. The control processor can be used for configuring devices on the switching module and to gather statistical data from each port.

The control processor can determine which slot it is plugged into, and it can monitor its DC/DC power source and temperature. The control processor signals the supervisor module and displays an alarm on its front panel when a problem is detected.

The front panel on the switching module provides basic status information, such as power-on, self-test running, self-test passed, alarm, and ready.

The binary image for the switching module is downloaded from the supervisor module. Prior to the image download, the control processor on the switching module runs from code stored on its local CompactFlash card.



---

**Note**

---

Routine software downloads are not required.

---

The supervisor module can force a reset on the switching module and controls whether power is applied to the switching module.

If a single component or a set of components on the switching module fails, this does not disable other switching modules if that is the only failure in the system.

Each switching module has a hardware watchdog timer for detecting most component failures. This watchdog resets the card if it is not serviced periodically.

[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## LEDs on the Generation 1 Switching Module

Table 1-14 describes the LEDs for the 16-port and 32-port switching modules.

**Table 1-14** LEDs for the Cisco MDS 9000 Family Generation 1 Fibre Channel Switching Modules

LED	Status	Description
Status	Green	All diagnostics pass. The module is operational (normal initialization sequence).
	Orange	One of the following occurs or occurred: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The module is booting or running diagnostics (normal initialization sequence).</li> <li>The inlet air temperature of the system has exceeded the maximum system operating temperature limit (a minor environmental warning). To ensure maximum product life, you should immediately correct the environmental temperature and restore the system to normal operation.</li> </ul>
	Red	One of the following occurs or occurred: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The diagnostic test failed. The module is not operational because a fault occurred during the initialization sequence.</li> <li>The inlet air temperature of the system has exceeded the safe operating temperature limits of the card (a major environmental warning). The card has been shut down to prevent permanent damage.</li> </ul>
Speed	On	2-Gbps mode.
	Off	1-Gbps mode.
	Steady flashing green	Link is up (beacon used to identify port). <sup>1</sup>
Link	Solid green	Link is up.
	Intermittent flashing green	Link is up (traffic on port).
	Solid yellow	Link is disabled by software.
	Flashing yellow	A fault condition exists.
	Off	No link.

1. The flashing green light turns on automatically when an external loopback is detected that causes the interfaces to be isolated. The flashing green light overrides the beacon mode configuration. The state of the LED is restored to reflect the beacon mode configuration after the external loopback is removed.

The Fibre Channel switching modules provide autoconfiguring Fibre Channel ports that support Fibre Channel speeds of 1.0625 Gbps and 2.125 Gbps. For more information about supported port types, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide*.

**[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)**

## Services Modules

The Cisco MDS 9500 Series supports the following hot-swappable Generation 1 services modules:

- [18/4-Port Multiservice Module, page 1-41](#)
- [18/4-Port Multiservice Federal Information Processing Standards Module, page 1-42](#)
- [14/2-Port Multiprotocol Services Module, page 1-44](#)
- [IP Storage Services Modules, page 1-46](#)
- [32-Port Fibre Channel Advanced Services Module, page 1-48](#)
- [32-Port Fibre Channel Storage Services Module, page 1-50](#)
- [Caching Services Module, page 1-52](#)



### Note

The internal bootflash installed on the modules are not field-replaceable units. Do not remove or replace internal bootflash on the modules. Modifying the factory installed bootflash is not supported.

## 18/4-Port Multiservice Module

The Cisco MDS 9000 Family 18/4-port Multiservice (MSM-18/4) module provides 18 autosensing 1-, 2-, and 4-Gbps Fibre Channel ports and four Gigabit Ethernet IP services ports. The MSM-18/4 module provides multiprotocol capabilities such as Fibre Channel, Fibre Channel over IP (FCIP), Small Computer System Interface over IP (iSCSI), IBM Fiber Connectivity (FICON), and FICON Control Unit Port (CUP) management.

The MSM-18/4 module provides 18 4-Gbps Fibre Channel interfaces for high-performance SAN and mainframe connectivity and four Gigabit Ethernet ports for FCIP and iSCSI storage services. Individual ports can be configured with hot-swappable shortwave, longwave, extended-reach, coarse wavelength-division multiplexing (CWDM) or dense wavelength-division multiplexing (DWDM) Small Form-Factor Pluggables (SFPs) for connectivity up to 125 miles (200 km).

The MSM-18/4 module can minimize latency for disk and tape through FCIP write acceleration and FCIP tape write and read acceleration. The MSM-18/4 module provides up to 16 virtual Inter-Switch Link (ISL) connections on the four 1-Gigabit Ethernet ports through tunneling, and provides up to 4095 buffer-to-buffer credits that can be assigned to a single Fibre Channel port.

The MSM-18/4 supports hardware-based encryption and it is required to run the Storage Media Encryption (SME) which, is a part of the Cisco NX-OS. For more information on SME, see the *Cisco MDS Storage Media Encryption Guide*.

The MSM-18/4 supports SAN extension over IP and is compatible with current SAN extension products, such as MPS-14/2, 9216i, and IPS. The MSM-18/4 provides an integrated next generation 4-Gbps FC platform for SAN extension. The MSM-18/4 module supports Internet Protocol version 6 (IPv6) as mandated by the U.S. Department of Defense (DoD), Japan, and China. The IPv6 support is provided for FCIP, iSCSI, and management traffic routed in-band and out-of-band.

The MSM-18/4 provides intelligent diagnostics, protocol decoding, and network analysis tools with the integrated Call Home capability.

[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## 18/4-Port Multiservice Federal Information Processing Standards Module

The Cisco MDS 9000 Family 18/4-port Multiservice FIPS (MSFM-18/4) module is a FIPS 140-2 Level 3-compliant version of the MSM-18/4 module. The MSFM-18/4 module is identical to the MSM-18/4 module in form and function, with the exception of an opaque potting material encapsulating the cryptographic boundary of the MSFM-18/4 module to prevent unauthorized access and tampering.

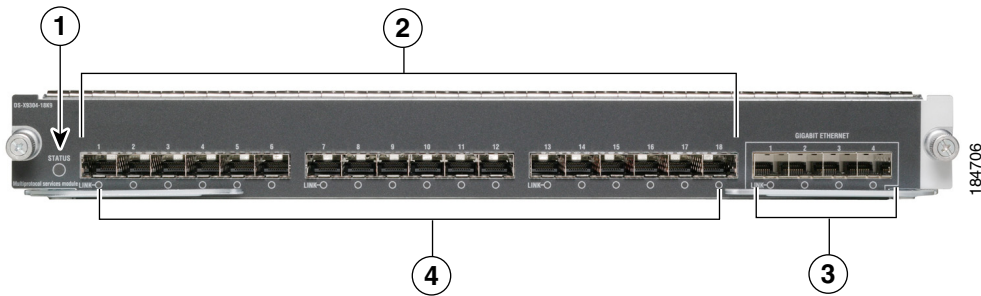


**Note**

Cisco MDS 9500 Series switches running Cisco MDS SAN-OS Release 3.2(1) or later, or NX-OS Release 4.1(1b) support the MSM-18/4 and the MSFM-18/4 module.

Figure 1-27 shows the MSM-18/4 module.

**Figure 1-27 18/4-Port Multiservice Module**



<b>1</b>	Status LED	<b>3</b>	Gigabit Ethernet ports
<b>2</b>	1-Gbps/2-Gbps/4-Gbps Fibre Channel ports	<b>4</b>	Link LEDs



***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## LEDs on the 18/4-Port Multiservice Module

Table 1-15 describes the LEDs for the 18/4-port Multiservice module.

**Table 1-15** LEDs for the Cisco MDS 9000 Family 18/4-Port Multiservice Modules

LED	Status	Description
Status	Green	All diagnostics pass. The module is operational (normal initialization sequence).
	Orange	One of the following occurs or occurred: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The module is booting or running diagnostics (normal initialization sequence).</li> <li>The inlet air temperature of the system exceeded the maximum system operating temperature limit (a minor environmental warning). To ensure maximum product life, you should immediately correct the environmental temperature and restore the system to normal operation.</li> </ul>
	Red	One of the following occurred: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The diagnostic test failed. The module is not operational because a fault occurred during the initialization sequence.</li> <li>The inlet air temperature of the system exceeded the safe operating temperature limits of the card (a major environmental warning). The card shut down to prevent permanent damage.</li> </ul>
Link	Solid green	Link is up.
	Solid yellow	Link is disabled by software.
	Flashing yellow	A fault condition exists.
	Off	No link.

[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## 14/2-Port Multiprotocol Services Module

The 14/2-port Multiprotocol Services (MPS-14/2) module provides 14 2-Gbps Fibre Channel autosensing ports and two 1-Gigabit Ethernet ports for iSCSI and FCIP over Gigabit Ethernet. The MPS-14/2 module supports the intelligent features available on other modules, including VSANs, security, and traffic management.

The 14 2-Gbps autosensing Fibre Channel ports (labeled 1 through 14) are best used for applications requiring high bandwidth; for example, Inter-Switch Link (ISL) connections between switches and high-performance host or storage controllers. Each Fibre Channel port supports a sustained data rate of up to 2 Gbps in each direction.

The Cisco 9513 supports up to seven MPS-14/2 modules. The Cisco MDS 9509 supports up to seven MPS-14/2 modules. The Cisco MDS 9506 supports up to four MPS-14/2 modules. The two Gigabit Ethernet ports (labeled 1 and 2) provide 1-Gbps throughput for IP services, including iSCSI and FCIP over Gigabit Ethernet. The MPS-14/2 also supports hardware-based encryption and compression for these Gigabit Ethernet ports. This hardware-based encryption handles the computationally intensive IPsec feature for IP services.

The MPS-14/2 modules support FCIP compression to maximize the effective WAN bandwidth of SAN extension solutions. It achieves up to a 30 to 1 compression ratio, with typical ratios of 2 to 1 over a wide variety of data sources. With the addition of hardware-based compression, the MPS-14/2 module is able to provide optimal levels of compressed throughput for implementations across low-bandwidth to high-bandwidth links.

The Gigabit Ethernet ports on the MPS-14/2 module support the iSCSI protocol, the FCIP protocol, or both protocols simultaneously. For information about configuring the ports, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide* or the *Cisco MDS Family Fabric Manager Configuration Guide*.

The Fibre Channel port interfaces support hot-swappable Fibre Channel SFP transceivers, which can be short wavelength (SWL) for connectivity up to 1640 feet (500 meters), or long wavelength (LWL) for connectivity up to 6.2 miles (10 km). All Fibre Channel interfaces are autosensing 1-Gbps or 2-Gbps compatible. The Fibre Channel interfaces also support coarse wavelength-division multiplexing (CWDM) SFP transceivers, which can be used for extended long wavelength (ELWL) transmission or for CWDM. See the [“Supported Transceivers” section on page 1-55](#).

**Note**

---

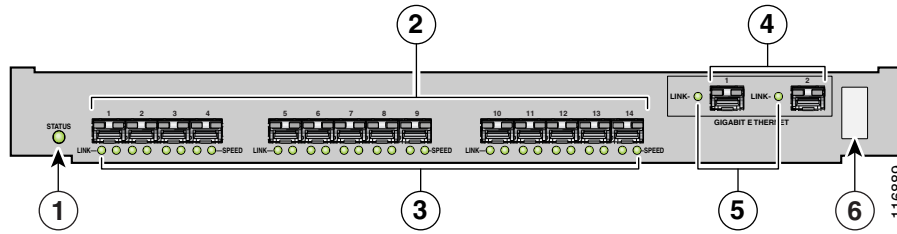
Cisco MDS 9500 Series switches running Cisco MDS SAN-OS Release 2.x, 3.x, or NX-OS Release 4.1(1b) support the MPS-14/2 module.

---

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

Figure 1-28 shows an MPS-14/2 module.

**Figure 1-28 Cisco MDS 9000 Family MPS-14/2 Module**



<b>1</b>	Status LED	<b>4</b>	Gigabit Ethernet ports
<b>2</b>	1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel ports	<b>5</b>	Link LEDs
<b>3</b>	Link LEDs (under ports, on left) and Speed LEDs (under the ports, on the right)	<b>6</b>	Asset tag

## LEDs on the MPS-14/2 Module

Table 1-16 describes the LEDs for the MPS-14/2 modules.

**Table 1-16 LEDs for the Cisco MDS 9000 Family MPS-14/2 Modules**

LED	Status	Description
Status	Green	All diagnostics pass. The module is operational (normal initialization sequence).
	Orange	One of the following occurs or occurred: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The module is booting or running diagnostics (normal initialization sequence).</li> <li>The inlet air temperature of the system exceeded the maximum system operating temperature limit (a minor environmental warning). To ensure maximum product life, you should immediately correct the environmental temperature and restore the system to normal operation.</li> </ul>
	Red	One of the following occurred: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The diagnostic test failed. The module is not operational because a fault occurred during the initialization sequence.</li> <li>The inlet air temperature of the system exceeded the safe operating temperature limits of the card (a major environmental warning). The card shut down to prevent permanent damage.</li> </ul>
Speed	On	2-Gbps mode.
	Off	1-Gbps mode.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Table 1-16 LEDs for the Cisco MDS 9000 Family MPS-14/2 Modules (continued)**

LED	Status	Description
Link	Solid green	Link is up.
	Flashing green	Link is up (beacon used to identify port).
	Solid yellow	Link is disabled by software.
	Flashing yellow	A fault condition exists.
	Off	No link.

## IP Storage Services Modules

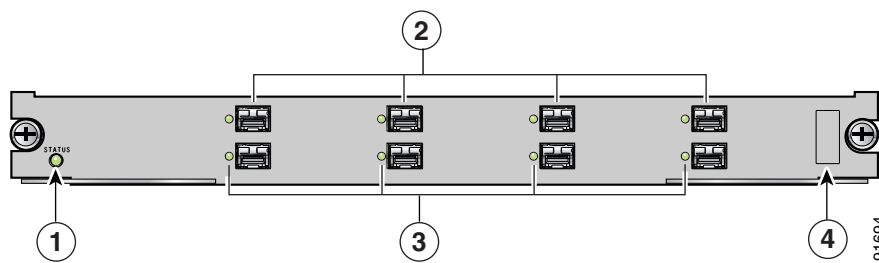
The 4-port and 8-port IP Storage services (IPS-4 and IPS-8) modules provide four or eight 1-Gigabit Ethernet ports for iSCSI as well as FCIP over Gigabit Ethernet, and they support the intelligent features available on other modules, including VSANs, security, and traffic management.

The IPS module ports can be configured to support the iSCSI protocol, the FCIP protocol, or both protocols simultaneously. For information about configuring the ports, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide* or the *Cisco MDS Family Fabric Manager Configuration Guide*.

The Fibre Channel port interfaces support hot-swappable Gigabit Ethernet SFP transceivers, which can be short wavelength (SWL) for connectivity up to 1640 feet (500 meters), or long wavelength (LWL) for connectivity up to 6.2 miles (10 km). The port interfaces also support coarse wavelength-division multiplexing (CWDM) SFP transceivers, which can be used for extended long wavelength (ELWL) transmission or for CWDM. See the “Supported Transceivers” section on page 1-55.

Figure 1-29 shows an IPS-8 services module.

**Figure 1-29 Cisco MDS 9000 Family IPS-8 Services Module**

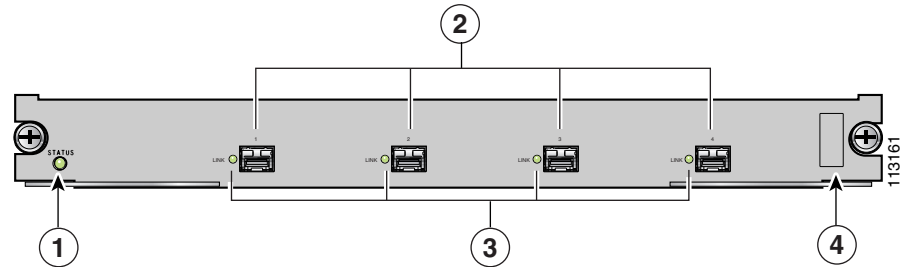


<b>1</b>	Status LED	<b>3</b>	Link LEDs
<b>2</b>	Gigabit Ethernet ports	<b>4</b>	Asset tag

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

Figure 1-30 shows the IPS-4 services module.

**Figure 1-30 Cisco MDS 9000 Family IPS-4 Services Module**



<b>1</b>	Status LED	<b>3</b>	Link LEDs
<b>2</b>	Gigabit Ethernet ports	<b>4</b>	Asset tag

## LEDs on IP Storage Services Modules

Table 1-17 describes the LEDs for the IPS services modules.

**Table 1-17 LEDs for the Cisco MDS 9000 Family IPS Module**

LED	Status	Description
Status	Green	All diagnostics pass. The module is operational (normal initialization sequence).
	Orange	One of the following occurs or occurred: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The module is booting or running diagnostics (normal initialization sequence).</li> <li>The inlet air temperature of the system exceeded the maximum system operating temperature limit (a minor environmental warning). To ensure maximum product life, you should immediately correct the environmental temperature and restore the system to normal operation.</li> </ul>
	Red	One of the following occurred: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The diagnostic test failed. The module is not operational because a fault occurred during the initialization sequence.</li> <li>The inlet air temperature of the system exceeded the safe operating temperature limits of the card (a major environmental warning). The card shut down to prevent permanent damage.</li> </ul>
Link	Solid green	Link is up.
	Flashing green	Link is up (beacon used to identify port).
	Solid yellow	Link is disabled by software.
	Flashing yellow	A fault condition exists.
	Off	No link.

[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## 32-Port Fibre Channel Advanced Services Module

The Cisco MDS 9000 Family 32-port Fibre Channel Advanced Services Module (ASM) enables pooling of heterogeneous storage for increased storage utilization, simplified storage management, and reduced total cost of storage ownership. The ASM incorporates all the capabilities of the Cisco MDS 9000 DS-X9032 Fibre Channel switching module and also provides scalable, in-band storage virtualization services. The module makes it possible to allocate bandwidth optimally.

The Fibre Channel port interfaces support hot-swappable Fibre Channel SFP transceivers, which can be short wavelength (SWL) for connectivity up to 500 meters (1640 feet), or long wavelength (LWL) for connectivity up to 10 km (6.2 miles). All interfaces are autosensing 1-Gbps or 2-Gbps compatible. The port interfaces also support coarse wavelength-division multiplexing (CWDM) SFP transceivers, which can be used for extended long wavelength (ELWL) transmission or for CWDM. See the “[Supported Transceivers](#)” section on page 1-55.

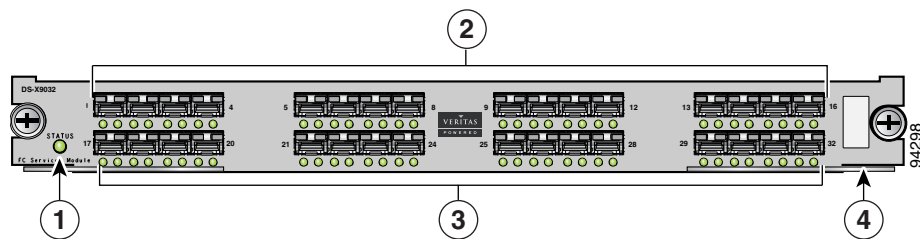


### Note

Cisco MDS 9509 and 9506 Directors running Cisco MDS SAN-OS Release 1.2(2a) to Release 2.1(x) support the Fibre Channel ASM. The Cisco MDS 9513 Director does not support the ASM.

Figure 1-31 shows the Fibre Channel ASM.

**Figure 1-31 Fibre Channel ASM**



<b>1</b>	Status LED	<b>3</b>	Link and Speed LEDs
<b>2</b>	1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel port group	<b>4</b>	Asset tag

Each module draws power from the 42 V supplied on the backplane with local DC/DC power converters and regulators.

The control processor on the module provides power-on, offline, and online diagnostics. The control processor can be used to configure devices on the switching module and to gather statistical data from each port.

The control processor monitors the DC/DC power source and temperature. The control processor signals the supervisor module and displays an alarm on its front panel when a problem is detected.

The front panel on the services module provides basic status information, such as power-on, self-test running, self-test passed, alarm, and ready.

The binary image for the services module is downloaded from the supervisor module. Prior to the image download, the control processor on the switching module runs from code stored on its local CompactFlash card. The image for an ASM can be specified using the ASM-SFN boot variable. For details on how to specify the ASM-SFN boot variable, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide*.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Note**

Software downloads are only necessary when a revision of the code is needed.

The supervisor module can force a reset on the services module and controls whether power is applied to the switching module.

If a single component or a set of components on the switching module fails, this failure does not disable another switching module if that is the only failure in the system.

Each ASM has a hardware watchdog timer to detect most component failures. The watchdog timer resets the card if it is not serviced periodically.

## LEDs on the Fibre Channel Advanced Services Modules

Table 1-18 describes the LEDs for the ASM.

**Table 1-18** LEDs for the Cisco MDS 9000 Family Fibre Channel ASMs

LED	Status	Description
Status	Green	All diagnostics pass and the module is operational (normal initialization sequence).
	Orange	One of the following occurs or occurred: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The module is booting or running diagnostics (normal initialization sequence).</li> <li>The inlet air temperature of the system exceeded the maximum system operating temperature limit (a minor environmental warning). To ensure maximum product life, you should immediately correct the environmental temperature and restore the system to normal operation.</li> </ul>
	Red	One of the following occurred: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The diagnostic test failed. The module is not operational because a fault occurred during the initialization sequence.</li> <li>The inlet air temperature of the system exceeded the safe operating temperature limits of the card (a major environmental warning). The card shut down to prevent permanent damage.</li> </ul>
Speed	On	2-Gbps mode.
	Off	1-Gbps mode.
Link	Solid green	Link is up.
	Steady flashing green	Link is up (beacon used to identify port).
	Intermittent flashing green	Link is up (traffic on port).
	Solid yellow	Link is disabled by software.
	Flashing yellow	A fault condition exists.
	Off	No link.

[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## 32-Port Fibre Channel Storage Services Module

The 32-port Fibre Channel Storage Services Module (SSM) for the Cisco MDS 9000 Family supports up to 32 Fibre Channel ports, provides distributed intelligent storage services, and supports future storage services.



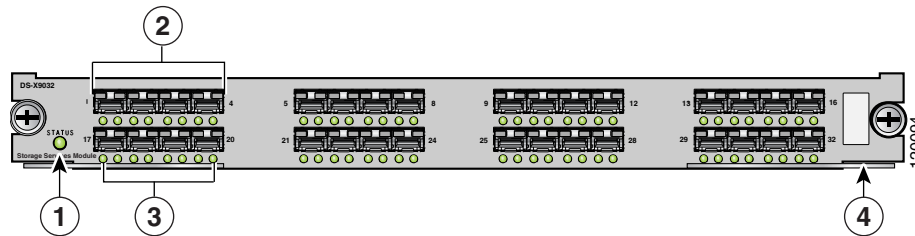
**Note**

Cisco MDS 9500 Series switches running Cisco MDS SAN-OS Release 2.x, 3.x, or NX-OS Release 4.1(1b) support the SSM.

The Fibre Channel ports support hot-swappable Fibre Channel SFP transceivers, which can be short wavelength (SWL) for connectivity up to 1640 ft (500 m), or long wavelength (LWL) for connectivity up to 6.2 miles (10 km). All interfaces are autosensing 1-Gbps/2-Gbps compatible. The ports also support coarse wavelength-division multiplexing (CWDM) SFP transceivers, which can be used for extended long wavelength (EWL) transmission or for CWDM. For more information about SFP transceivers, see the “Supported Transceivers” section on page 1-55.

Figure 1-32 shows the SSM.

**Figure 1-32 Cisco MDS 9000 Family Storage Services Module**



<b>1</b>	Status LED	<b>3</b>	Link and speed LEDs
<b>2</b>	1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel port group	<b>4</b>	Asset tag

Each module draws power from the 42 V supplied on the backplane with local DC/DC power converters and regulators.

The control processor on the module provides power-on, offline, and online diagnostics. The control processor can be used to configure devices on the switching module and to gather statistical data from each port.

The control processor monitors the DC/DC power source and temperature. The control processor signals the SSM and displays an alarm on its front panel when it detects a problem.

The front panel of the SSM provides basic status information, such as power-on, self-test running, self-test passed, alarm, and ready.

The binary image for the SSM is downloaded from the supervisor module. Prior to the image download, the control processor on the services module runs from code stored on its local CompactFlash card. The image for an SSM can be specified using the SSI boot variable. For details on how to specify the SSI boot variable, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide*.



**Note**

Software downloads are only necessary when a revision of the code is needed.

The SSM can force a reset and control whether or not power is applied to the switching module.



***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

If a single component or a set of components on the switching module fails, this failure will not disable another switching module if that is the only failure in the system.

For the detection of most component failures, each switching module has a hardware watchdog timer that resets the card if it is not serviced periodically.

## LEDs on the Storage Services Modules

Table 1-19 describes the LEDs for the Storage Services Modules.

**Table 1-19** LEDs for the Cisco MDS 9000 Family Storage Services Modules

LED	Status	Description
Status	Green	All diagnostics pass. The module is operational (normal initialization sequence).
	Orange	One of the following occurs or occurred: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The module is booting or running diagnostics (normal initialization sequence).</li> <li>The inlet air temperature of the system exceeded the maximum system operating temperature limit (a minor environmental warning). To assure maximum product life, you should immediately correct the environmental temperature and restore the system to normal operation.</li> </ul>
	Red	One of the following occurred: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The diagnostic test failed. The module is not operational because a fault occurred during the initialization sequence.</li> <li>The inlet air temperature of the system exceeded the safe operating temperature limits of the card (a major environmental warning). The card shut down to prevent permanent damage.</li> </ul>
Speed	On	2-Gbps mode.
	Off	1-Gbps mode.
Link	Solid green	Link is healthy.
	Steady flashing green	Link is healthy and beacon is enabled.
	Intermittent flashing green	Link is up and traffic is flowing through port.
	Solid yellow	Link is disabled by software.
	Flashing yellow	A fault condition exists.
	Off	No link.

[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## Caching Services Module

The Caching Services Module (CSM) provides virtualization services that allow the Cisco MDS 9000 Family switches to reallocate physical resources as virtual resources for increased efficiency. The CSM receives and sends data through the switch backplane. It has two disk drives, two internal batteries for backup in case of power failure, and no external ports.

CSMs must be implemented in pairs in the fabric to provide redundancy and backup. Only two or more CSMs in a fabric are supported. However, the CSMs do not have to be installed in the same switch.

The CSM may shut down because of the software, an external power failure, or the module separated from the backplane while it still had power. The CSM automatically backs up the data in memory to the disk drives and then shuts down. The CSM batteries provide adequate power to back up data without external power.

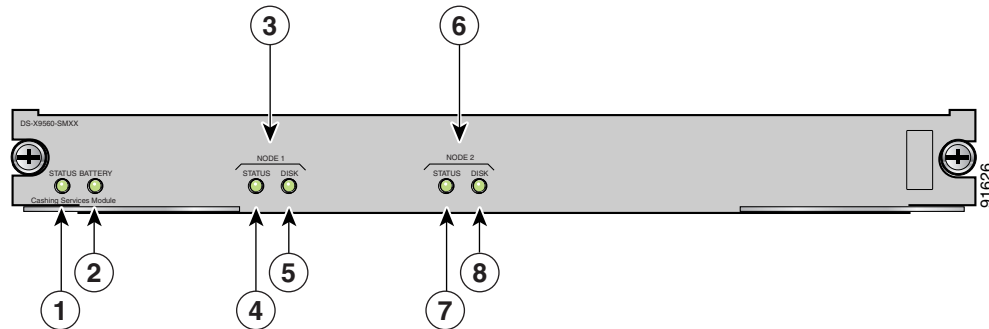


**Note**

The Cisco MDS 9513 does not support the CSM.

Figure 1-33 shows the CSM.

**Figure 1-33 CSM**



1	Status LED	5	Disk 1 Status LED
2	Battery LED	6	Node 2 LEDs
3	Node 1 LEDs	7	Node 2 Status LED
4	Node 1 Status LED	8	Disk 2 Status LED

Figure 1-34 shows the location of the disk drives and batteries on the CSM.

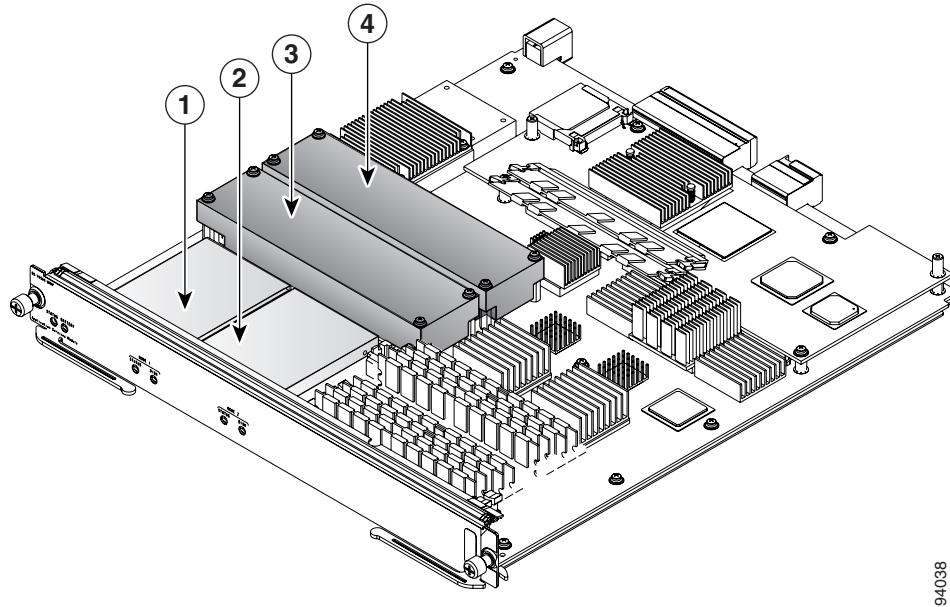


**Caution**

The batteries are shipped fully charged and should be handled with caution accordingly.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure 1-34 CSM, Internal View**



94038

<b>1</b>	Disk drive 2	<b>3</b>	Battery 2
<b>2</b>	Disk drive 1	<b>4</b>	Battery 1

See the “[Installing a Switching or Services Module, Including Caching Services Modules](#)” section on [page 2-45](#) for information about installing the CSM and maintaining the CSM batteries.

**[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)**

## LEDs on the Caching Services Module

Table 1-20 describes the LEDs for the CSM.

**Table 1-20** LEDs for the Cisco MDS 9000 Family CSM

LED	Status	Description
Status	Green	All diagnostics pass, and the module is operational (normal initialization sequence).
	Orange	One of the following occurs or occurred: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The module is booting or running diagnostics (normal initialization sequence).</li> <li>The inlet air temperature of the system exceeded the maximum system operating temperature limit (a minor environmental warning). To ensure maximum product life, you should immediately correct the environmental temperature and restore the system to normal operation.</li> </ul>
	Red	One of the following occurred: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The diagnostic test failed. The module is not operational because a fault occurred during the initialization sequence.</li> <li>The inlet air temperature of the system exceeded the safe operating temperature limits of the card (a major environmental warning). The card shut down to prevent permanent damage.</li> </ul>
Node	Green	Node is fully operational.
	Flashing green	Node is not yet part of a cluster.
	Orange	The module is booting or node is administratively down.
	Flashing orange	Node is in service mode.
	Red	Node failure.
	Off	Node does not have power.
Battery	Green	Battery has sufficient charge to dump cache.
	Flashing green	Battery is charging and has sufficient charge to dump cache. Battery conditioning in progress.
	Flashing orange	Battery is charging but has insufficient charge to dump cache.
	Red	Battery failure or battery is charged to the extent possible but insufficient to dump cache; replace CSM.
	Off	Battery does not have power and is not charged.
Disk	Solid green	Disk is operational.
	Flashing orange	Dumping cache to disk.
	Flashing green	Restoring cache from disk.
	Red	Disk failure.
	Off	Disk does not have power.

[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## Supported Transceivers

The following types of transceivers are available from Cisco and are supported on the Cisco MDS 9500 Series:

- X2 transceivers
- Fibre Channel SFP and SFP+ transceivers, in either SWL or LWL
- Combination Fibre Channel/Gigabit Ethernet SFP transceivers, in either SWL or LWL
- Combination Fibre Channel/Gigabit Ethernet CWDM SFP transceivers, which can be used for ELWL transmission or for CWDM
- Gigabit Ethernet SFP transceiver, 1-Gbps copper
- Fibre Channel DWDM SFP transceiver, which can be used for ELWL transmission or for DWDM



---

**Note**

Switches running Cisco MDS SAN-OS Release 1.x, 2.x, 3.x, or NX-OS Release 4.1(1b) support combination Fibre Channel/Gigabit Ethernet SFP transceivers.

---

The transceivers are field-replaceable and hot-swappable. You can use any combination of SFP transceivers that are supported by the switch. The only restrictions are that SWL transceivers must be paired with SWL transceivers, and LWL transceivers with LWL transceivers, and the cable must not exceed the stipulated cable length for reliable communications.

For more information about the X2 transceiver, see the [“X2 Transceiver Specifications” section on page D-19](#).

For more information about a specific Cisco SFP transceiver, see the [“SFP and SFP+ Transceiver Specifications” section on page D-22](#). SFP transceivers can be ordered separately or with the Cisco MDS 9500 Series.



---

**Note**

Use only Cisco transceivers in the Cisco MDS 9500 Series. Each Cisco transceiver is encoded with model information that enables the switch to verify that the transceiver meets the requirements for the switch.

---

## X2 Transceivers

The X2 transceiver is a small form-factor transceiver optimized for 10-Gbps applications and uses an SC connector. The X2 transceiver is ideally suited for Ethernet, Fibre Channel and telecom switches, and standard (PCI) peripheral component interconnect based server and storage connections. The X2 provides robust thermal performance and electromagnetic shielding.

For more information about X2 transceiver specifications, see the [“X2 Transceiver Specifications” section on page D-19](#).

[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## Fibre Channel SFP Transceivers

Cisco Fibre Channel SFP transceivers are available in SWL or LWL versions. Both of these versions are 1-Gbps/2-Gbps/4-Gbps capable. Cisco Fibre Channel SFP+ transceivers are available in SWL or LWL versions. Both of these versions are 2-Gbps/4-Gbps/8-Gbps capable.

Cisco Fibre Channel SFP transceivers have LC connectors and comply with 1-Gbps/2-Gbps/4-Gbps Fibre Channel standards as defined in FC-PI 10.0 2. Cisco Fibre Channel SFP+ transceivers have LC connectors and comply with 2-Gbps/4-Gbps/8-Gbps Fibre Channel standards as defined in FC-PI-4.

For more information about Fibre Channel SFP and SFP+ transceiver specifications, see the [“SFP and SFP+ Transceiver Specifications”](#) section on page D-22.

## Combination Fibre Channel/Gigabit Ethernet SFP Transceivers

The combination Fibre Channel/Gigabit Ethernet SFP transceivers from Cisco Systems are available in SWL or LWL versions. Both of these versions are 1-Gbps/2-Gbps capable.

The combination SFP transceivers from Cisco Systems have LC connectors and comply with 1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel as defined in FC-PI 10.0 2 and Gigabit Ethernet as defined in IEEE 802.3z.

For more information about Fibre Channel/Gigabit Ethernet SFP transceiver specifications, see the [“SFP and SFP+ Transceiver Specifications”](#) section on page D-22.

## CWDM Combination Fibre Channel/Gigabit Ethernet SFP Transceivers

The Cisco CWDM SFP transceivers have LC connectors and support Gigabit Ethernet and 1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel. They match the wavelength plan of Cisco CWDM GBICs and Cisco CWDM optical add/drop multiplexers (OADMs). Cisco 4-Gbps CWDM SFP transceivers are also available.

CWDM SFP transceivers are used in the following ways:

- CWDM transmission can send and receive up to eight laser wavelengths carrying different signals simultaneously on the same optical fiber using an OADM.
- ELWL signals can transmit over longer distances than LWL SFP transceivers.

There are eight different “colors” of CWDM SFP transceivers, one for each fixed wavelength. The fiber-optic cables from the CWDM SFP transceivers must be connected to an OADM. The OADM combines the wavelengths of the different outgoing signals into one composite send signal. The OADM also separates the received transmissions into the different wavelengths and sends them to the corresponding CWDM SFP transceiver.

For more information about CWDM SFP transceiver specifications, see the [“SFP and SFP+ Transceiver Specifications”](#) section on page D-22.

## Gigabit Ethernet SFP Transceivers

The 4-port and 8-port IP Storage services (IPS-4 and IPS-8) modules provide four or eight 1-Gigabit Ethernet ports that support Gigabit Ethernet SFP transceivers. The Gigabit Ethernet SFP transceivers have RJ-45 connectors and support Gigabit Ethernet (1-Gbps).

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

For more information about Gigabit Ethernet SFP transceiver specifications, see the “[SFP and SFP+ Transceiver Specifications](#)” section on page D-22.

## DWDM Fibre Channel SFP Transceivers

The Cisco DWDM SFP transceivers have LC connectors and support 1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel. The DWDM SFP transceivers match the International Telecommunications Union (ITU) 100-GHz wavelength grid and the wavelength plan of Cisco 100-GHz ONS product family.

DWDM SFP transceivers are used in the following ways:

- DWDM transmission can send and receive up to 32 laser wavelengths carrying different signals simultaneously on the same optical fiber using an optical filter.
- ELWL signals can transmit over longer distances than LWL SFP transceivers.

For more information about Gigabit Ethernet SFP transceiver specifications, see the “[SFP and SFP+ Transceiver Specifications](#)” section on page D-22.

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***





## CHAPTER 2

# Installing the Cisco MDS 9500 Series

---

This chapter describes how to install the Cisco MDS 9500 Series chassis and its components, and includes the following information:

- [Preinstallation, page 2-2](#)
- [Installing the Chassis in a Cabinet or Rack, page 2-6](#)
- [System Grounding, page 2-17](#)
- [Grounding the Chassis, page 2-23](#)
- [Starting Up the Switch, page 2-28](#)
- [Removing, Installing, and Verifying Supervisor, Switching, and Services Modules, page 2-38](#)
- [Maintaining a Caching Services Module, page 2-50](#)
- [Removing and Installing a Power Supply or PEM, page 2-51](#)
- [Removing and Installing Fan Modules, page 2-68](#)
- [Removing and Installing CompactFlash Cards, page 2-75](#)
- [Removing and Installing Clock Modules, page 2-76](#)



### Note

---

Before you install, operate, or service the system, read the *Regulatory Compliance and Safety Information for the Cisco MDS 9000 Family* for important safety information.

---



### Warning

#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

**This warning symbol indicates danger. You are in a situation that could cause physical injury. Before you work on any equipment, be aware of the hazards involved with electrical circuitry and be familiar with standard practices for preventing accidents. Use the statement number provided at the end of each warning to locate its translation in the translated safety warnings that accompanied this device.**  
Statement 1071

#### SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS

---



### Warning

---

**This unit is intended for installation in restricted access areas. A restricted access area can be accessed only through the use of a special tool, lock and key, or other means of security.**  
Statement 1017

---

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***



**Warning**

---

**Only trained and qualified personnel should be allowed to install, replace, or service this equipment.** Statement 1030

---



**Warning**

---

**A readily accessible two-poled disconnect device must be incorporated in the fixed wiring.** Statement 1022

---

## Preinstallation

This section provides the following topics:

- [Installation Options, page 2-2](#)
- [Installation Guidelines, page 2-3](#)
- [Required Equipment, page 2-5](#)
- [Unpacking and Inspecting the Switch, page 2-5](#)

## Installation Options

The Cisco MDS 9513 Director can be installed using the following methods:

- In an open four-post EIA rack, using:
  - The rack-mount kit shipped with the switch

The Cisco MDS 9509 Director can be installed using the following methods:

- In an open EIA rack, using:
  - The rack-mount kit shipped with the switch
  - The telco and EIA Shelf Bracket Kit (optional and purchased separately) in addition to the rack-mount kit shipped with the switch
- In a perforated or solid-walled EIA cabinet, using:
  - The rack-mount kit shipped with the switch
  - The telco and EIA Shelf Bracket Kit (optional and purchased separately) in addition to the rack-mount kit shipped with the switch
- In a two-post telco rack using the rack-mount kit shipped with the switch
- In a four-post nonthreaded cabinet or rack using the optional 9500 Shelf Bracket Kit

The Cisco MDS 9506 Director can be installed using the following methods:

- In an open EIA rack, using:
  - The rack-mount kit shipped with the switch
  - The telco and EIA Shelf Bracket Kit (optional and purchased separately) in addition to the rack-mount kit shipped with the switch
- In a perforated or solid-walled EIA cabinet, using:
  - The rack-mount kit shipped with the switch

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

- The telco and EIA Shelf Bracket Kit (optional and purchased separately) in addition to the rack-mount kit shipped with the switch
- In a two-post telco rack, using:
  - The rack-mount kit shipped with the switch
  - The telco and EIA Shelf Bracket Kit (optional and purchased separately) in addition to the front brackets shipped with the switch

For instructions on installing the switch using the rack-mount kit shipped with the switch, see the [“Installing the Chassis in a Cabinet or Rack”](#) section on page 2-6.

For instructions on installing the switch using the optional telco and EIA Shelf Bracket Kit (purchased separately), see the [“Cisco MDS 9000 Family Telco and EIA Shelf Bracket”](#) section on page C-6.

**Note**

The telco and EIA Shelf Bracket Kit is optional and is not provided with the switch. To order the kit, contact your switch provider.

**Note**

The telco and EIA Shelf Bracket Kit is not intended for use with a Cisco MDS 9513 Director or Cisco MDS 9509 Director in a two-post telco rack.

## Installation Guidelines

Follow these guidelines when installing the Cisco MDS 9500 Series:

- Plan your site configuration and prepare the site before installing the chassis. Cisco recommends that you use the site planning tasks listed in [Appendix F, “Site Planning and Maintenance Records.”](#)
- Ensure that there is adequate space around the switch to allow for servicing the switch and for adequate airflow (airflow requirements are listed in [Appendix D, “Technical Specifications”](#)).
- Ensure that the air-conditioning meets the heat dissipation requirements listed in [Appendix D, “Technical Specifications.”](#)
- Ensure that the cabinet or rack meets the requirements listed in [Appendix C, “Cabinet and Rack Requirements.”](#)

**Note**

Jumper power cords are available for use in a cabinet. For more information, see the [“Jumper Power Cord”](#) section on page E-11.

- Ensure that the chassis is adequately grounded. Grounding the chassis is recommended in all cases, and is mandatory for Cisco MDS 9506 Directors that have a DC power supply installed. If the switch is not mounted in a grounded rack or cabinet, Cisco recommends connecting the system ground on the chassis and the power supply ground to an earth ground, regardless of whether the power supplies are AC or DC.
- Ensure that the site power meets the power requirements listed in [Appendix D, “Technical Specifications.”](#) You can use an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) to protect against power failures.

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

**Caution**

Avoid UPS types that use ferroresonant technology. These UPS types can become unstable with systems such as the Cisco MDS 9000 Family, which can have substantial current draw fluctuations because of fluctuating data traffic patterns.

- Ensure that circuits are sized according to local and national codes. For North America:
  - The 1900-W AC power supplies require a 20-A circuit.
  - The 1900-W DC power supplies require a 70-A circuit.
  - The 2500-W AC power supplies require a 20-A circuit.
  - The 2500-W DC power supplies require a 100-A circuit.
  - The 4000-W AC power supplies require a 30-A circuit.
  - The 6000-W AC power supplies require two 220 V inputs at 20-A circuit.

If you are using 200/240 VAC power sources in North America, the circuits must be protected by two-pole circuit breakers.

**Caution**

To prevent loss of input power, ensure that the total maximum loads on the circuits supplying power are within the current ratings of the wiring and breakers.

- Record your installation and configuration information as you work. See [Appendix F, “Site Planning and Maintenance Records.”](#)
- Use the following screw torques when installing the switch:
  - Captive screws: 4 in-lb
  - M3 screws: 4 in-lb
  - M4 screws: 12 in-lb
  - M6 screws: 20 in-lb
  - 10-32 screws: 20 in-lb
  - 12-24 screws: 30 in-lb

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## Required Equipment

Gather the following items before beginning the installation:

- Number 1 and number 2 Phillips screwdrivers with torque capability.
- 3/16-inch flat-blade screwdriver.
- Tape measure and level.
- ESD wrist strap or other grounding device.
- Antistatic mat or antistatic foam.
- In addition to the grounding items provided in the accessory kit, you need the following items:
  - Grounding cable (6 AWG recommended), sized according to local and national installation requirements; the required length depends on the proximity of the Cisco MDS 9500 to proper grounding facilities.
  - Crimping tool large enough to accommodate girth of lug.
  - Wire-stripping tool.
- For DC power supplies in a Cisco MDS 9506 Director, you need two 10-32 ring lugs for each DC power supply.
- For the Cisco MDS 9513 Director, you need a mechanical lift to handle the weight of the chassis.

## Unpacking and Inspecting the Switch



**Two people are required to lift the chassis. Grasp the chassis underneath the lower edge and lift with both hands. To prevent injury, keep your back straight and lift with your legs, not your back. To prevent damage to the chassis and components, never attempt to lift the chassis with the handles on the power supplies or on the interface processors, or by the plastic panels on the front of the chassis. These handles were not designed to support the weight of the chassis.** Statement 5



Use a mechanical lift to lift the MDS 9513 chassis. The Cisco MDS 9513 Director can weigh up to 375 lb (170 kg) when fully loaded, depending on what modules populate the chassis.



Cisco recommends that a third person assist whenever the chassis is being moved or lifted. The Cisco MDS 9509 Director weighs approximately 170 lb (77 kg) when fully loaded, and the Cisco MDS 9506 Director weighs approximately 125 lb (57 kg) when fully loaded with all modules and power supplies.



When handling switch components, wear an ESD strap and handle modules by the carrier edges only. An ESD socket is provided on the chassis. For the ESD socket to be effective, the chassis must be grounded either through the power cable, the chassis ground, or metal-to-metal contact with a grounded rack.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Tip**

Keep the shipping container for use when moving or shipping the chassis in the future. The shipping carton can be flattened and stored with the pallet.

**Note**

If you purchased this product through a Cisco reseller, contact the reseller directly for technical support. If you purchased this product directly from Cisco Systems, contact Cisco Technical Support at this URL: <http://www.cisco.com/warp/public/687/Directory/DirTAC.shtml>.

**Note**

The switch is thoroughly inspected before shipment. If any damage occurred during transportation or any items are missing, contact your customer service representative immediately.

To inspect the shipment, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Compare the shipment to the equipment list provided by your customer service representative and ensure that you have received all items, including the following:
- Print documentation and CD-ROMs
  - Grounding lug kit
  - Rack-mount kit
  - ESD wrist strap
  - Cables and connectors
  - Any optional items ordered
- Step 2** Check for damage and report any discrepancies or damage to your customer service representative. Keep the following information ready:
- Invoice number of shipper (see packing slip)
  - Model and serial number of the damaged unit
  - Description of damage
  - Effect of damage on the installation
- 

## Installing the Chassis in a Cabinet or Rack

This section describes how to install the Cisco MDS 9500 Series in a cabinet or rack that meets the requirements described in this document, using the rack-mount kit provided with the switch. A separate procedure is provided for each type of director:

- [Installing the Cisco MDS 9513 Director in a Rack, page 2-7](#)
- [Installing the Cisco MDS 9509 Director in a Rack, page 2-11](#)
- [Installing the Cisco MDS 9506 Director in a Rack, page 2-15](#)

**Caution**

If the rack is on wheels, ensure that the brakes are engaged or that the rack is otherwise stabilized.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Note**

You can remove the modules and other field-replaceable components to make moving and positioning the chassis easier and safer. See the “[Removing, Installing, and Verifying Supervisor, Switching, and Services Modules](#)” section on page 2-38 for instructions specific to the component.

## Installing the Cisco MDS 9513 Director in a Rack

The 6000-W AC power supplies for the Cisco MDS 9513 Director are designed to provide an output power for the modules and fans. Each power supply has two AC power connections and will provide power as follows:

- One AC power connection @ 110 VAC = No output
- Two AC power connection @ 110 VAC = 2900-W output
- One AC power connection @ 220 VAC = 2900-W output
- Two AC power connection @ 220 VAC = 6000-W output

**Note**

Power output does not include the power used by the individual modules used in the chassis.

Installation of the Cisco MDS 9513 Director in a rack requires a mechanical lift to place the chassis in the rack. Ensure that you have access to the lift during the installation process.

[Table 2-1](#) lists the items provided in the Cisco MDS 9513 rack-mount kit.

**Note**

The rack-mount kit for the Cisco MDS 9513 Director includes rack-mount support brackets, which are required for the duration of the installation and are not removable.

**Table 2-1 Contents for the Rack-Mount Support Bracket Kit**

Quantity	Part Description
2	Rack-mount support bracket
2	Rack-mount support bar
20	12-24 x 3/4-in. Phillips screws
20	10-32 x 3/4-in. Phillips screws

To install the Cisco MDS 9513 chassis in a rack using the rack-mount kit provided with the switch, follow these steps:

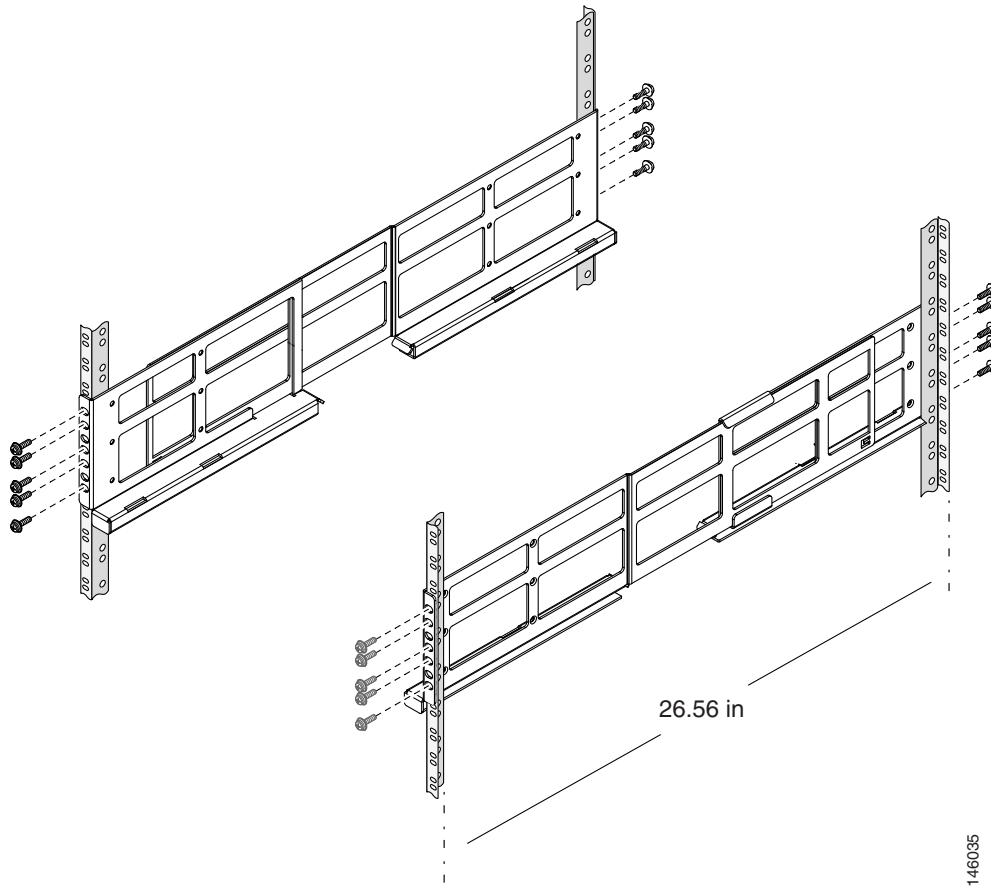
- Step 1** Adjust the distance between the front and rear cabinet vertical rack-mount rails to  $26.56 \pm 0.15$  in. (67.46 cm). This step must be performed prior to installing the support rack-mount brackets.
- Step 2** Position one of the support rack-mount brackets in the rack and adjust it to the depth of the cabinet rack. Repeat this step for the other side. Use the screws to secure the brackets but do not tighten them yet.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Note**

If you are using the cable management bracket shipped with the switch, do not install the top four screws into the front right of the bracket. However, you must install the bottom screw (see [Figure 2-1](#)). The top four screws will be used to install the cable management bracket to the rail.

**Figure 2-1** Positioning the Rack-Mount Support Brackets

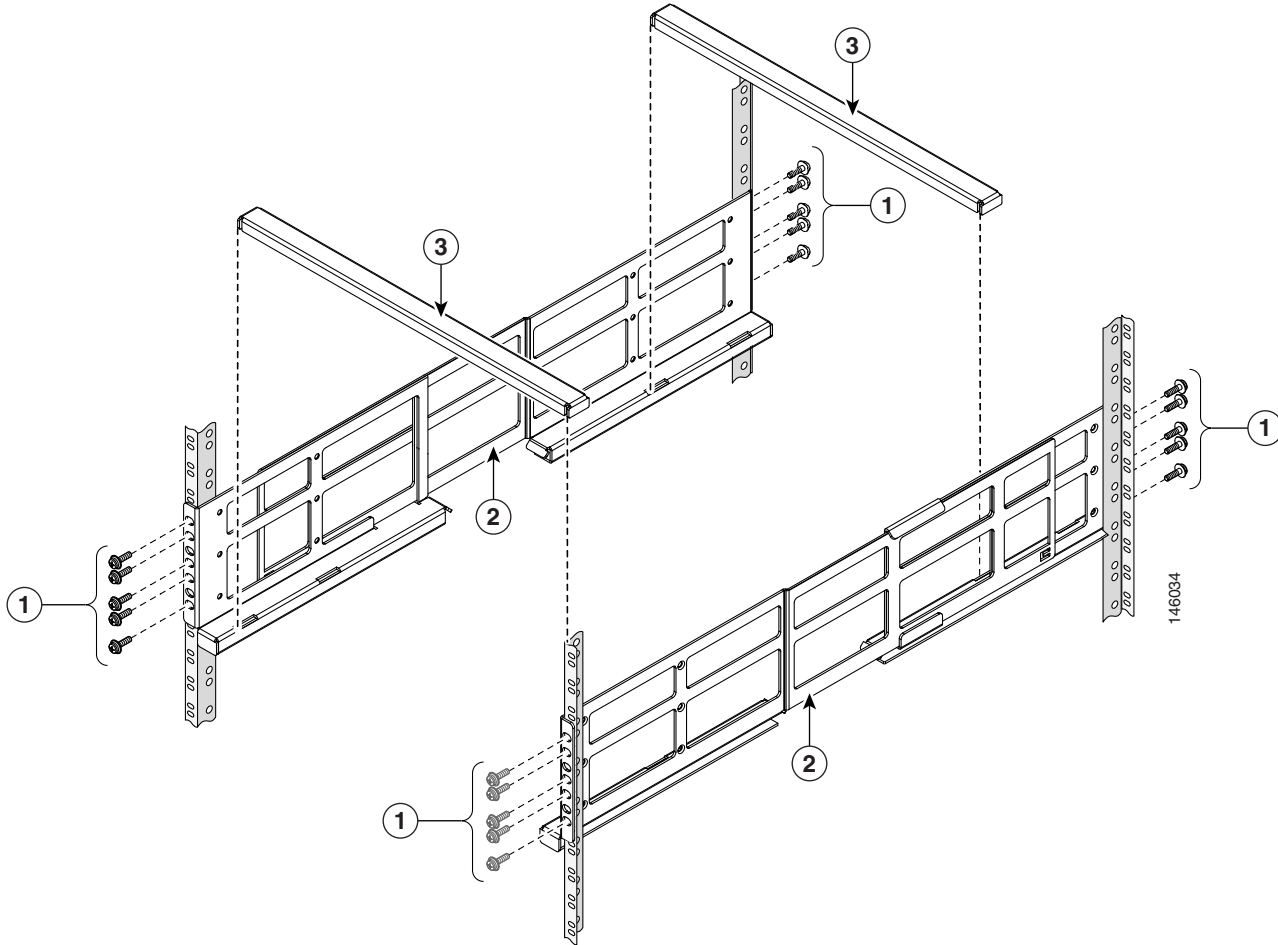


- Step 3** Install one rack-mount support bar into the slots located on the rack-mount support brackets. Repeat this for the other support bar.



**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure 2-2 Positioning the Support Bars**



<b>1</b>	Screws	<b>3</b>	Rack-mount support bar
<b>2</b>	Rack-mount support bracket		

**Step 4** Once the support bars are installed, secure the rack-mount support brackets to the rack using the screws provided.

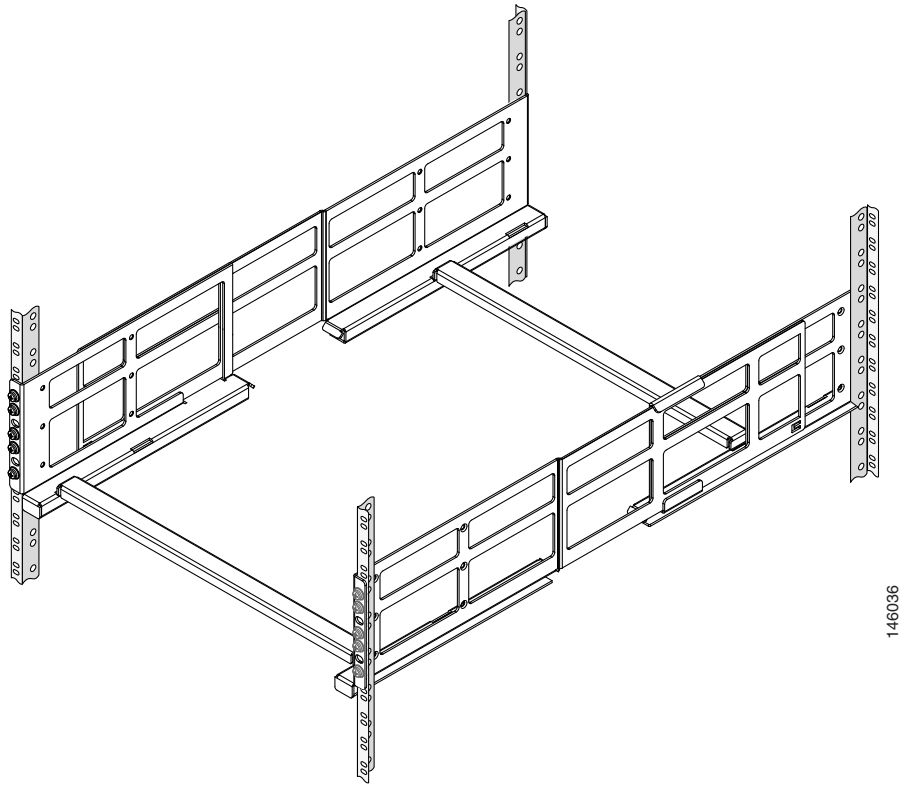


**Note**

If you are using the cable management bracket shipped with the switch, do not install the top four screws to the front right side of the bracket. These will be installed after placing the cable management bracket along that side. The bottom screw should be installed to support the front of the rack-mount support bracket.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure 2-3 Securing the Rack-Mount Support Brackets**



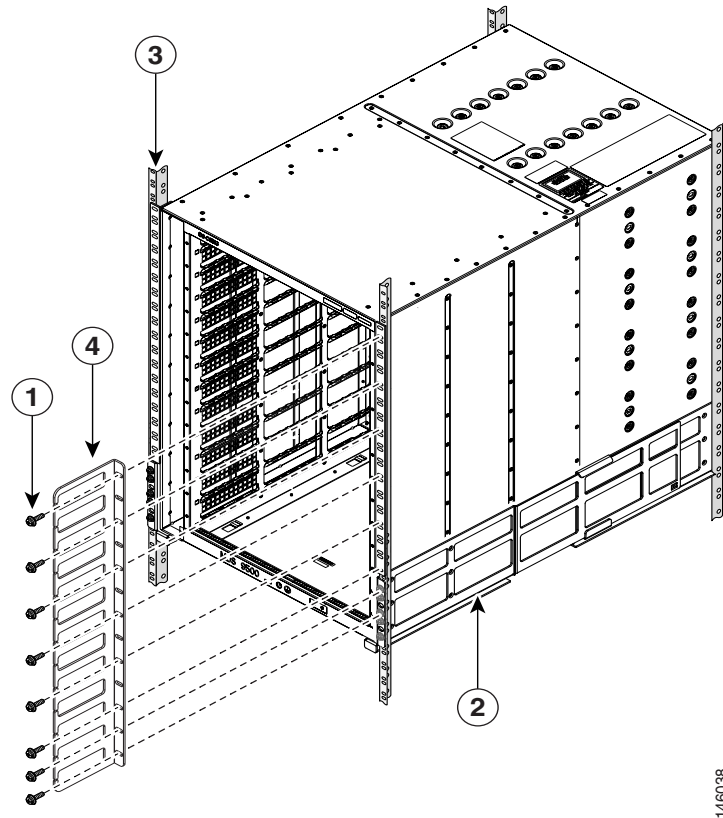
- Step 5** Position a person at each side of the chassis and one at the mechanical lift. Place the chassis on the lift by lifting on the top front of rear of the chassis.
- Step 6** Using the mechanical lift, lift the chassis up onto the rack-mount support brackets.
- Step 7** Place the rear of the chassis on the rack-mount support brackets between the front mounting rails.
- Step 8** Manually slide the chassis into the rack until it rests on the crossbar and the side rack-mount brackets.
- Step 9** If you are installing the optional cable management brackets, place the cable management brackets in front of the right rack-mount brackets. Align the holes in the cable management brackets with the holes in the front rack-mount brackets on the right and mounting rails, and then insert the screws.
- Step 10** Align the holes in the front rack-mount bracket with the holes in the mounting rails and insert the 12-24 x 3/4-inch or 10-32 x 3/4-inch screws, using six screws per side. (See [Figure 2-4](#).)



**Note** Use a minimum of six screws to ensure that the switch is adequately supported.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure 2-4** Installing the Cable Management Brackets on the MDS 9513 Chassis



1	Screws, 12-24 or 10-32	3	Mounting rail
2	Support bracket	4	Cable guide

## Installing the Cisco MDS 9509 Director in a Rack



### Caution

If connecting a Cisco MDS 9509 Director to a 110-VAC power system, ensure that sufficient power is provided to meet the chassis power requirements for the number of modules installed.

When connected to 220 VAC, the 2500-W AC power supplies (DS-CAC-2500W) for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director are designed to provide an output power of 2331 W to power the modules and fans. When connected to a 110 VAC power system, the power supply provides approximately 1150 W. In this case, and if the power supplies are used in redundant rather than combined mode, they might not provide adequate power, depending on the number of modules loaded in the chassis.

If a 110-VAC input is chosen, a 110-VAC power cord (CAB-7513AC=) must be ordered separately.

Table 2-2 lists the items provided in the Cisco MDS 9509 rack-mount kit.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Note**

The rack-mount kit for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director includes side rack-mount brackets, which are required for the duration of the installation only and can be removed once the front rack-mount brackets are securely fastened to the rack-mounting rails.

**Note**

The Cisco MDS 9500 Shelf Bracket Kit can be purchased as an optional shelf bracket kit for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director. See “[Cisco MDS 9500 Shelf Bracket](#)” section on page C-13.

**Table 2-2 Contents of Cisco MDS 9509 Rack-Mount Kit**

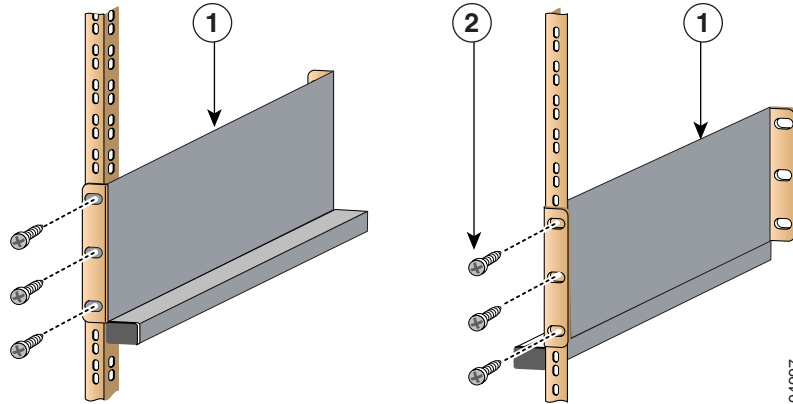
Quantity	Part Description
<b>3 RU shelf bracket kit</b>	
6	12-24 x 3/4-inch Phillips binder-head screws
6	10-32 x 3/4-inch Phillips binder-head screws
2	M3 x 8-mm Phillips pan-head screws
2	Side rack-mount brackets
1	Crossbar bracket
<b>Cable management bracket kit</b>	
2	Cable management brackets
18	12-24 x 3/4-inch Phillips binder-head screws
18	10-32 x 3/4-inch Phillips binder-head screws

To install the Cisco MDS 9509 chassis in a rack using the rack-mount kit provided with the switch, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Position one of the side rack-mount brackets in the rack as shown in [Figure 2-5](#). Secure the side rack-mount bracket to the rack using three of the 12-24 x 3/4-inch or 10-32 x 3/4-inch screws, depending on the type of holes in the mounting rails.
- Step 2** Repeat for the second side rack-mount bracket, ensuring that the side rack-mount brackets are at the same height.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

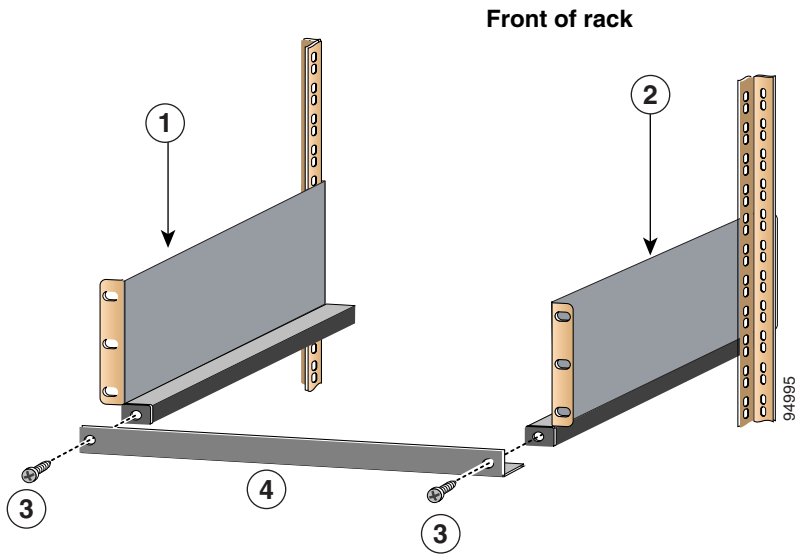
**Figure 2-5** Installing the Side Rack-Mount Brackets for the Cisco MDS 9509 Chassis



<b>1</b>	Side rack-mount bracket	<b>2</b>	Screws, 12-24 or 10-32
----------	-------------------------	----------	------------------------

**Step 3** Attach the crossbar to the back of the side rack-mount brackets using one M3 x 8-mm screw per side as shown in [Figure 2-6](#).

**Figure 2-6** Attaching the Crossbar to the Side Rack-Mount Brackets (Rear View)

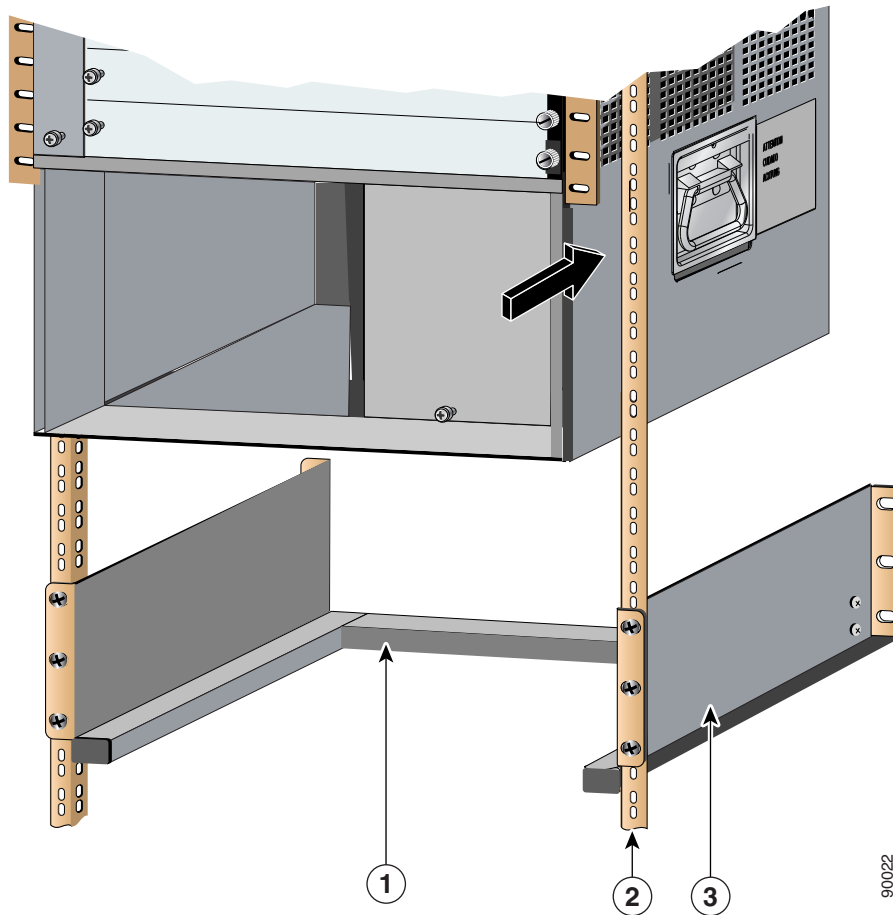


<b>1</b>	Side rack-mount bracket	<b>3</b>	Screws, M3
<b>2</b>	Side rack-mount bracket	<b>4</b>	Crossbar

**Step 4** Position a person at each side of the chassis. Grasp the chassis handle with one hand and use the other hand near the back of the chassis for balance. Slowly lift the chassis in unison, avoiding sudden twists or moves to prevent injury. Place the rear of the chassis on the side rack-mount brackets between the front mounting rails, and slide it until it rests on the crossbar and the side rack-mount brackets (see [Figure 2-7](#)).

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure 2-7** Installing the Cisco MDS 9509 Chassis in the Rack



1	Crossbar	3	Side rack-mount bracket
2	Mounting rail		

- Step 5** If you are installing the optional cable management bracket, place the cable management bracket in front of the front right rack-mount brackets. Align the holes in the cable management brackets with the holes in the front rack-mount brackets and mounting rails, and then insert the screws.



**Note** Because the fan tray is on the left side of the chassis, Cisco recommends using only the right side for cable management. Using the right side for cable management allows easy removal of the fan tray if you need to replace a fan.

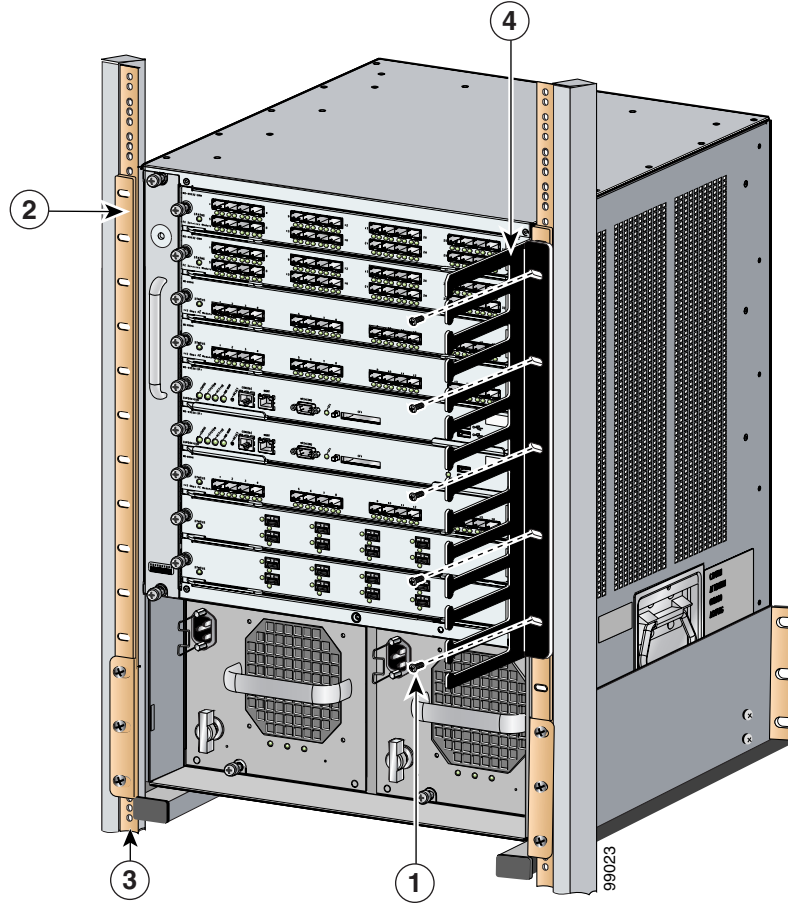
- Step 6** Align the holes in the front rack-mount bracket with the holes in the mounting rails and insert the 12-24 x 3/4-inch or 10-32 x 3/4-inch screws (see [Figure 2-8](#)), using six screws per side.



**Note** Use a minimum of six screws per side to ensure that the switch is adequately supported.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure 2-8** Installing the Cable Management Bracket on the MDS 9509 Chassis



<b>1</b>	Screws, 12-24 or 10-32	<b>3</b>	Mounting rail
<b>2</b>	Front rack-mount bracket (behind cable guide)	<b>4</b>	Cable guide

## Installing the Cisco MDS 9506 Director in a Rack

Table 2-3 lists the items provided in the Cisco MDS 9506 rack-mount kit. The kit contains extra M4 screws in case the front rack-mount brackets were removed from the switch and must be reinstalled.



### Note

The rack-mount kit for the Cisco MDS 9506 Director does not include side rack-mount brackets, because they are not required to install the Cisco MDS 9506 Director.

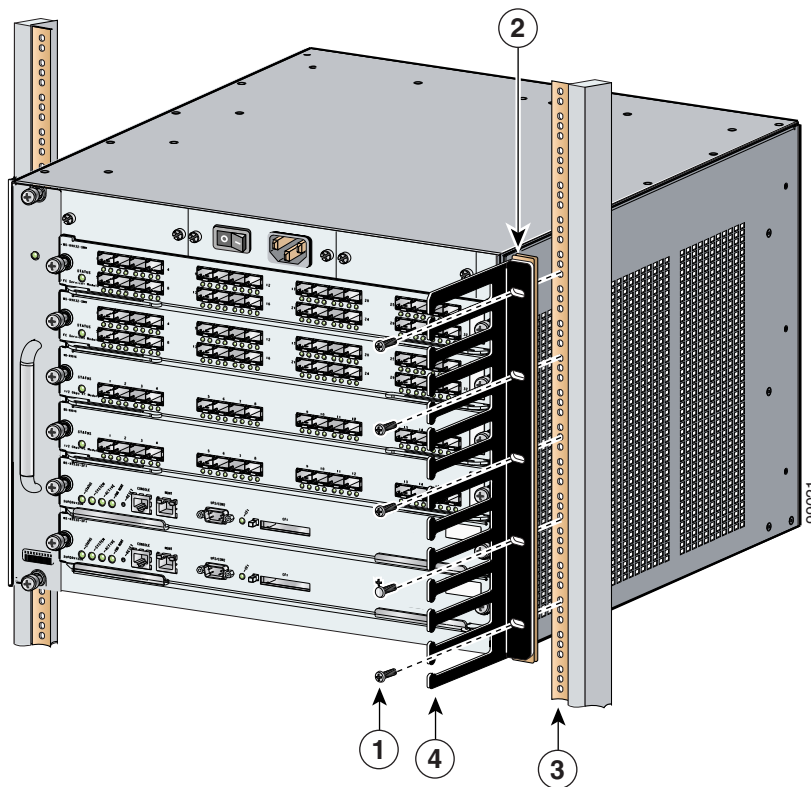
**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Table 2-3 Contents of Cisco MDS 9506 Rack-Mount Kit**

Quantity	Part Description
14	12-24 x 3/4-in. Phillips binder-head screws
14	10-32 x 3/4-in. Phillips binder-head screws
14	M4 x 6-mm Phillips pan-head screws
2	Cable management brackets

Figure 2-9 shows the installation of a Cisco MDS 9506 director into a rack, using the cable management bracket.

**Figure 2-9 Installing the Cisco MDS 9506 Chassis in the Rack**



<b>1</b>	Screws, 12-24 or 10-32	<b>3</b>	Mounting rail
<b>2</b>	Front rack-mount bracket (behind cable guide)	<b>4</b>	Cable management bracket



**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

To install the Cisco MDS 9506 chassis in the rack using the rack-mount kit, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Place all the parts and screwdrivers near the rack for easy access while attaching the switch to the rack.



**Note** The front rack-mount brackets are shipped installed on the switch. If they have been uninstalled, reinstall them on the switch using the M4 x 6-mm screws.

- Step 2** Position a person at each side of the chassis. Grasp the bottom of the chassis and slowly lift the chassis in unison, avoiding sudden twists or moves to prevent injury. Insert the rear of the chassis between the front mounting rails (see [Figure 2-9](#)), supporting the switch inside the rack until the next step is complete.

- Step 3** If you are installing the optional cable management bracket, align the holes in the cable management bracket with the holes in the front, right rack-mount brackets and the mounting rail. Ensure that the chassis is level, and pass the screws through the cable management brackets and front rack-mount bracket and into the mounting rail.



**Note** Because the fan tray is on the left side of the chassis, Cisco recommends using only the right side for cable management. This allows easy removal of the fan tray if you need to replace a fan.

- Step 4** Align the holes in the front rack-mount bracket with the holes in the mounting rail, and ensure that the chassis is level. Insert the 12-24 x 3/4-inch or 10-32 x 3/4-inch screws (depending on the type of holes in the mounting rails) through the holes in the front rack-mount bracket and into the holes in the mounting rails, using four screws per side.



**Caution** Use a minimum of four screws per side to ensure that the switch is adequately supported by the front rack-mount brackets.

## System Grounding

This section describes the need for system grounding and explains how to prevent damage from electrostatic discharge.

### Proper Grounding Practices

Grounding is one of the most important parts of equipment installation. Proper grounding practices ensure that the buildings and the installed equipment within them have low-impedance connections and low-voltage differentials between chassis. When you properly ground systems during installation, you reduce or prevent shock hazards, equipment damage due to transients, and data corruption. [Table 2-4](#) lists grounding best practices.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Table 2-4 Grounding Best Practices**

<b>Environment</b>	<b>Electromagnetic Noise Severity Level</b>	<b>Grounding Recommendations</b>
Commercial building is subjected to direct lightning strikes.  For example, some places in the United States, such as Florida, are subject to more lightning strikes than other areas.	High	All lightning protection devices must be installed in strict accordance with manufacturer recommendations. Conductors carrying lightning current should be spaced away from power and data lines in accordance with applicable recommendations and codes. Appropriate grounding practices must be closely followed.
Commercial building is located in an area where lightning storms frequently occur but is not subject to direct lightning strikes.	High	Appropriate grounding practices must be closely followed.
Commercial building contains a mix of information technology equipment and industrial equipment, such as welding.	Medium to high	Appropriate grounding practices must be closely followed.
Existing commercial building is not subject to natural environmental noise or man-made industrial noise. This building contains a standard office environment. This installation has a history of malfunction due to electromagnetic noise.	Medium	Appropriate grounding practices must be closely followed. Determine source and cause of noise if possible, and mitigate as closely as possible at the noise source or reduce coupling from the noise source to the victim equipment.
New commercial building is not subject to natural environmental noise or man-made industrial noise. This building contains a standard office environment.	Low	Appropriate grounding practices should be followed as closely as possible. Electromagnetic noise problems are not anticipated, but installing a best practice grounding system in a new building is often the least expensive route and the best way to plan for the future.
Existing commercial building is not subject to natural environmental noise or man-made industrial noise. This building contains a standard office environment.	Low	Appropriate grounding practices should be followed as much as possible. Electromagnetic noise problems are not anticipated, but installing a best practice grounding system is always recommended.

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

**Note**

In all situations, grounding practices must comply with local National Electric Code (NEC) requirements or local laws and regulations.

**Note**

Always ensure that all of the modules are completely installed and that the captive installation screws are fully tightened. In addition, ensure that all I/O cables and power cords are properly seated. These practices are normal installation practices and must be followed in all installations.

## Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage

Electrostatic discharge (ESD) damage, which can occur when modules or other FRUs are improperly handled, results in intermittent or complete failures. Modules consist of printed circuit boards that are fixed in metal carriers. Electromagnetic interference (EMI) shielding and connectors are integral components of the carrier. Although the metal carrier helps protect the board from ESD. Always wear an ESD grounding strap when handling modules.

Follow these guidelines for preventing ESD damage:

- Always wear an ESD wrist strap and ensure that it makes maximum contact with bare skin. ESD grounding straps are available with banana plugs, metal spring clips, or alligator clips. All MDS 9500 series chassis are equipped with a banana plug connector (identified by the ground symbol next to the connector) somewhere on the front panel. Cisco recommends that you use a personal ESD grounding strap equipped with a banana plug.
- If you choose to use the disposable ESD wrist strap supplied with most FRUs or an ESD wrist strap equipped with an alligator clip, you must attach the system ground lug to the chassis in order to provide a proper grounding point for the ESD wrist strap.

**Note**

This system ground is also referred to as the network equipment building system (NEBS) ground.

- If your chassis does not have the system ground attached, you must install the system ground lug. For installation instructions and location of the chassis system ground pads, see [“Establishing the System Ground” section on page 2-22](#).

**Note**

You do not need to attach a supplemental system ground wire to the system ground lug; the lug provides a direct path to the bare metal of the chassis.

After you install the system ground lug, follow these steps to correctly attach the ESD wrist strap:

**Step 1**

Attach the ESD wrist strap to bare skin as follows:

- a. If you are using the ESD wrist strap supplied with the FRUs, open the wrist strap package and unwrap the ESD wrist strap. Place the black conductive loop over your wrist and tighten the strap so that it makes good contact with your bare skin.
- b. If you are using an ESD wrist strap equipped with an alligator clip, open the package and remove the ESD wrist strap. Locate the end of the wrist strap that attaches to your body and secure it to your bare skin.

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

- Step 2** Grasp the spring or alligator clip on the ESD wrist strap and momentarily touch the clip to a bare metal spot (unpainted surface) on the rack. Cisco recommends that you touch the clip to an unpainted rack rail so that any built-up static charge is then safely dissipated to the entire rack.
- Step 3** Attach either the spring clip or the alligator clip to the ground lug screw as follows (see [Figure 2-10](#)):
- a. If you are using the ESD wrist strap that is supplied with the FRUs, squeeze the spring clip jaws open, position the spring clip to one side of the system ground lug screw head, and slide the spring clip over the lug screw head so that the spring clip jaws close behind the lug screw head.



---

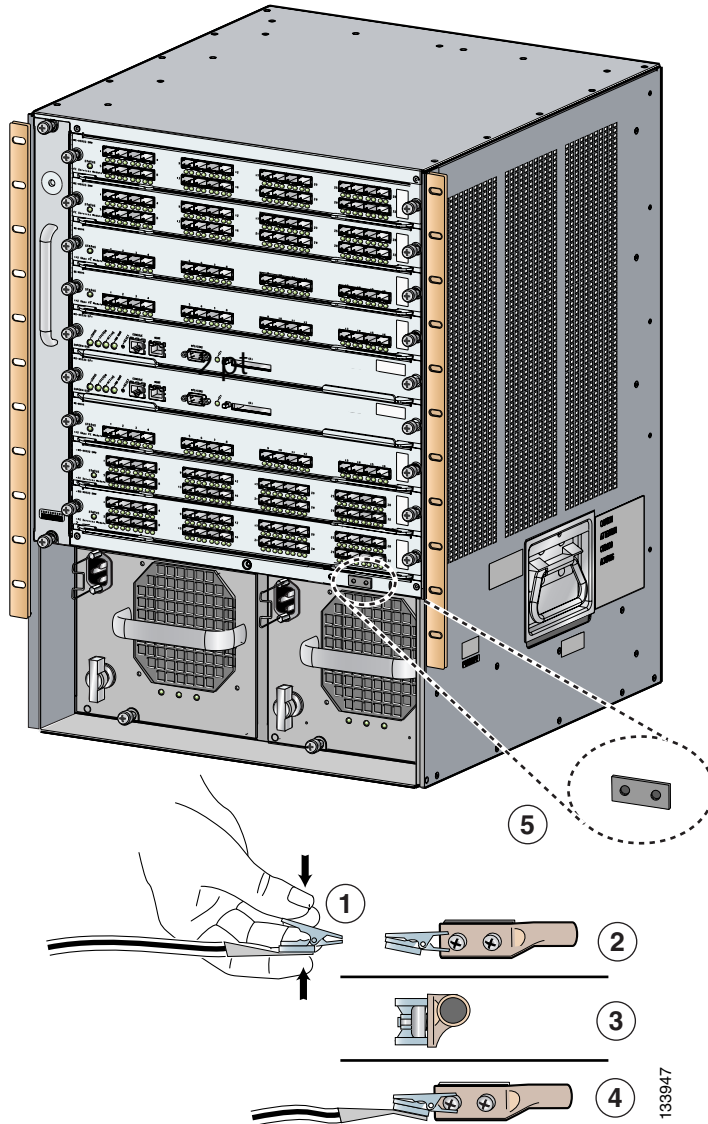
**Note** The spring clip jaws do not open wide enough to fit directly over the head of the lug screw or the lug barrel.

---

- b. If you are using an ESD wrist strap that is equipped with an alligator clip, attach the alligator clip directly over the head of the system ground lug screw or to the system ground lug barrel.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure 2-10 Attaching the ESD Wrist Strap to the System Ground Lug Screw**



1	ESD ground strap	4	Clip installed (behind screw)
2	Clip and grounding lug	5	System ground connector
3	Side view of grounding lug (clip slid behind screw)		

- c. In addition, follow these guidelines when handling modules:
- Handle carriers by available handles or edges only; avoid touching the printed circuit boards or connectors.
  - Place a removed component board-side-up on an antistatic surface or in a static shielding container. If you plan to return the component to the factory, immediately place it in a static shielding container.

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

- Never attempt to remove the printed circuit board from the metal carrier.

**Caution**

For safety reasons, check the resistance value of the antistatic strap periodically. The measurement should be between 1 and 10 megohm (Mohm).

## Establishing the System Ground

This section describes how to connect a system ground to the MDS 9500 series switches.

**Note**

This system ground is also referred to as the network equipment building system (NEBS) ground.

You must use the system (NEBS) ground on both AC- and DC-powered systems if you are installing this equipment in a U.S. or European Central Office.

The system (NEBS) ground provides additional grounding for EMI shielding requirements and grounding for the low-voltage supplies (DC-DC converters) on the modules and is intended to satisfy the Telcordia Technologies NEBS requirements for supplemental bonding and grounding connections. You must observe the following system grounding guidelines for your chassis:

- You must install the system (NEBS) ground connection with any other rack or system power ground connections that you make. The system ground connection is required if this equipment is installed in a U.S. or European Central Office.
- You must connect both the system (NEBS) ground connection and the power supply ground connection to an earth ground. The system (NEBS) ground connection is required if this equipment is installed in a U.S. or European Central Office.
- For MDS 9500 series chassis that are equipped with DC-input power supplies, you must install the system (NEBS) ground before you attach the source DC power cables to the DC PEM. If the chassis is powered up, you must power down the chassis before attaching the system (NEBS) ground. If you are installing the system (NEBS) ground on models of the MDS 9500 series chassis that are equipped with either AC-input or DC-input power supplies, you do not need to power down the chassis.

**Note**

The system (NEBS) ground serves as the primary safety ground for the MDS 9500 series chassis that are equipped with DC-input PEMs. The DC-input power supplies for these chassis do not have a separate ground.

## Required Tools and Equipment

To connect the ground system, you need the following tools and materials:

- Grounding lug—A two-hole standard barrel lug. Supports up to 6 AWG wire. Supplied as part of accessory kit.
- Grounding screws—Two M4 x 8mm (metric) pan-head screws. Supplied as part of the accessory kit.

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

- Grounding wire—Not supplied as part of accessory kit. The grounding wire should be sized according to local and national installation requirements. Depending on the power supply and system, a 12 AWG to 6 AWG copper conductor is required for U.S. installations. Commercially available 6 AWG wire is recommended. The length of the grounding wire depends on the proximity of the switch to proper grounding facilities.
- No. 1 Phillips screwdriver.
- Crimping tool to crimp the grounding wire to the grounding lug.
- Wire-stripping tool to remove the insulation from the grounding wire.

## Grounding the Chassis

This section describes how to connect the Cisco MDS 9500 Series to earth ground.

You must complete this procedure before connecting system power or powering up your shelf.



**Warning**

---

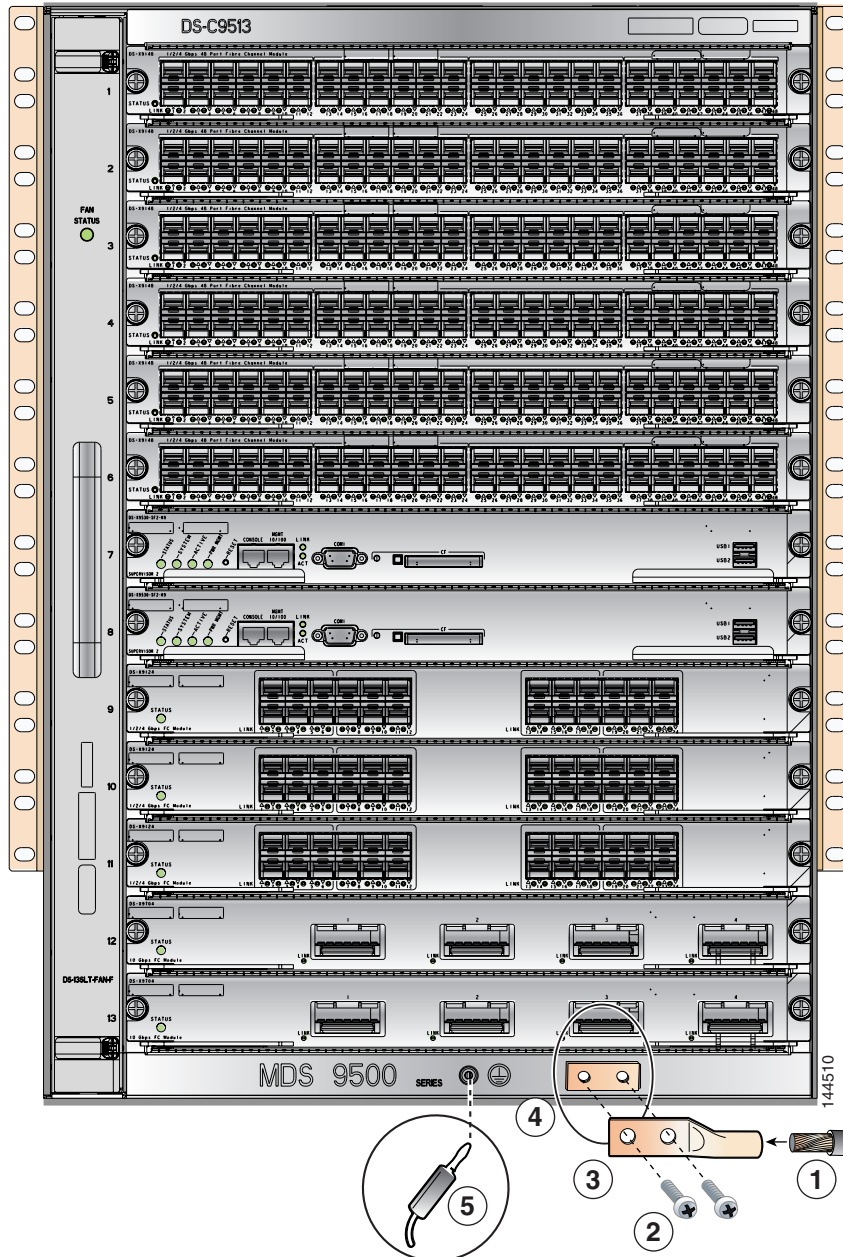
**When installing or replacing the unit, the ground connection must always be made first and disconnected last.** Statement 1046

---

[Figure 2-11](#) shows the system ground location on the front panel of the Cisco MDS 9513 chassis.

*Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).*

**Figure 2-11 System Ground Location on the Cisco MDS 9513 Chassis (Front)**



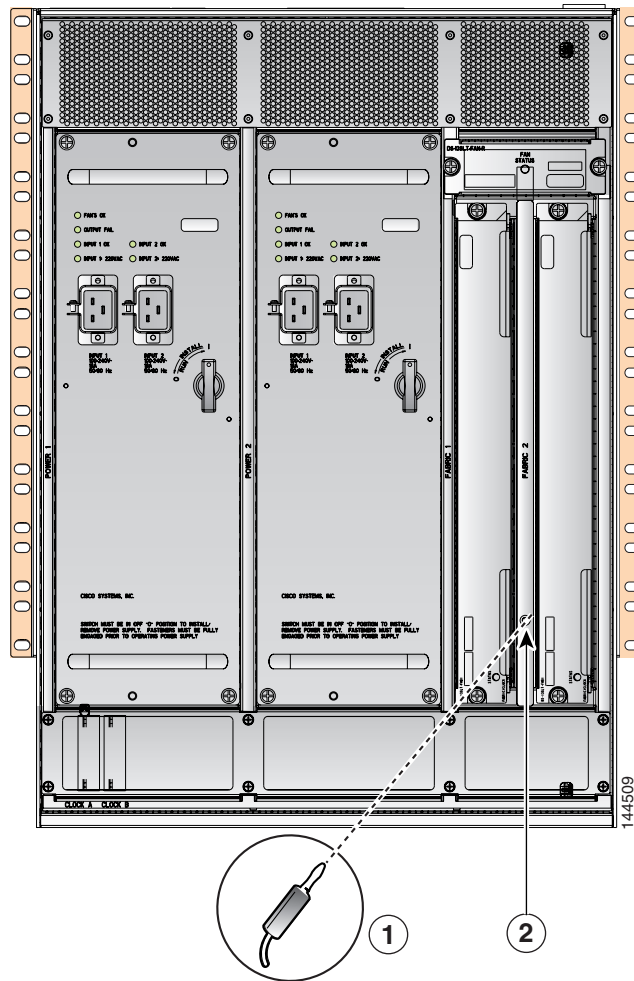
1	Grounding cable	4	Close-up of grounding pad on switch
2	Screws, M4, with square cone washers	5	ESD plug
3	NRTL listed grounding lug		

Figure 2-12 shows the ESD ground location on the rear panel of the Cisco MDS 9513 chassis.



**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure 2-12 ESD Ground Location on the Cisco MDS 9513 Chassis (Rear)**



<b>1</b>	ESD plug	<b>2</b>	ESD socket
----------	----------	----------	------------



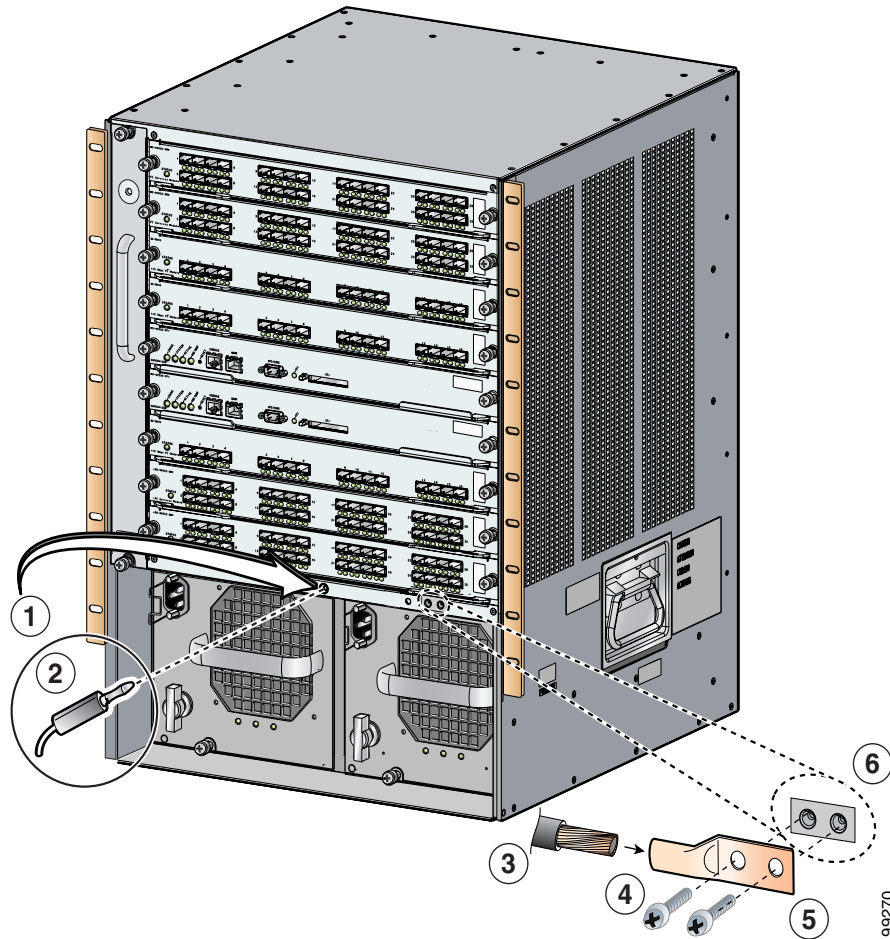
**Caution**

All power supplies must be grounded. The receptacles of the AC power cables used to provide power to the chassis must be the grounding type, and the grounding conductors should connect to protective earth ground at the service equipment. For a Cisco MDS 9509 Director with a DC power supply, a grounding cable must be connected to the terminal block. For a Cisco MDS 9506 Director with a DC power supply, the chassis ground is required.

Figure 2-13 shows the system ground location on the Cisco MDS 9509 chassis.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure 2-13 System Ground Location on the Cisco MDS 9509 Chassis**



1	ESD socket (on switch)	4	Screws, M4, with square cone washers
2	ESD plug	5	NRTL listed grounding lug
3	Grounding cable	6	Close-up of grounding pad on switch

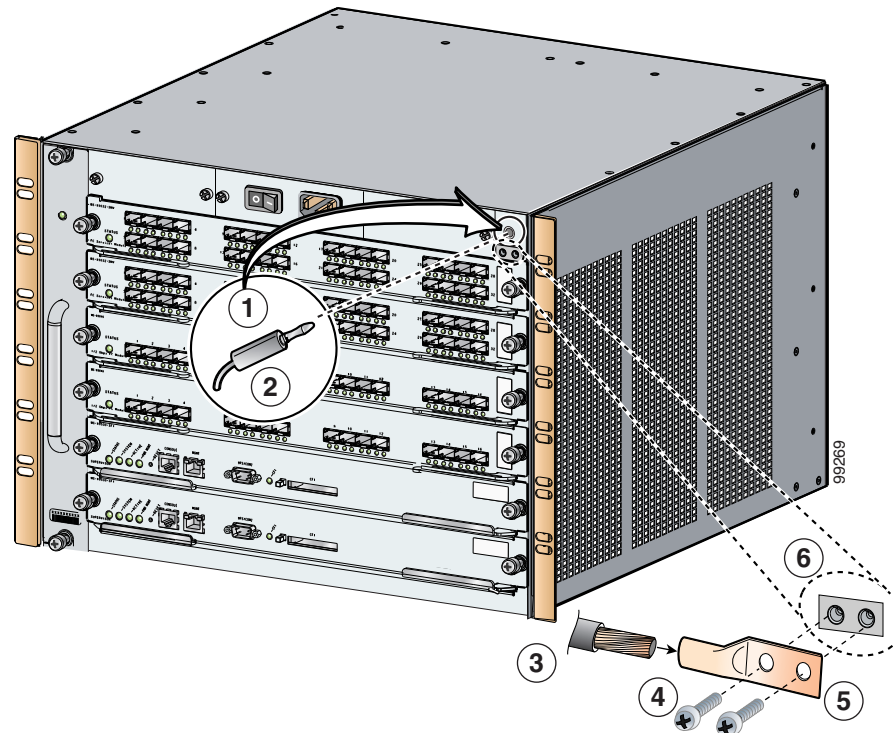
**Caution**

Grounding the chassis is required for Cisco MDS 9506 Directors that have DC power supplies, and Cisco recommends grounding for all other chassis types, although the rack is already grounded. A grounding pad with two threaded M4 holes is provided on the chassis for attaching a grounding lug. The ground lug must be NRTL listed. In addition, copper conductor (wires) must be used and the copper conductor must comply with the NEC code for ampacity.

Figure 2-14 shows the system ground location on the Cisco MDS 9506 chassis.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure 2-14 System Ground Location on the Cisco MDS 9506 Chassis**



<b>1</b>	ESD socket (on switch)	<b>4</b>	Screws, M4, with square cone washers
<b>2</b>	ESD plug	<b>5</b>	NRTL listed grounding lug
<b>3</b>	Grounding cable	<b>6</b>	Close-up of grounding pad on switch

To attach the grounding lug and cable to the chassis, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Locate the ESD socket on your chassis and attach the ESD plug.
  - Step 2** Use a wire-stripping tool to remove approximately 0.75 inches (19 mm) of the covering from the end of the grounding cable.
  - Step 3** Insert the stripped end of the grounding cable into the grounding lug.
  - Step 4** Use the crimping tool to secure the grounding cable in the grounding lug.
  - Step 5** Remove the adhesive label from the grounding pad on the chassis.
  - Step 6** Place the grounding lug against the grounding pad so that there is solid metal-to-metal contact, and insert the two M4 screws with washers through the holes in the grounding lug and into the grounding pad. Ensure that the lug and cable do not interfere with other equipment.
  - Step 7** Prepare the other end of the grounding cable and connect it to an appropriate grounding point in your site to ensure adequate earth ground.
-

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## Starting Up the Switch

This section provides the following information:

- [Connecting the Power Supplies](#), page 2-28
- [Powering Up the Switch and Verifying Component Installation](#), page 2-36



### Warning

---

**Hazardous voltage or energy is present on the backplane when the system is operating. Use caution when servicing.** Statement 1034

---



### Caution

---

During this procedure, wear grounding wrist straps to avoid ESD damage to the switch.

---



### Note

---

The 2500-W (DS-CAC-2500W) power supplies provide power according to the input voltage. If they are in redundant rather than combined mode at 110 VAC, they may be unable to provide adequate power to all modules present in the system. See [Appendix D, “Technical Specifications.”](#)

---

## Connecting the Power Supplies

The Cisco MDS 9513 Director uses a 6000-W power supply. The 6000-W AC power supplies for the Cisco MDS 9513 Director are designed to provide an output power for the modules and fans. Each power supply has two AC power connections and will provide power as follows:

- One AC power connection @ 110 VAC = No output
- Two AC power connection @ 110 VAC = 2900-W output
- One AC power connection @ 220 VAC = 2900-W output
- Two AC power connection @ 220 VAC = 6000-W output



### Note

---

Power output does not include the power used by the individual modules used in the chassis.

---

The Cisco MDS 9509 Director and Cisco MDS 9506 Director support both AC and DC power supplies. The Cisco MDS 9506 Director uses power entry modules (PEMs) to provide power to its power supplies, whether they are AC or DC (there is no power connector on the power supplies). The left PEM (as viewed from the front of the switch) provides power to the upper power supply in the back of the Cisco MDS 9506 Director, and the right PEM provides power to the lower power supply.

This section provides the following topics:

- [Providing Power to an AC Power Supply for the Cisco MDS 9513 Director](#), page 2-29
- [Providing Power to an AC Power Supply for the Cisco MDS 9509 and Cisco MDS 9506 Directors](#), page 2-30
- [Providing Power to a DC Power Supply in the Cisco MDS 9509 Director](#), page 2-33
- [Providing Power to a DC Power Supply in the Cisco MDS 9506 Director](#), page 2-34

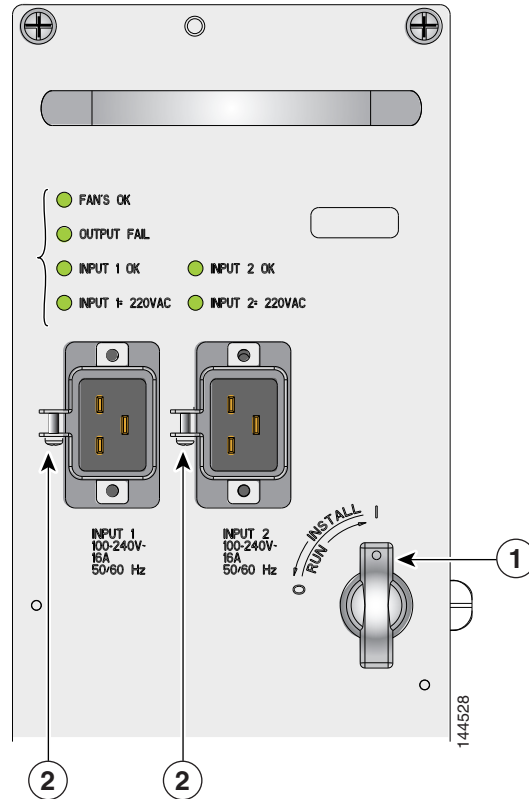
**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

## Providing Power to an AC Power Supply for the Cisco MDS 9513 Director

To provide power to an AC power supply in a Cisco MDS 9513 Director, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Plug the power cable into the power supply, and tighten the screw on the cable retention device to ensure that the cable cannot be pulled out. Each power supply has two AC power connections (as shown in [Figure 2-15](#)).

**Figure 2-15** Cable Retention on the Power Supply



<b>1</b>	Power switch	<b>2</b>	Cable retention
----------	--------------	----------	-----------------

- Step 2** Connect the other end of the power cable to an AC power source.
- Step 3** Turn the power switch to the on (I) position on the power supply.
- Step 4** Verify power supply operation by checking that the power supply LEDs are in the following states:
- INPUT OK LEDs are green.
  - FAN OK LEDs are green.
  - OUTPUT FAIL LED is off.

See [Table 1-2 on page 1-11](#) for power supply LED details.

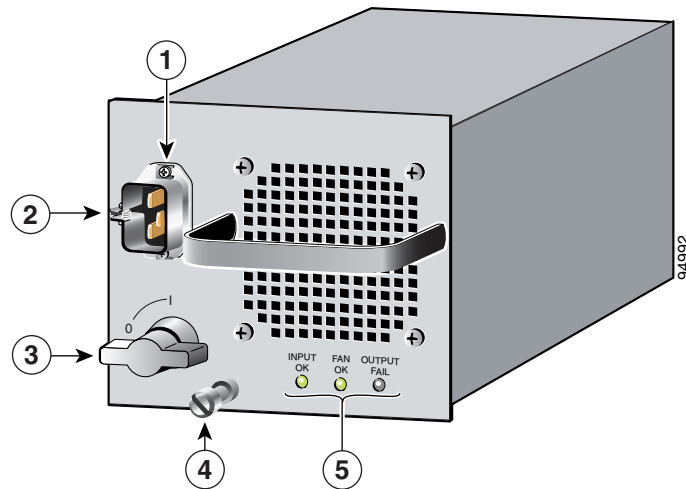
***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## Providing Power to an AC Power Supply for the Cisco MDS 9509 and Cisco MDS 9506 Directors

The basic procedure for providing power to an AC power supply is the same for both a Cisco MDS 9509 Director and a Cisco MDS 9506 Director.

Figure 2-16 shows a 2500-W AC power supply for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director.

**Figure 2-16** 2500-W AC Power Supply for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director

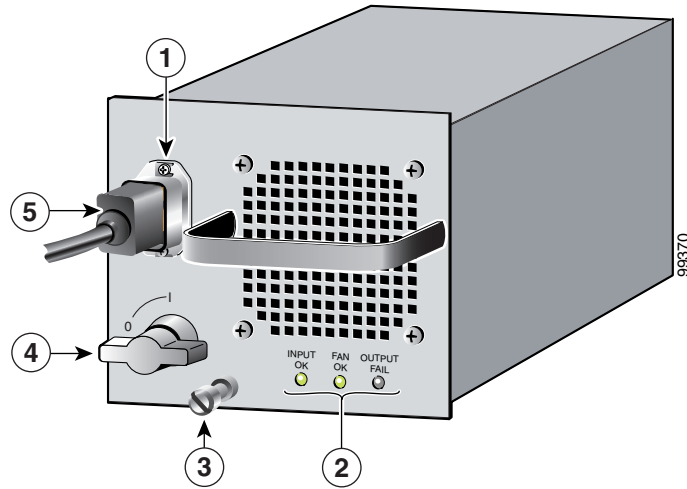


1	AC power connection	4	Captive screws
2	Power cable retainer	5	Power supply LEDs
3	Power supply switch		

Figure 2-17 shows a 4000-W AC power supply for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure 2-17 4000-W AC Power Supply for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director**



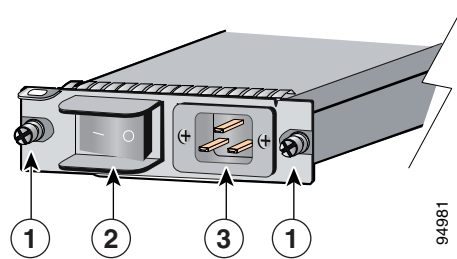
<b>1</b>	AC power connection	<b>4</b>	Power supply switch
<b>2</b>	Power supply LEDs	<b>5</b>	Permanent power cable
<b>3</b>	Captive screws		

**Caution**

The following applies to AC power supplies on the Cisco MDS 9506 only: The DS-C9506 equipment is suitable for use on TN power systems and the IT-power system connection of Norway (max 230-V phase-phase). If connected to a 230- or 400-V IT power system, beware of high-leakage current. Earth connection is essential before connecting power supply.

Figure 2-18 shows an AC PEM for a Cisco MDS 9506 Director.

**Figure 2-18 AC PEM for Cisco MDS 9506 Director**

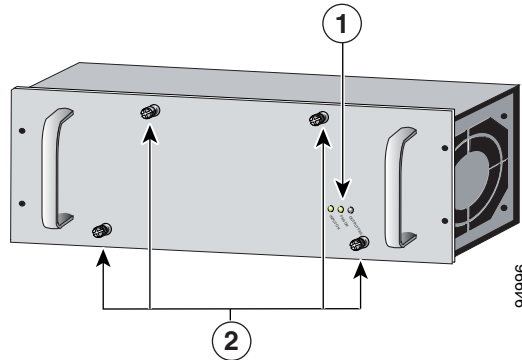


<b>1</b>	Captive screws	<b>3</b>	AC power connection
<b>2</b>	PEM switch		

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

Figure 2-19 shows a power supply for a Cisco MDS 9506 Director. The power supply has no power connector. The power connector is provided on the PEM. The AC and DC power supplies are similar in appearance except for the label, which indicates whether it is AC or DC.

**Figure 2-19 Power Supply for Cisco MDS 9506 Director**



<b>1</b>	Power supply LEDs	<b>2</b>	Captive screws
----------	-------------------	----------	----------------

To provide power to an AC power supply in a Cisco MDS 9509 Director or a Cisco MDS 9506 Director, follow these steps:

**Step 1** Plug the power cable into the switch as follows:

- For the Cisco MDS 9509 Director, plug the power cable into the power supply and tighten the screw on the power cable retainer to ensure that the cable cannot be pulled out.



**Note** The 4000-W AC power supply for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director has a permanent power cable attached.

- For the Cisco MDS 9506 Director, plug the power cable into the AC PEM on the front of the chassis.

**Step 2** Connect the other end of the power cable to a power source.



**Note** Depending on the outlet receptacle on your power distribution unit, you may need the optional jumper power cord to connect the Cisco MDS 9500 Series director to your outlet receptacle. See the [“Jumper Power Cord”](#) section on page E-11.



**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

## Providing Power to a DC Power Supply in the Cisco MDS 9509 Director



**Warning**

**Before performing any of the following procedures, ensure that power is removed from the DC circuit.** Statement 1003



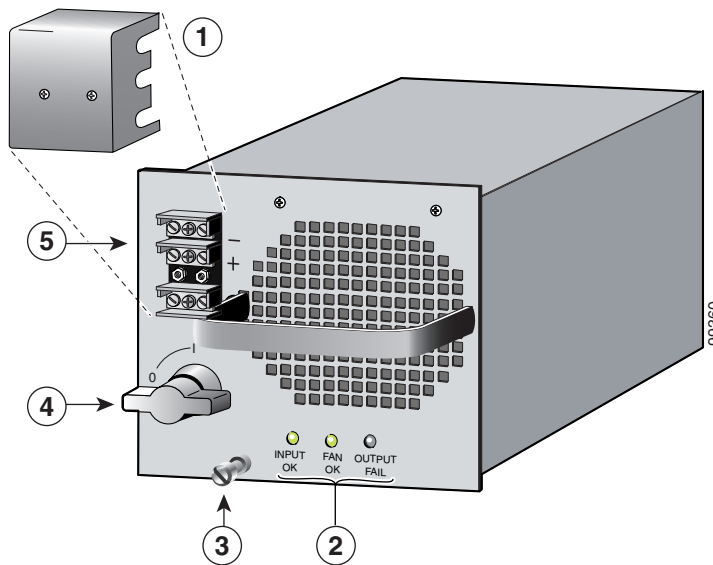
**Warning**

**When installing or replacing the unit, the ground connection must always be made first and disconnected last.** Statement 1046

For more information on DC power supply for the MDS 9509 Director, see the [“System Grounding” section on page 2-17](#).

Figure 2-20 shows the 2500-W DC power supply.

**Figure 2-20 2500-W DC Power Supply for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director**



1	Terminal block cover	4	Power supply switch
2	Power supply LEDs	5	Terminal block
3	Captive screw		



**Note**

Use 90-degree C fine-stranded copper conductors for North American installations.

To provide power to a DC power supply in a Cisco MDS 9509 Director, follow these steps:

### Step 1

Ensure that all power is off. Locate the circuit breaker on the panel board that services the DC circuit. Switch the circuit breaker to the off position, and then tape the switch handle of the circuit breaker in the off position.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

- Step 2** Ensure that the system (earth) ground connection is made. See the “System Grounding” section on page 2-17.
- Step 3** Turn the power switch on the power supply to off (0).
- Step 4** Unfasten the two screws securing the terminal block cover and pull the cover off the terminal block.
- Step 5** Connect the DC power cables to the terminal block as follows:
- a. Identify the ground, negative, and positive DC cables and verify that all are copper and sized per local and national installation requirements.
  - b. Strip the cable ends to allow for metal-to-metal contact.
  - c. Loosen the screws in the terminal block and connect the DC power cables to the terminal block in the following order:
    - Ground
    - Negative (-)
    - Positive (+)




---

**Caution** The DC return connection (Negative (-)) to this system is to remain isolated from the system frame and chassis (DC-I). Loosen the captive screw on the power supply.

---




---

**Warning** **When installing or replacing the unit, the ground connection must always be made first and disconnected last.** Statement 1046

---

- d. Secure the cables in place by tightening the terminal block screws.
- e. Replace the terminal block cover and fasten the two screws attaching it to the chassis.




---

**Caution** To prevent a short circuit or shock hazard after wiring the DC power supply, reinstall the terminal block cover before restoring power to the DC circuit.

---

- Step 6** If a second DC power supply is installed, repeat the procedure for the other power supply, using a separate power source to provide redundancy in case of a line failure and ensuring the related circuit is off.




---

**Caution** Leave the power to the DC circuit off until you are ready to provide power to the switch.

---

- Step 7** If there are no other DC power cables to connect and you are ready to power the switch on, restore power to the DC circuit by removing the tape from the circuit breaker handle and flipping the handle to on.
- 

**Providing Power to a DC Power Supply in the Cisco MDS 9506 Director**


---

**Warning** **Before performing any of the following procedures, ensure that power is removed from the DC circuit.** Statement 1003

---

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**



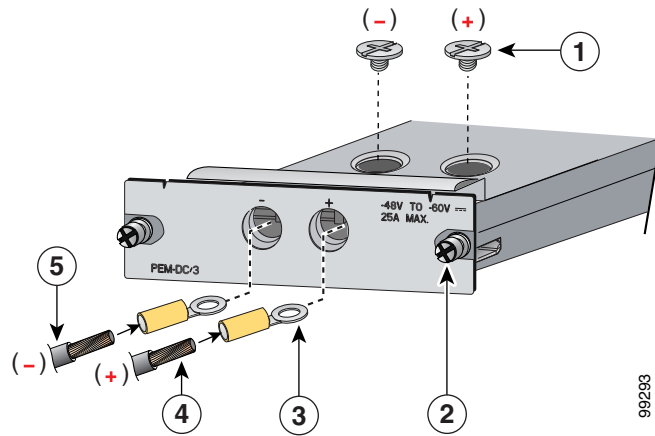
**Warning**

**When installing or replacing the unit, the ground connection must always be made first and disconnected last.** Statement 1046

For more information on DC power supply in the MDS 9506 Director, see the “[System Grounding](#)” section on page 2-17.

Figure 2-21 shows the location of the terminal block screws and how to insert the lugs through the holes in the front of the PEM to connect them to the screws.

**Figure 2-21 DC PEM for a Cisco MDS 9506 Director**



1	Terminal block screws (+ and -)	4	Exposed portion of positive cable
2	Captive screw	5	Insulated portion of negative cable
3	Ring lug		



**Note**

Use 90-degree C fine-stranded copper conductors for North American installations.

To provide power to a DC power supply in a Cisco MDS 9506 Director, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Ensure that all power to the DC circuit is off by locating the circuit breaker on the panel board that services the DC circuit. Switch the circuit breaker to the off position, and tape the switch handle of the circuit breaker in the off position.
- Step 2** Ensure that the system (earth) ground connection is made. See the “[System Grounding](#)” section on page 2-17.
- Step 3** Loosen the captive screws on the DC PEM and pull the PEM partially out of the chassis to provide access to the PEM terminal block screws.
- Step 4** Connect the positive and negative DC cables to the DC PEM using a 10-32 ring lug for each cable, as follows:
  - a. Identify the positive and negative DC cables and ensure that both are copper and sized per local and national installation requirements.

## Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).

- b. Strip the cable ends to allow for metal-to-metal contact. Insert each cable into a separate ring lug, and crimp the lugs around the cables.
- c. Insert each cable and lug into the appropriate hole in the front of the PEM and fasten the lugs to the appropriate terminal block screws in the following order:
  - Negative (-)
  - Positive (+)
- d. Secure the cables in place by tightening the terminal block screws.

**Step 5** Ensure that all cable connections are secure before sliding the PEM back into the chassis, and then tighten the captive screws.



**Caution**

The DC return connection (Negative (-)) to this system is to remain isolated from the system frame and chassis (DC-I). Loosen the captive screw on the power supply.



**Warning**

**When installing or replacing the unit, the ground connection must always be made first and disconnected last.** Statement 1046

**Step 6** If a second DC power supply is installed, repeat the procedure for the other DC PEM, using a separate power source to provide redundancy in case of a line failure, and ensuring the related circuit is off.



**Caution**

Leave the power to the DC circuits off until you are ready to provide power to the switch.

**Step 7** If there are no other DC power cables to connect and you are ready to power the switch on, restore power to the DC circuit by removing the tape from the circuit breaker handle and flipping the handle to on.

## Powering Up the Switch and Verifying Component Installation



**Warning**

**Blank faceplates and cover panels serve three important functions: they prevent exposure to hazardous voltages and currents inside the chassis; they contain electromagnetic interference (EMI) that might disrupt other equipment; and they direct the flow of cooling air through the chassis. Do not operate the system unless all cards, faceplates, front covers, and rear covers are in place.** Statement 1029



**Note**

Do not connect the MGMT 10/100 Ethernet port to the LAN until the initial switch configuration has been performed. For instructions on configuring the switch, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide* or the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Fabric Manager Configuration Guide*.

For instructions on connecting to the console port, see the [“Connecting to the Console Port”](#) section on page B-2).

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

To power up the switch and verify hardware operation, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Verify that the faceplates of all modules are flush with the front of the chassis, and the ejector levers are fully closed and approximately parallel to the faceplate of the module.
- Step 2** Verify that any empty module slots have filler panels installed.
- Step 3** Verify that both power supplies and the fan module are installed.
- Step 4** If any optional CompactFlash cards are installed, verify that the ejector button is popped out.
- Step 5** Check the captive screws of the power supplies, fan module, and all supervisor, switching, or services modules, and tighten any loose captive screws.
- Step 6** Ensure that the switch is adequately grounded as described in the “[System Grounding](#)” section on [page 2-17](#), and that the power cables are connected to outlets that have the required AC or DC power voltages. See [Appendix D, “Technical Specifications,”](#) for the required voltages.
- Step 7** Power on the switch by turning the power switches on the power supplies or PEMs to the on (I) position or restoring power to the DC circuit, as required. The switch boots automatically.
- Step 8** Listen for the fans; they should begin operating as soon as the switch is powered on.



---

**Caution** Do not operate the switch without a functioning fan module except during the brief fan module replacement procedure. The Cisco MDS 9000 Family switches can operate for only a few minutes without a functioning fan module before they begin to overheat.

---

- Step 9** After the switch has finished booting, verify that the LED behavior is as follows:
- Fan module: Status LED is green.
  - Power supplies:
    - Input OK LED is green.
    - Fan OK LED is green.
    - Output Fail LED is off.
  - Supervisor, switching, or services modules:
    - The System LED on the supervisor module is green, indicating that all chassis environmental monitors are reporting that the system is operational. If this LED is orange or red, then one or more environmental monitor is reporting a problem.
    - The Status LED on the switching or services modules flashes orange once, remains orange during diagnostic boot tests, then turns green when the module is operational (online). If the system software cannot start up, this LED remains orange or turns red.



---

**Note** The LEDs for the Fibre Channel ports remain orange until the ports are enabled, and the LED for the MGMT 10/100 Ethernet port remains off until the port is connected.

---

If any LEDs other than the Fibre Channel port LEDs remain orange or red after the initial boot processes are complete, see [Appendix D, “Technical Specifications.”](#)

- Step 10** If a component is not operating correctly, try removing and reinstalling it. If it still does not operate correctly, contact your customer service representative for a replacement.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**



**Note** If you purchased this product through a Cisco reseller, contact the reseller directly for technical support. If you purchased this product directly from Cisco Systems, contact Cisco Technical Support at this URL: <http://www.cisco.com/warp/public/687/Directory/DirTAC.shtml>.

**Step 11** Verify that the system software has booted and the switch has initialized without error messages. If any problems occur, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Troubleshooting Guide* or the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family System Messages Reference*. If you cannot resolve an issue, contact your customer service representative.

**Step 12** Complete the worksheets provided in [Appendix F, “Site Planning and Maintenance Records,”](#) for future reference.



**Note** A setup utility automatically launches the first time you access the switch and guides you through the basic configuration. For instructions about how to configure the switch and check module connectivity, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide* or the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Fabric Manager Configuration Guide*.

## Removing, Installing, and Verifying Supervisor, Switching, and Services Modules

This section provides the following information:

- [Removing Supervisor Modules, page 2-39](#)
- [Installing Supervisor Modules, page 2-40](#)
- [Removing a Caching Services Module, page 2-44](#)
- [Removing Other Switching and Services Modules, page 2-45](#)
- [Installing a Switching or Services Module, Including Caching Services Modules, page 2-45](#)
- [Verifying Installation of Supervisor, Switching, and Services Modules, page 2-46](#)
- [Removing and Installing a Crossbar Module, page 2-47](#)



**Warning**

**Invisible laser radiation may be emitted from disconnected fibers or connectors. Do not stare into beams or view directly with optical instruments.** Statement 1051



**Warning**

**Use of controls, adjustments, or performing procedures other than those specified may result in hazardous radiation exposure.** Statement 1057



**Warning**

**Hazardous voltage or energy is present on the backplane when the system is operating. Use caution when servicing.** Statement 1034

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Caution**

To prevent ESD damage, wear grounding wrist straps during these procedures and handle modules by the carrier edges only.

**Note**

Install the Cisco MDS 9500 Series chassis in the rack before installing modules. See the “[Installing the Chassis in a Cabinet or Rack](#)” section on page 2-6.

**Note**

In systems with redundant supervisor modules, you can replace the faulty supervisor while the system is operating, provided that one supervisor is always operating.

## Removing Supervisor Modules

To remove a Supervisor-1 or Supervisor-2 module from the chassis, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Shut down the crossbar switching fabric functionality in the supervisor module of the Cisco MDS 9509 and 9506 Directors by using the **out-of-service module slot** command (where *slot* refers to the slot number for the Supervisor-1 or Supervisor-2 module where the integrated crossbar is located).
- Step 2** Upload the current configuration to a server if the switch has only one supervisor module. For information about the correct command, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide*.
- Step 3** Fail over to the standby supervisor if the switch has two supervisor modules and the supervisor you are removing is currently active. For information on how to fail over a supervisor module, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide*.
- Step 4** Disconnect any network interface cables attached to the module.
- Step 5** Loosen the two captive screws on the module being removed.
- Step 6** Remove the module from the chassis as follows:
  - a. Place your thumbs on the left and right ejector levers and simultaneously rotate the levers outward to unseat the module from the backplane connector.
  - b. Grasp the front edge of the module and slide the module partially out of the slot. Place your other hand under the module to support the weight of the module. Do not touch the module circuitry.
- Step 7** Place the module on an antistatic mat or antistatic foam, or immediately reinstall it in another slot.
- Step 8** Install a filler panel on an empty slot to keep the chassis dust-free and to maintain proper airflow through the chassis.

**Warning**

**Blank faceplates and cover panels serve three important functions: they prevent exposure to hazardous voltages and currents inside the chassis; they contain electromagnetic interference (EMI) that might disrupt other equipment; and they direct the flow of cooling air through the chassis. Do not operate the system unless all cards, faceplates, front covers, and rear covers are in place.** Statement 1029

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## Installing Supervisor Modules

In a Cisco MDS 9513 Director, slots 7 and 8 are reserved for the Supervisor-2 modules. In the Cisco MDS 9509 Director, slot 5 is reserved for the Supervisor-2 or Supervisor-1 module. In the Cisco MDS 9506 Director, slot 5 is reserved for the Supervisor-1 module. Slot 6 in the Cisco MDS 9509 and 9506 Directors is reserved for an additional redundant supervisor module in case the supervisor module in slot 5 fails. See [Figure 1-3 on page 1-6](#) and [Figure 1-4 on page 1-7](#) for slot locations.

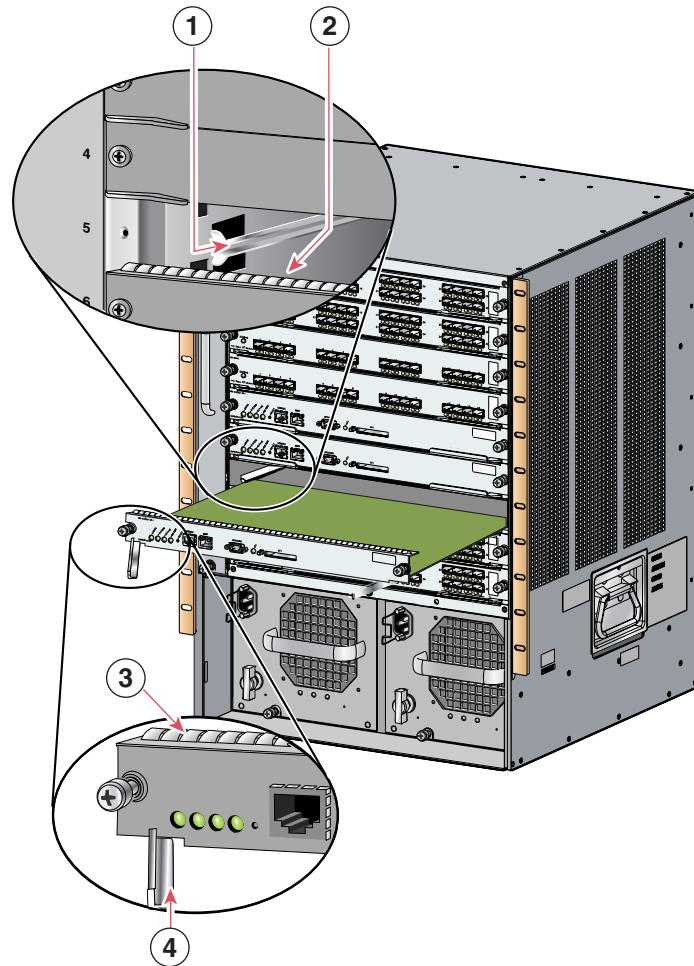
Supervisor-1 modules and Supervisor-2 modules cannot be used in the same switch, except for migration purposes. Both the active and standby supervisor modules must be of the same type, either Supervisor-1 or Supervisor-2 modules. For Cisco MDS 9513 Directors, both supervisor modules must be Supervisor-2 modules.

- 
- Step 1** Before installing any modules in the chassis, Cisco recommends installing the chassis in the rack. See the [“Installing the Chassis in a Cabinet or Rack” section on page 2-6](#).
  - Step 2** Verify that there is enough clearance to accommodate any cables or interface equipment that you want to connect to the module.
  - Step 3** Verify that the captive screws are tightened to 8 in-lb on all modules already installed in the chassis. This ensures that the EMI gaskets are fully compressed and maximizes the opening space for the module being installed.
  - Step 4** If a filler panel is installed, remove the two Phillips pan-head screws from the filler panel and remove the panel. To remove a currently installed module, see the [“Removing Other Switching and Services Modules” section on page 2-45](#).
  - Step 5** Open both the ejector levers on the new or replacement module completely. (See [Figure 2-22](#).)



**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure 2-22 Positioning a Module in the Chassis**



94987

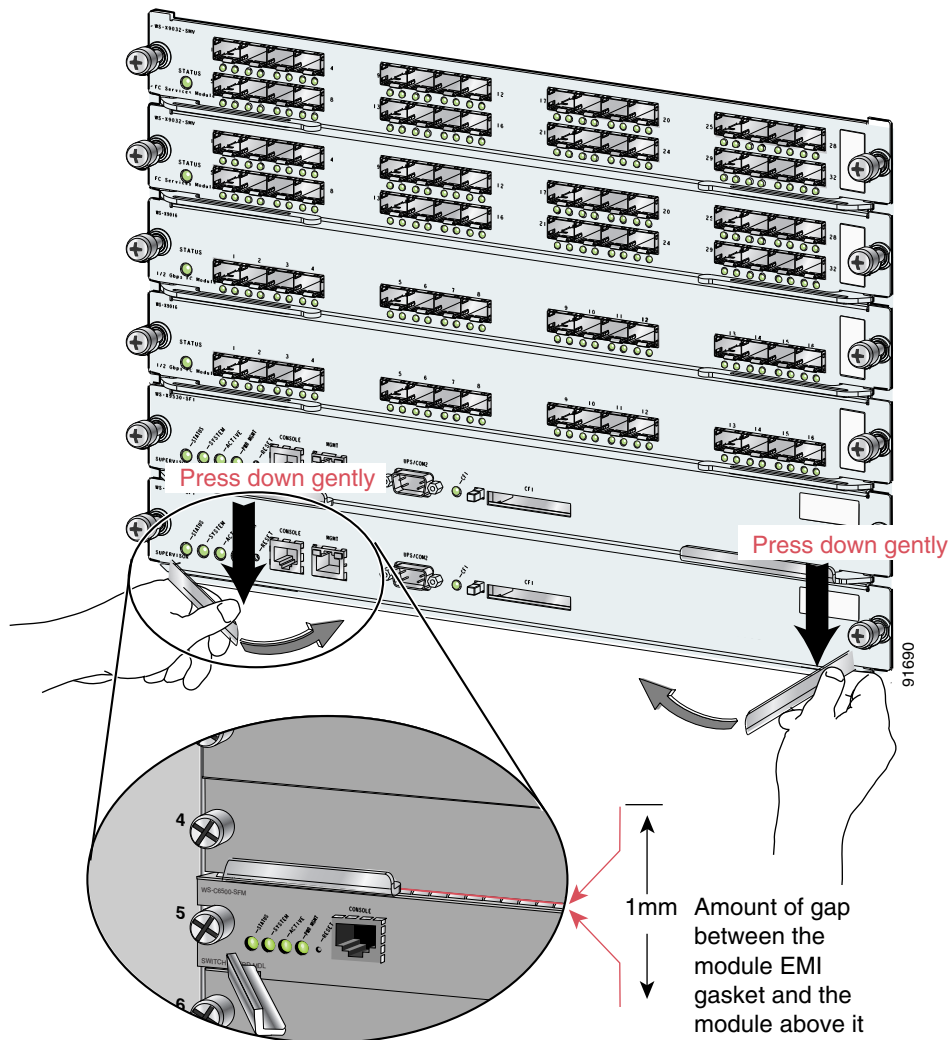
1	Slot guides	3	EMI Gasket
2	EMI Gasket	4	Ejector level (fully extended)

**Step 6** Position the module in the chassis as follows:

- a. Slide the module carefully into the slot until the EMI gasket along the top edge of the module contacts the module in the slot above it and both ejector levers close to approximately 45 degrees with respect to the front of the module (see [Figure 2-23](#)).

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

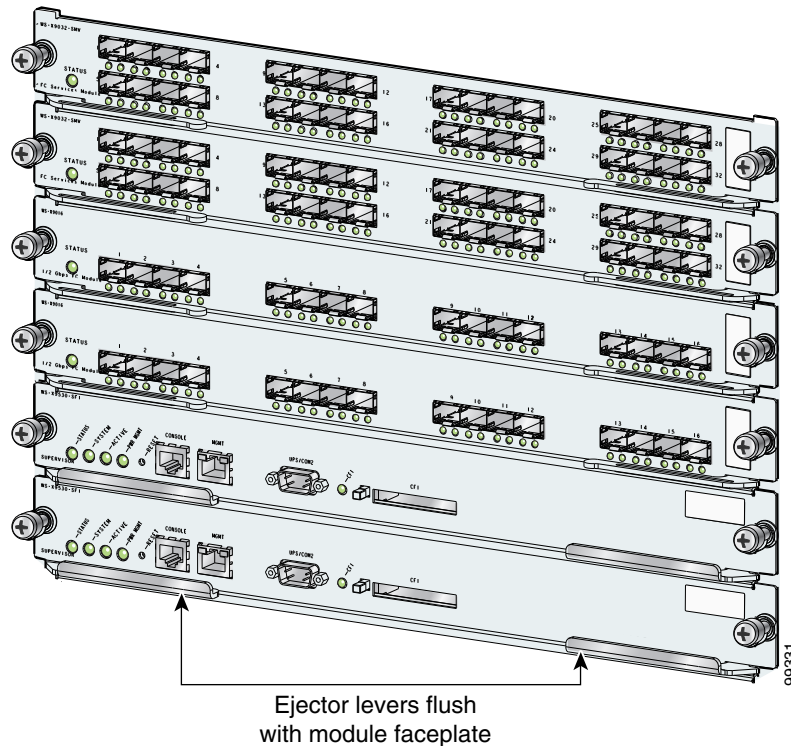
**Figure 2-23** Clearing the EMI Gasket



- b. Grasp the two ejector levers using the thumb and forefinger of each hand, and press down to create a small 0.040-inch (1-mm) gap between the module's EMI gasket and the module above it. (See [Figure 2-24](#).)

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure 2-24 Closing the Ejector Levers**



**Caution** Do not press down too forcefully on the levers because they can bend.

- c. While pressing down, simultaneously close the left and right ejector levers to fully seat the supervisor module or switching module in the backplane connector. The ejector levers are fully closed when they are flush with the front of the module.



**Note** Ensure the ejector levers are fully closed before tightening the captive screws. Failure to fully seat the module in the backplane connector can result in error messages.

- d. Tighten the two captive screws on the supervisor module or switching module to 8 in-lb.

**Step 7** If you replaced the standby supervisor module in a switch that has two supervisors and is running Cisco MDS SAN-OS Release 1.2(2a) or earlier, enable the automatic synchronization feature, which is disabled by default. For information about the **auto-sync** option, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide*.

**Step 8** If you replaced the supervisor in a switch that does not have a second supervisor or is running Cisco MDS SAN-OS Release 1.3(1) or later or NX-OS Release 4.1(1b), download the configuration from the server to the nonvolatile memory of the supervisor. For more information, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide*.

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## Removing a Caching Services Module



### Note

A minimum of two CSMs in each fabric are required for redundancy and data backup.



### Warning

**Do not touch or bridge the metal contacts on the battery. Unintentional discharge of the batteries can cause serious burns.** Statement 341



### Warning

**Ultimate disposal of this product should be handled according to all national laws and regulations.** Statement 1040



### Caution

Wait for all LEDs to turn off before removing the module from the chassis. If the LEDs are on, the module still has power.

To remove a CSM module from the chassis, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Power off the module from the CLI. For information about the correct command to use, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide*.
- Step 2** Ensure that the backup process has completed by verifying that all LEDs on the module have turned off. This requires up to 10 minutes.
- Step 3** Loosen the two captive screws on the module.
- Step 4** Remove the module from the chassis as follows:
- a. Place your thumbs on the left and right ejector levers (shown in [Figure 2-22 on page 2-41](#)) and simultaneously rotate the levers outward to unseat the module from the backplane connector.
  - b. Grasp the front edge of the module and slide the module partially out of the slot. Place your other hand under the module to support the weight of the module. Do not touch the module circuitry.
- Step 5** Place the module on an antistatic mat or antistatic foam if not immediately reinstalling it in another slot.
- Step 6** If the slot will remain empty, install a filler panel to keep the chassis dust-free and to maintain consistent airflow.



### Warning

**Blank faceplates and cover panels serve three important functions: they prevent exposure to hazardous voltages and currents inside the chassis; they contain electromagnetic interference (EMI) that might disrupt other equipment; and they direct the flow of cooling air through the chassis. Do not operate the system unless all cards, faceplates, front covers, and rear covers are in place.** Statement 1029

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## Removing Other Switching and Services Modules

To remove a switching or services module from the chassis, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Disconnect any network interface cables attached to the module.
  - Step 2** Loosen the two captive screws on the module being removed.
  - Step 3** Remove the module from the chassis as follows:
    - a. Place your thumbs on the left and right ejector levers and simultaneously rotate the levers outward to unseat the module from the backplane connector.
    - b. Grasp the front edge of the module and slide the module partially out of the slot. Place your other hand under the module to support the weight of the module. Do not touch the module circuitry.
  - Step 4** Place the module on an antistatic mat or antistatic foam, or immediately reinstall it in another slot.
  - Step 5** If the slot will remain empty, install a filler panel to keep the chassis dust-free and to maintain proper airflow through the chassis.



---

**Warning** Blank faceplates and cover panels serve three important functions: they prevent exposure to hazardous voltages and currents inside the chassis; they contain electromagnetic interference (EMI) that might disrupt other equipment; and they direct the flow of cooling air through the chassis. Do not operate the system unless all cards, faceplates, front covers, and rear covers are in place. Statement 1029

---

## Installing a Switching or Services Module, Including Caching Services Modules

The following warning applies only to the Caching Services Module:



**Warning**

---

**Do not touch or bridge the metal contacts on the battery. Unintentional discharge of the batteries can cause serious burns.** Statement 341

---

To install a switching or services module in the chassis, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Before installing any modules in the chassis, Cisco recommends installing the chassis in the rack. See the [“Installing the Chassis in a Cabinet or Rack”](#) section on page 2-6.
  - Step 2** Before installing any switching modules, install at least one supervisor module.
  - Step 3** Choose a slot for the module and verify that there is enough clearance to accommodate any cables or interface equipment that you want to connect to the module. If possible, place modules between empty slots that contain filler panels.
  - Step 4** Verify that the captive screws are tightened to 8 in-lb on all modules already installed in the chassis. This ensures that the EMI gaskets are fully compressed and maximizes the opening space for the module being installed.

## Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).

- Step 5** If a filler panel is installed, remove the two Phillips pan-head screws from the filler panel and remove the panel. To remove a currently installed module, see the “[Removing Other Switching and Services Modules](#)” section on page 2-45.
- Step 6** Open both the ejector levers on the new or replacement module completely. (See [Figure 2-22](#).)
- Step 7** Position the module in the chassis as follows:
- a. Position the module in the slot. Ensure that you align the sides of the module carrier with the slot guides on each side of the slot.
  - b. Slide the module carefully into the slot until the EMI gasket along the top edge of the module contacts the module in the slot above it and both ejector levers close to approximately 45 degrees with respect to the front of the module. (See [Figure 2-23](#).)
  - c. Grasp the two ejector levers using the thumb and forefinger of each hand, and press down to create a small 0.040-inch (1-mm) gap between the module’s EMI gasket and the module above it. (See [Figure 2-24](#).)




---

**Caution** Do not press down too forcefully on the levers because they can bend.

---

- d. While pressing down, simultaneously close the left and right ejector levers to fully seat the supervisor module or switching module in the backplane connector. The ejector levers are fully closed when they are flush with the front of the module.




---

**Note** Ensure the ejector levers are fully closed before tightening the captive screws. Failure to fully seat the module in the backplane connector can result in error messages.

---

- e. Tighten the two captive screws on the supervisor module or switching module to 8 in-lb.

- Step 8** If you replaced the standby supervisor module in a switch that has two supervisors and is running Cisco MDS SAN-OS Release 1.2(2a) or earlier, enable the automatic synchronization feature, which is disabled by default. For information about the **auto-sync** option, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide*.
- Step 9** If you replaced the supervisor in a switch that does not have a second supervisor or is running Cisco MDS SAN-OS Release 1.3(1) or later or NX-OS Release 4.1(1b), download the configuration from the server to the nonvolatile memory of the supervisor. For more information, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide*.
- 

## Verifying Installation of Supervisor, Switching, and Services Modules

To verify the module installation, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Verify that the ejector levers of each module are fully closed (parallel to the front of the module) to ensure that the supervisor module and all switching or services modules are fully seated in the backplane connectors.
- Step 2** Check the captive screws of each module, the power supply, and the fan module. Tighten any loose captive screws to 8 in-lb.
- Step 3** Verify that any empty module slots have filler panels installed and that the screws holding the panels in place are tight.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Step 4** Turn on the power supply switches to power up the system and check the LEDs on the modules.



**Note** For information about how to check connectivity of modules, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide*.

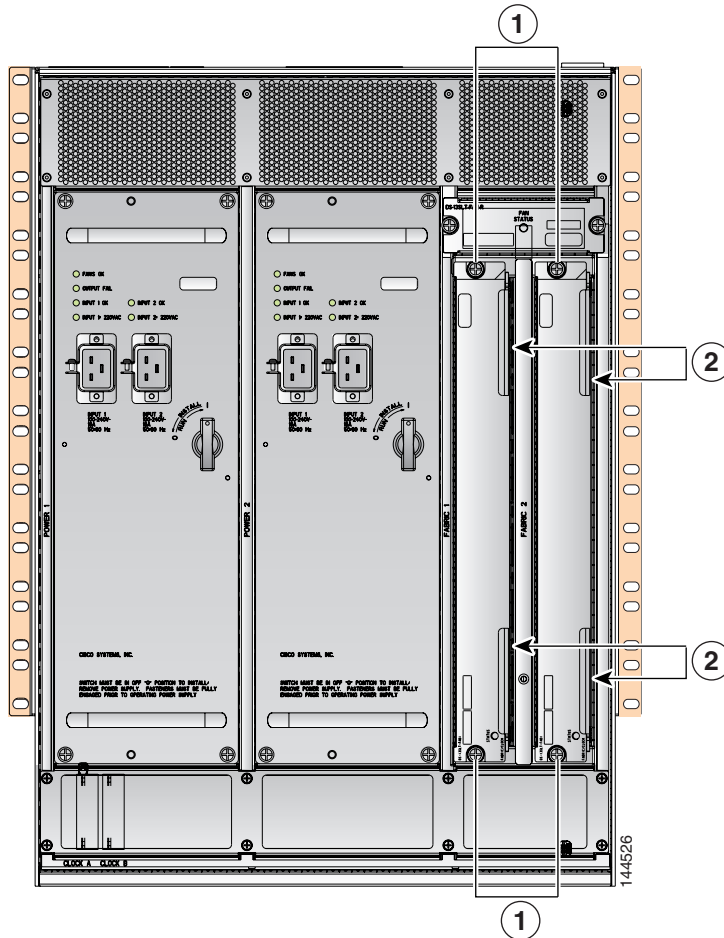
## Removing and Installing a Crossbar Module

To remove a crossbar module from the Cisco MDS 9513 Director without compromising the integrity and availability of SANs when Generation 1 and Generation 2 modules are combined in the chassis, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Shut down the crossbar module by using the **out-of-service xbar slot** command (where *slot* refers to the external crossbar module slot number).
- Step 2** Loosen the two captive screws on the module being removed.
- Step 3** Remove the module from the chassis as follows:
- Place your thumbs on the top and bottom ejector levers and simultaneously rotate the levers outward to unseat the module from the midplane connector. (See [Figure 2-25](#).)
  - Hold the front edge of the module and slide the module partially out of the slot. Do not touch the module circuitry.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure 2-25 Captive Screws and Ejector Levers on the Crossbar Module**



<b>1</b>	Captive screws	<b>2</b>	Ejector levers
----------	----------------	----------	----------------

**Step 4** Place the module on an antistatic mat or antistatic foam, or immediately reinstall it in another slot.

**Step 5** If the slot will remain empty, install a filler panel to keep the chassis dust-free and to maintain proper airflow through the chassis.



**Warning** Blank faceplates and cover panels serve three important functions: they prevent exposure to hazardous voltages and currents inside the chassis; they contain electromagnetic interference (EMI) that might disrupt other equipment; and they direct the flow of cooling air through the chassis. Do not operate the system unless all cards, faceplates, front covers, and rear covers are in place. Statement 1029

To install a crossbar module in the Cisco MDS 9513 Director, follow these steps:

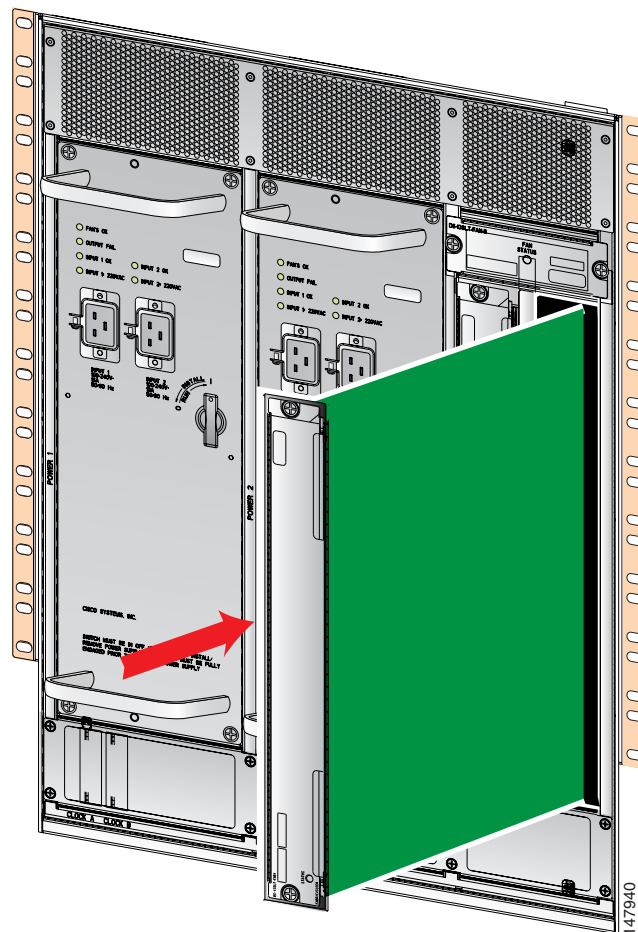
**Step 1** Before installing any modules, install at least one Supervisor-2 module.



**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

- Step 2** Open both the ejector levers on the new or replacement module completely.
- Step 3** Position the module in the chassis as follows:
- Position the module in the slot. Ensure that you align the sides of the module carrier with the slot guides on each side of the slot.
  - Slide the module carefully into the slot until the EMI gasket along the top edge of the module contacts the module in the slot above it and both ejector levers close to approximately 45 degrees with respect to the front of the module. (See [Figure 2-26](#).)

**Figure 2-26** Installing the Crossbar Module



- Grasp the two ejector levers using the thumb and forefinger of each hand, and press down to create a small 0.040-inch (1-mm) gap between the module's EMI gasket and the module above it.



**Caution** Do not press down too forcefully on the levers because they can bend.

- While pressing down, simultaneously close the top and bottom ejector levers to completely seat the module in the midplane connector. The ejector levers are completely closed when they are flush with the front of the module.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**



**Note** Ensure the ejector levers are completely closed before tightening the captive screws. Failure to completely seat the module in the backplane connector can result in error messages.

- e. Tighten the two captive screws on the module to 8 in-lb.

## Maintaining a Caching Services Module



**Caution**

Maintenance must be performed only by qualified service personnel.



**Note**

A minimum of two CSMs in each fabric are required for redundancy and data backup.

This section provides the following information:

- [Maintaining the Batteries on the Caching Services Module, page 2-50](#)
- [Maintaining the Disk Drives on the Caching Services Module, page 2-51](#)

## Maintaining the Batteries on the Caching Services Module

The CSM batteries last approximately three years. The following message displays in the system log when a battery fails:

```
Dec 5 17:14:36 sw-90.21% SVC_BATTERY-SLOT8-4-BATTERY_CAPACITY_LOW:
Battery capacity is below the required threshold.
```

If this message is displayed, contact your support provider for assistance. If a battery fails, the CSM must be replaced. The other CSMs in the fabric contain the same data, and they continue providing caching services during the replacement period.



**Caution**

The CSM batteries are shipped fully charged and should be handled accordingly.



**Warning**

**Do not touch or bridge the metal contacts on the battery. Unintentional discharge of the batteries can cause serious burns.** Statement 341



**Warning**

**Ultimate disposal of this product should be handled according to all national laws and regulations.** Statement 1040

The batteries are automatically charged on a periodic basis with an SMBus-compliant Level III smart charger located on the CSM. The smart charger measures the charge and recharges the battery to full if it is less than 90 percent of capacity.

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

The batteries are also automatically reconditioned on a periodic basis, one battery at a time. During reconditioning all power is drained from the battery and the battery is completely recharged, requiring approximately 6 hours. The battery status LED flashes green during the reconditioning.

## Maintaining the Disk Drives on the Caching Services Module

You see a message in the system log when a disk drive requires replacement. If you see this message, contact your support provider for assistance.

If a disk drive fails, the CSM must be replaced. The other CSM(s) in the fabric contain the same data, and they continue providing caching services during the replacement period.

## Removing and Installing a Power Supply or PEM

This section provides the following information:

- [Removing and Installing the Power Supplies on the Cisco MDS 9513 Director, page 2-52](#)
- [Removing an AC Power Supply from the Cisco MDS 9513 Director, page 2-52](#)
- [Installing an AC Power Supply in the Cisco MDS 9513 Director, page 2-54](#)
- [Removing an AC Power Supply from the Cisco MDS 9509 Director, page 2-56](#)
- [Installing an AC Power Supply in the Cisco MDS 9509 Director, page 2-57](#)
- [Removing a DC Power Supply from the Cisco MDS 9509 Director, page 2-61](#)
- [Installing a DC Power Supply in the Cisco MDS 9509 Director, page 2-62](#)
- [Removing and Installing the PEMs on the Cisco MDS 9506 Director, page 2-64](#)
- [Removing an AC or DC Power Supply from the Cisco MDS 9506 Director, page 2-67](#)
- [Installing an AC or DC Power Supply in the Cisco MDS 9506 Director, page 2-67](#)

A flat-blade or number 2 Phillips-head screwdriver is required to perform these procedures.



**Warning**

**Voltage is present on the backplane when the system is operating. To reduce risk of an electric shock, keep hands and fingers out of the power supply bays and backplane areas.** Statement 166



**Warning**

**Power supply captive installation screws must be tight to ensure protective grounding continuity.** Statement 289



**Caution**

Use both hands to install and remove power supplies. Each DC power supply for the Cisco MDS 9500 Series weighs between 22 lb (9.9 kg) and 28 lb (12.6 kg).



**Note**

You can replace the faulty power supply while the system is operating if the other power supply is functioning.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

## Removing and Installing the Power Supplies on the Cisco MDS 9513 Director

The Cisco MDS 9513 power supplies are located at the rear of the chassis. The physical position of the chassis in a rack will determine how you handle the power supply when removing or installing.

### Removing an AC Power Supply from the Cisco MDS 9513 Director



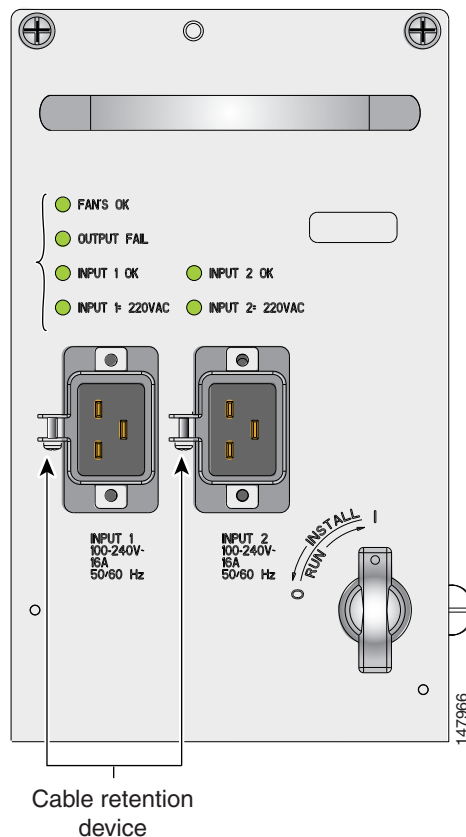
#### Warning

**Voltage is present on the backplane when the system is operating. To reduce risk of an electric shock, keep hands and fingers out of the power supply bays and backplane areas.** Statement 166

To remove an AC power supply from the Cisco MDS 9513 Director, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Turn the power switch on the power supply to the off (0) position. There is an internal lock mechanism that prevents you from removing the power supply if it is not set to the off position.
- Step 2** Disconnect the power cable(s) from the power source.
- Step 3** Loosen the screw on the cable retention device and disconnect the power cable from the power supply.

**Figure 2-27 Cable Retention Device on the 6000W Power Supply**



- Step 4** Loosen all four 6-32 panel fasteners at the corners of the power supply.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Caution**

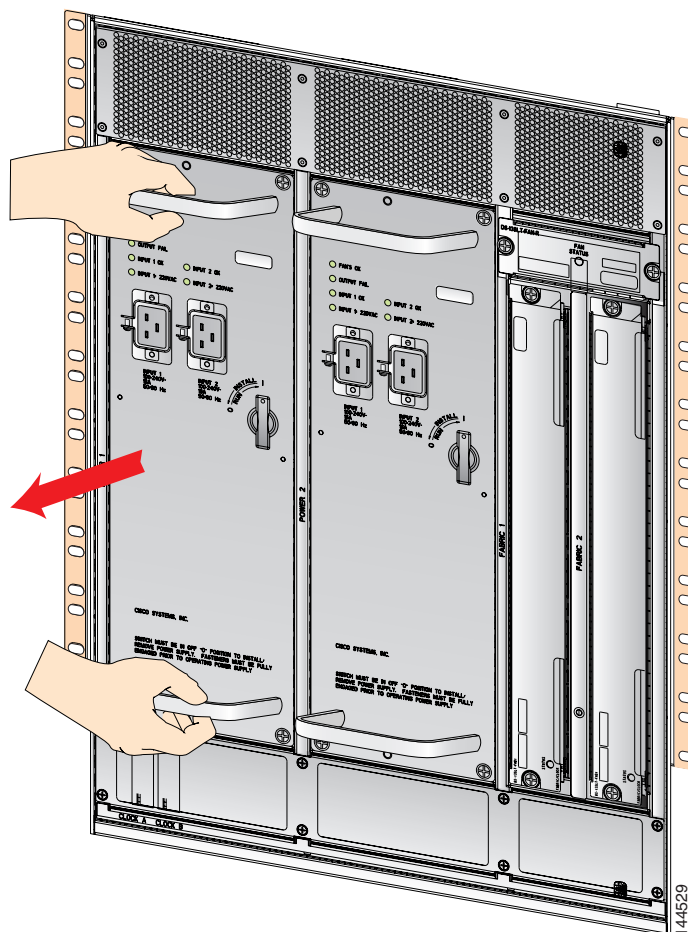
Use both hands to install and remove power supplies. Each power supply weighs 34.2 lbs (15.5 kg).

- Step 5** Grasp the power supply handles and slide the power supply partially out of the chassis, about four to five inches. (See [Figure 2-28](#).)
- Step 6** If the power supply is at your waist or chest level, place your other hand underneath the power supply and slide the power supply completely out of the chassis. Use the two front handles if you are comfortable doing so.

**Note**

There is a handle at the top rear of the power supply you can also use to lift the power supply out of the chassis.

**Figure 2-28 Handling a Power Supply for the Cisco MDS 9513 Director**



- Step 7** If the power supply is above your waist or chest height, use the lower front handle on the face plate and the other hand underneath the power supply. Assure adequate support with both hands on the unit at the designated support points, and slowly pull the power supply out of the chassis so that the weight of the unit will be fully supported once it is removed.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Caution**

To avoid damage to the panel fasteners, do not place the power supply down on the perforated ends. Place the power supply down on the flat sheet metal sides or on the two brackets found on the rear of the power supply.

**Step 8**

Install a power supply filler panel over the opening and tighten the captive screws to 8 in-lb if the power supply bay that has to remain empty.

## Installing an AC Power Supply in the Cisco MDS 9513 Director

**Caution**

Use both hands to install and remove power supplies. Each Cisco MDS 9513 AC power supply weighs up to 34.2 lb (15.5 kg).

**Caution**

To avoid damage to the panel fasteners, do not place the power supply down on the perforated ends. Place the power supply down on the flat sheet metal sides or on the two brackets found on the rear of the power supply.

To install an AC power supply in the Cisco MDS 9513 Director, follow these steps:

**Step 1**

Ensure that the system (earth) ground connection has been made. See the [“System Grounding” section on page 2-17](#).

**Step 2**

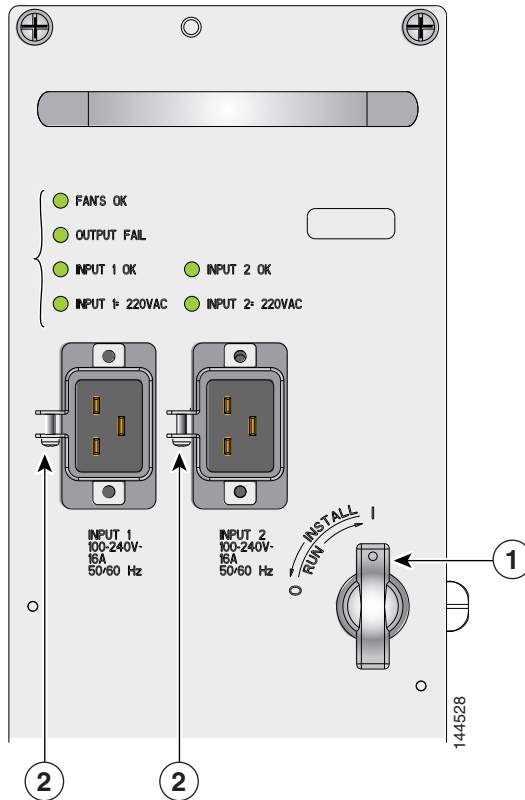
If a filler panel is installed, remove the filler panel from the power supply bay by loosening the captive screw.

**Step 3**

Ensure that the power switch is in the off (0) position on the power supply you are installing. (See [Figure 2-29](#).)

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure 2-29 AC Power Supply for the Cisco MDS 9513 Director**



<b>1</b>	Power supply switch	<b>2</b>	Power cable retainer
----------	---------------------	----------	----------------------

**Step 4** Grasp the power supply handles, one with each hand. Orient the power supply and align it with the bay.



**Note** There is a handle at the top rear of the power supply you can also use to tilt the power supply into the bay.

**Step 5** Slide the power supply into the power supply bay. Ensure that the power supply is fully seated in the bay.

**Step 6** Secure all four 6-32 panel fasteners and tighten to 8 in-lbs.

**Step 7** Plug the power cable into the power supply, and tighten the screw on the cable retention device to ensure that the cable cannot be pulled out.

**Step 8** Connect the other end of the power cable to an AC power source.

**Step 9** Turn the power switch to the on (I) position on the power supply.

**Step 10** Verify power supply operation by checking that the power supply LEDs are in the following states:

- INPUT OK LEDs are green.
- FAN'S OK LED is green.
- OUTPUT FAIL LED is off.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

See [Table 1-2 on page 1-11](#) for power supply LED details.

## Removing an AC Power Supply from the Cisco MDS 9509 Director

The procedure for removing an AC power supply from the Cisco MDS 9509 Director is the same for the 4000-W, 3000-W, and 2500-W power supplies, except the power cable for the 4000-W power supply is hard wired to the power supply.



### Warning

**Voltage is present on the backplane when the system is operating. To reduce risk of an electric shock, keep hands and fingers out of the power supply bays and backplane areas.** Statement 166

To remove an AC power supply from the Cisco MDS 9509 Director, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Turn the power switch on the power supply to the off (0) position. Turning the power switch off also unlocks the power supply from the chassis.
- Step 2** Disconnect the power cable from the power source.
- Step 3** Loosen the screw on the cable retention device and disconnect the power cable from the power supply being removed.



**Note** The AC power cable for the 4000-W power supply is hardwired and cannot be removed from the power supply.

- Step 4** Loosen the captive screw.



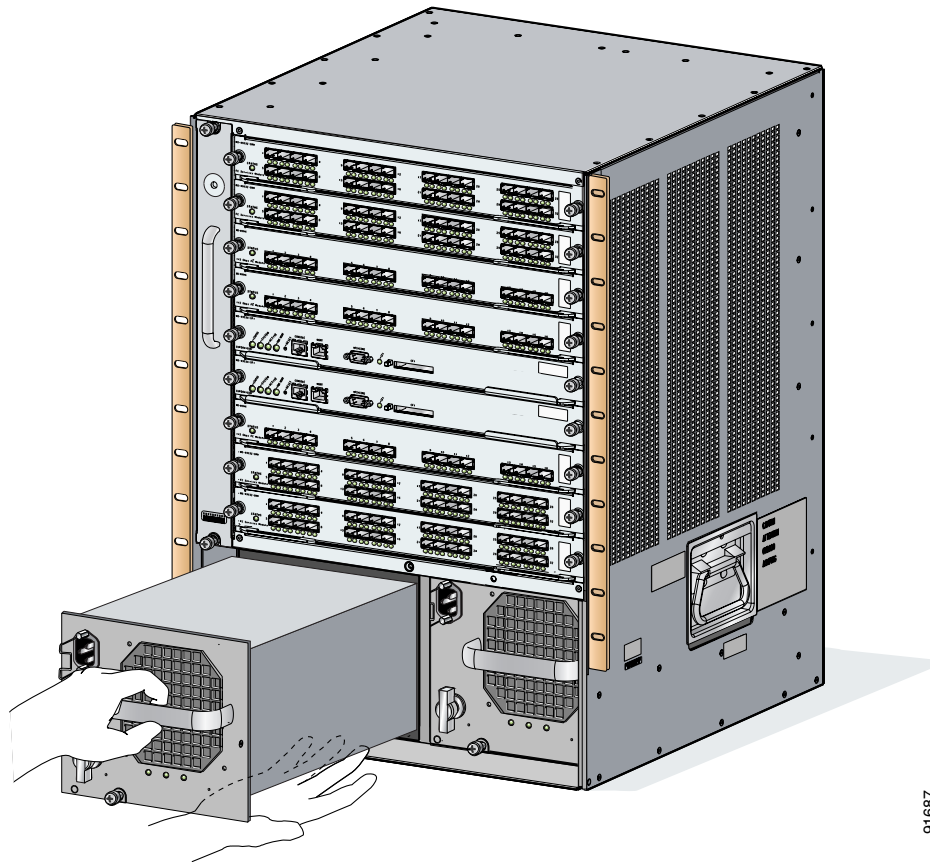
**Caution** Use both hands to install and remove power supplies. Each Cisco MDS 9500 Series AC power supply weighs between 22 lb (9.9 kg) and 28 lb (12.6 kg).

- Step 5** Grasp the power supply handle with one hand, and slide the power supply partially out of the chassis. Place your other hand underneath the power supply, as shown in [Figure 2-30](#), and slide the power supply completely out of the chassis.
- Step 6** If the power supply bay is to remain empty, install a power supply filler panel over the opening, and tighten the captive screw to 8 in-lb.



**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure 2-30 Handling a Power Supply for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director**



91687

## Installing an AC Power Supply in the Cisco MDS 9509 Director

The procedure for installing an AC power supply in the Cisco MDS 9509 Director is the same for the 4000-W, 3000-W, and 2500-W power supplies, except that the power cable for the 4000-W power supply is hardwired to the power supply.



### Caution

Use both hands to install and remove power supplies. Each Cisco MDS 9509 AC power supply weighs up to 28 lb (12.6 kg). The 4000-W and 2500-W power supplies weigh up to 28 lb (12.6 kg). The 3000-W power supply weighs up to 24 lb (11 kg).

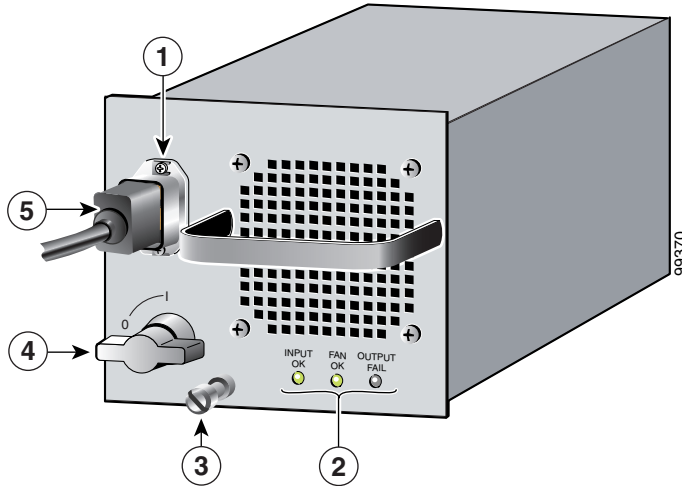
To install an AC power supply in the Cisco MDS 9509 Director, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Ensure that the system (earth) ground connection has been made. See the [“System Grounding” section on page 2-17](#).
- Step 2** If a filler panel is installed, remove the filler panel from the power supply bay by loosening the captive screw.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

- Step 3** Ensure that the power switch is in the off (0) position on the power supply you are installing. See [Figure 2-33](#) and [Figure 2-31](#) for the location of the switch.

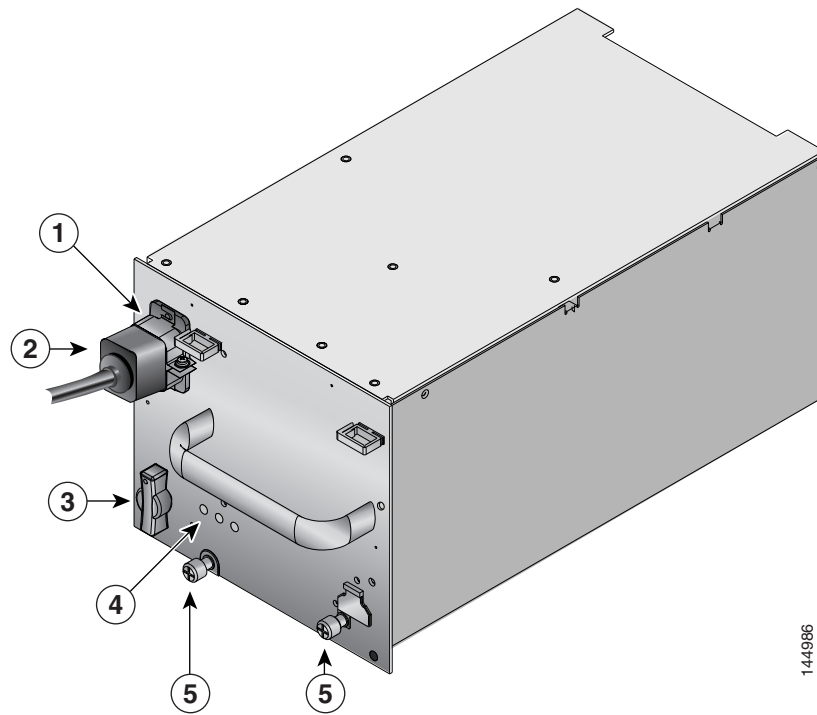
**Figure 2-31** 4000-W AC Power Supply for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director



1	AC power connection	4	Power supply switch
2	Power supply LEDs	5	Permanent power cable
3	Captive screw		

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

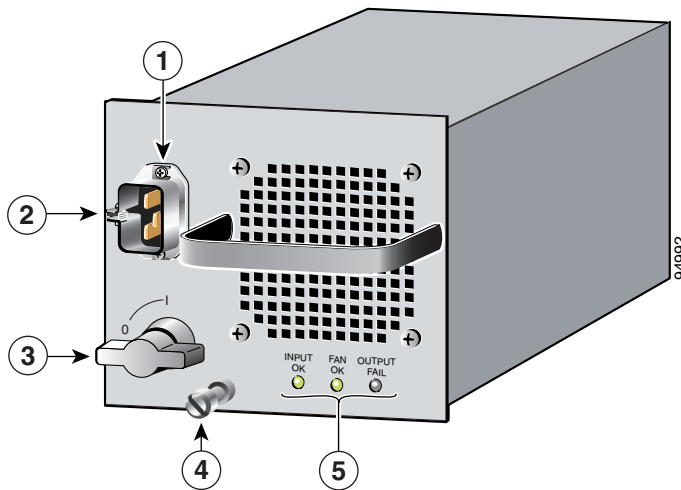
**Figure 2-32 3000-W AC Power Supply for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director**



<b>1</b>	AC power connection	<b>4</b>	Power supply LEDs
<b>2</b>	Power cable	<b>5</b>	Captive screws
<b>3</b>	Power supply switch		

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure 2-33 2500-W AC Power Supply for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director**



1	AC power connection	4	Captive screw
2	Power cable retainer	5	Power supply LEDs
3	Power supply switch		

**Step 4** Grasp the power supply handle with one hand, place your other hand underneath the power supply, and slide the power supply into the power supply bay. Ensure that the power supply is fully seated in the bay.

**Step 5** Tighten the power supply captive screw to 8 in-lb.

**Step 6** Plug the power cable into the power supply, and tighten the screw on the cable retention device to ensure that the cable cannot be pulled out.



**Note** The AC power cable for the 4000-W power supply is hardwired to the power supply.

**Step 7** Connect the other end of the power cable to an AC power source.

**Step 8** Turn the power switch to the on (I) position on the power supply. Turning the power switch on also locks the power supply in the bay.

**Step 9** Verify power supply operation by checking that the power supply LEDs are in the following states:

- INPUT OK LED is green.
- FAN OK LED is green.
- OUTPUT FAIL LED is off.

If the LEDs indicate a power problem, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Troubleshooting Guide*. If you cannot resolve an issue, contact your customer service representative.

*Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).*

## Removing a DC Power Supply from the Cisco MDS 9509 Director

The DC power supply for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director is 2500 W.

**Note**

The DC return connection to this system is to remain isolated from the system frame and chassis (DC-I).

**Warning**

**Before performing any of the following procedures, ensure that power is removed from the DC circuit.** Statement 1003

To remove a DC power supply from the Cisco MDS 9509 Director, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Ensure that all power is off by locating the circuit breaker on the panel board that services the DC circuit. Switch the circuit breaker to the off position, and tape the switch handle of the circuit breaker in the off position.
- Step 2** Remove the two screws securing the terminal block cover and slide the cover off the terminal block. (See [Figure 2-34](#).)
- Step 3** Disconnect the DC cables from the terminal block in the following order:
- Positive (+)
  - Negative (-)
  - Ground

**Caution**

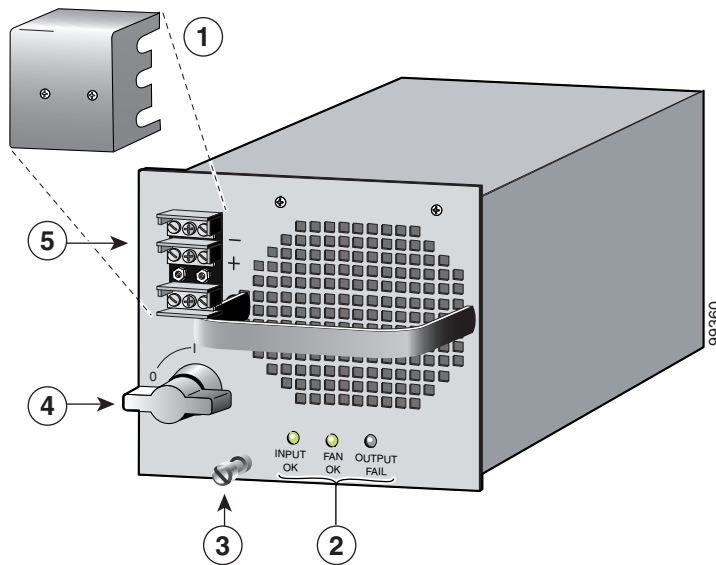
The DC return connection (Negative (-)) to this system is to remain isolated from the system frame and chassis (DC-I). Loosen the captive screw on the power supply.

**Warning**

**When installing or replacing the unit, the ground connection must always be made first and disconnected last.** Statement 1046

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure 2-34 Front Panel for the DC Power Supply of the Cisco MDS 9509 Director**



<b>1</b>	Terminal block cover	<b>4</b>	Power supply switch
<b>2</b>	Power supply LEDs	<b>5</b>	Terminal block
<b>3</b>	Captive screw		



**Caution** Use both hands to install and remove power supplies. Each Cisco MDS 9500 Series DC power supply weighs between 22 lb (9.9 kg) and 28 lb (12.6 kg).

- Step 4** Grasp the power supply handle with one hand and slide the power supply halfway out of the chassis. Place your other hand underneath the power supply, as shown in [Figure 2-34](#), and slide the power supply completely out of the chassis.
- Step 5** If the power supply bay is to remain empty, install a power supply filler panel over the opening, and tighten the captive screw to 8 in-lb.

## Installing a DC Power Supply in the Cisco MDS 9509 Director

The DC power supply for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director is 2500 W.



**Note**

The DC return connection to this system is to remain isolated from the system frame and chassis (DC-I).

To install a DC power supply in the Cisco MDS 9509 Director, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Ensure that all power is off by locating the circuit breaker on the panel board that services the DC circuit. Switch the circuit breaker to the off position, and tape the switch handle of the circuit breaker in the off position.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

- Step 2** Ensure that the system (earth) ground connection has been made. See the “System Grounding” section on page 2-17.
- Step 3** Grasp the power supply handle with one hand, place your other hand underneath the power supply, and slide the power supply into the power supply bay, ensuring that it is fully seated in the bay.
- Step 4** Tighten the captive screw on the power supply to 8 in-lb.
- Step 5** Remove the two screws securing the terminal block cover and slide the cover off of the terminal block.



---

**Note** Use 90°C copper conductors for North American installations.

---

- Step 6** Loosen the screws inside the terminal block and attach the DC cables to the screws. The wire must be copper, and sized per local and national installation requirements.
- Step 7** Connect the DC cables to the terminal block in the following order:
- Ground
  - Negative (-)
  - Positive (+)



---

**Warning** **When installing or replacing the unit, the ground connection must always be made first and disconnected last.** Statement 1046

---



---

**Caution** The DC return connection (Negative (-)) to this system is to remain isolated from the system frame and chassis (DC-I).

---

- Step 8** Reinstall the terminal block cover after ensuring that all cable connections are secure and tighten the screws holding the terminal block to the power supply.



---

**Caution** Reinstall the terminal block cover to prevent a short circuit or shock hazard.

---



---

**Caution** In a system with dual power supplies, connect each power supply to a separate source. In case of a line failure, the second source will most likely still be available.

---

- Step 9** Remove the tape from the circuit breaker switch handle and provide power by moving the handle to the on (I) position. Turning the power switch on also locks the power supply in the chassis.
- Step 10** Verify power supply operation by checking that the power supply LEDs are in the following states:
- INPUT OK LED is green.
  - FAN OK LED is green.
  - Output fail LED is off.

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## Removing and Installing the PEMs on the Cisco MDS 9506 Director



### Note

For instructions on connecting the cables to the PEMs, see the “[Connecting the Power Supplies](#)” section on page 2-28.

The Cisco MDS 9506 Director uses PEMs to provide an input power connection on the front of the chassis. In addition, the PEM provides current protection, surge and EMI suppression, and filtering functions. An AC PEM is required for each AC power supply, and a DC PEM for each DC power supply.

The PEM that is on the left when viewed from the front of the switch (PEM 1) connects the site power source to power supply 1 (upper power supply); the PEM on the right (PEM 2) connects the site power source to power supply 2 (lower power supply).



### Note

You need a flat-blade or number 2 Phillips-head screwdriver to perform these procedures.

### Removing an AC PEM

To remove an AC PEM from a Cisco MDS 9506 chassis, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Remove power from the PEM by pressing the power switch to off (0).
  - Step 2** Loosen the captive screws and pull the PEM of the chassis, supporting the PEM from underneath.
  - Step 3** If the PEM bay is to remain empty, install a filler panel over the opening and tighten the captive screws to 8 in-lb.
- 

### Removing a DC PEM



### Warning

**Before performing any of the following procedures, ensure that power is removed from the DC circuit.**  
Statement 1003

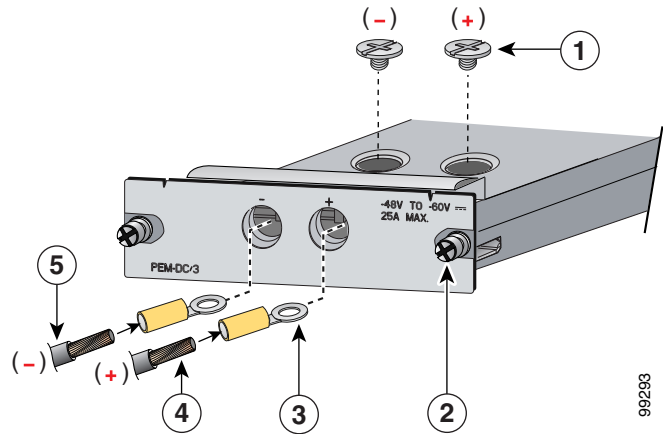
To remove a DC PEM from a Cisco MDS 9506 chassis, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Ensure that all power is off by locating the circuit breaker on the panel board that services the DC circuit. Switch the circuit breaker to the off position, and tape the switch handle of the circuit breaker in the off position.
  - Step 2** Loosen the captive screws and pull the DC PEM from the chassis, holding it by the edges.
  - Step 3** Remove the cables from the DC PEM by removing the terminal block screws, and then removing the ring lugs from the screws. See [Figure 2-35](#) for the location of the terminal block screws.



**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure 2-35 Connecting or Disconnecting the DC PEM**



<b>1</b>	PEM terminal block screws (+ and -)	<b>4</b>	Stripped portion of positive cable
<b>2</b>	Captive screw	<b>5</b>	Insulated portion of negative cable
<b>3</b>	Ring lug		

**Step 4** If the PEM bay is to remain empty, install a PEM filler panel over the opening and tighten the captive screws to 8 in-lb.

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## Installing an AC PEM

To install an AC PEM in a Cisco MDS 9506 chassis, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Ensure that the system (earth) ground connection has been made. See the [“System Grounding” section on page 2-17](#).
  - Step 2** If a filler panel is installed, remove it from the PEM bay by loosening the captive screws and pulling it from the chassis.
  - Step 3** Slide the PEM into the PEM bay, ensuring that the PEM is fully seated in the bay.
  - Step 4** Tighten the PEM captive screws to 8 in-lb.
  - Step 5** Provide power to the PEM as described in the [“Providing Power to an AC Power Supply for the Cisco MDS 9509 and Cisco MDS 9506 Directors” section on page 2-30](#).




---

**Caution** In a system with dual power supplies, connect each power supply to a separate power source. In case of a power source failure, the second source will most likely still be available.

---

- Step 6** Verify PEM and power supply operation by checking the power supply LED states in the back of the chassis:
    - INPUT OK LED is green.
    - FAN OK LED is green.
    - OUTPUT FAIL LED is off.
- 

## Installing a DC PEM

To install a DC PEM in a Cisco MDS 9506 chassis, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Ensure that the system (earth) ground connection has been made. See the [“System Grounding” section on page 2-17](#).
  - Step 2** If a filler panel is installed, remove it from the PEM bay by loosening the captive screws and pulling it from the chassis.
  - Step 3** Attach the DC power cables to the PEM as described in [“Providing Power to a DC Power Supply in the Cisco MDS 9506 Director” section on page 2-34](#).
  - Step 4** Slide the PEM into the PEM bay, ensuring that the PEM is fully seated in the bay.
  - Step 5** Tighten the PEM captive screws to 8 in-lb.




---

**Caution** In a system with dual power supplies, connect each power supply to a separate power source. In case of a power source failure, the second source will most likely still be available.

---

- Step 6** Verify PEM and power supply operation by checking the power supply LED states in the back of the chassis:
  - INPUT OK LED is green.
  - FAN OK LED is green.

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

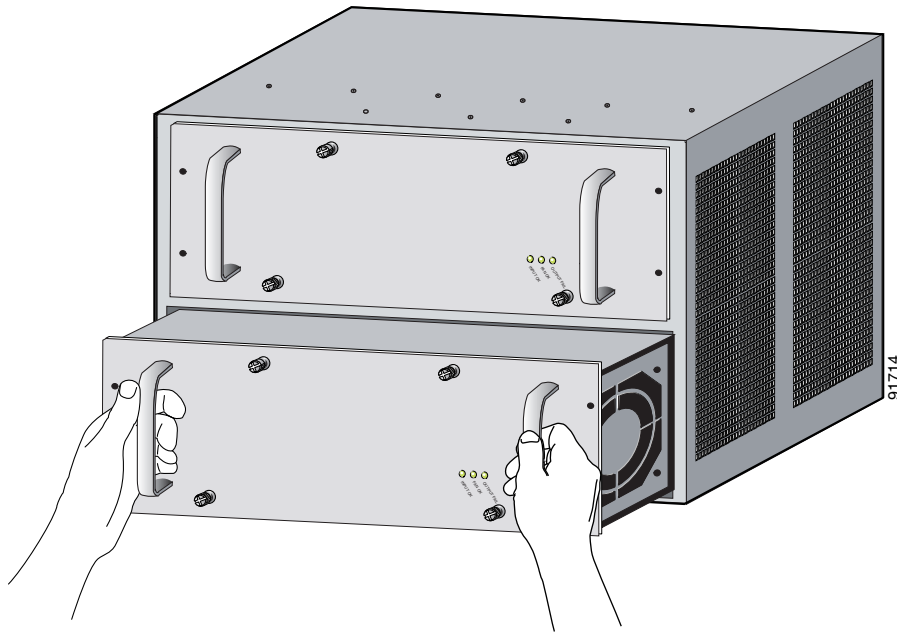
- OUTPUT FAIL LED is off.

## Removing an AC or DC Power Supply from the Cisco MDS 9506 Director

The procedure for removing a Cisco MDS 9506 power supply is the same for AC and DC power supplies. To remove an AC or DC power supply from the Cisco MDS 9506 Director, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Remove power from the PEM that corresponds to the power supply as follows:
  - If the PEM is AC, press the power switch to off (0).
  - If the PEM is DC, follow the instructions in the “Removing a DC PEM” section on page 2-64.
- Step 2** Loosen the captive screws on the power supply.
- Step 3** Grasp both power supply handles as shown in [Figure 2-36](#) and slide the power supply completely out of the chassis.

**Figure 2-36** Handling a Power Supply for the Cisco MDS 9506 Director



- Step 4** If the power supply bay is to remain empty, install a filler panel over the opening and tighten the captive screws to 8 in-lb.

## Installing an AC or DC Power Supply in the Cisco MDS 9506 Director

The procedure for installing a Cisco MDS 9506 power supply is the same for AC and DC power supplies. To install an AC or DC power supply in the Cisco MDS 9506 Director, follow these steps:

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

- 
- Step 1** Ensure that the system (earth) ground connection has been made. See the “System Grounding” section on page 2-17.
- Step 2** If a filler panel is installed, remove it from the power supply bay by loosening the captive screws and pulling the filler panel out of the bay.
- Step 3** Grasp both power supply handles and slide the power supply into the power supply bay, ensuring that the power supply is fully seated in the bay.
- Step 4** Tighten the captive screws on the power supply to 8 in-lb.
- Step 5** Provide power to the PEM as described in the “Connecting the Power Supplies” section on page 2-28.



---

**Caution** In a system with dual power supplies, connect each power supply to a separate power source. In case of a power source failure, the second source will most likely still be available.

---

- Step 6** Verify power supply operation by checking that the power supply LEDs are in the following states:
- INPUT OK LED is green.
  - FAN OK LED is green.
  - OUTPUT FAIL LED is off.
- 

## Removing and Installing Fan Modules

The fan module is designed to be removed and replaced while the system is operating without presenting an electrical hazard or damage to the system, provided the replacement is performed promptly.

The Cisco MDS 9513 fan module has 15 fans with an abrupt stop-to-fan rotation safety feature after power is disconnected or the fan tray is removed from the midplane. The Cisco MDS 9506 fan module has six fans and the Cisco MDS 9509 fan module has nine fans. The removal procedures differ slightly while the installation procedures are the same for all types of fan modules.

You need a flat-blade or number 2 Phillips screwdriver to perform these procedures.



---

**Note** Because the fan modules are located on the left side of the Cisco MDS 9500 Series, Cisco recommends guiding the cables for the system out of the right side of the chassis.

---

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

**Caution**

The Cisco MDS 9000 Family switches have internal temperature sensors that are capable of shutting down the system if the temperature at different points within the chassis exceed certain safety thresholds. To be effective, the temperature sensors require the presence of airflow; therefore, in the event a fan module is removed from the chassis, the Cisco MDS 9000 Family switches will be shut down after five minutes to prevent potentially undetectable overheating. However, the switches will be shut down sooner if the higher-level temperature threshold is exceeded.

This section includes the following topics:

- [Removing a Front Fan Module on the Cisco MDS 9513 Director, page 2-69](#)
- [Installing a Front Fan Module on the Cisco MDS 9513 Director, page 2-70](#)
- [Removing the Crossbar Module Fan Tray, page 2-71](#)
- [Installing the Crossbar Module Fan Tray, page 2-72](#)
- [Removing a Front Fan Module on the Cisco MDS 9509 Director, page 2-73](#)
- [Installing a Front Fan Module on the Cisco MDS 9509 Director, page 2-73](#)
- [Removing a Front Fan Module on the Cisco MDS 9506 Director, page 2-74](#)
- [Installing a Front Fan Module on the Cisco MDS 9506 Director, page 2-74](#)

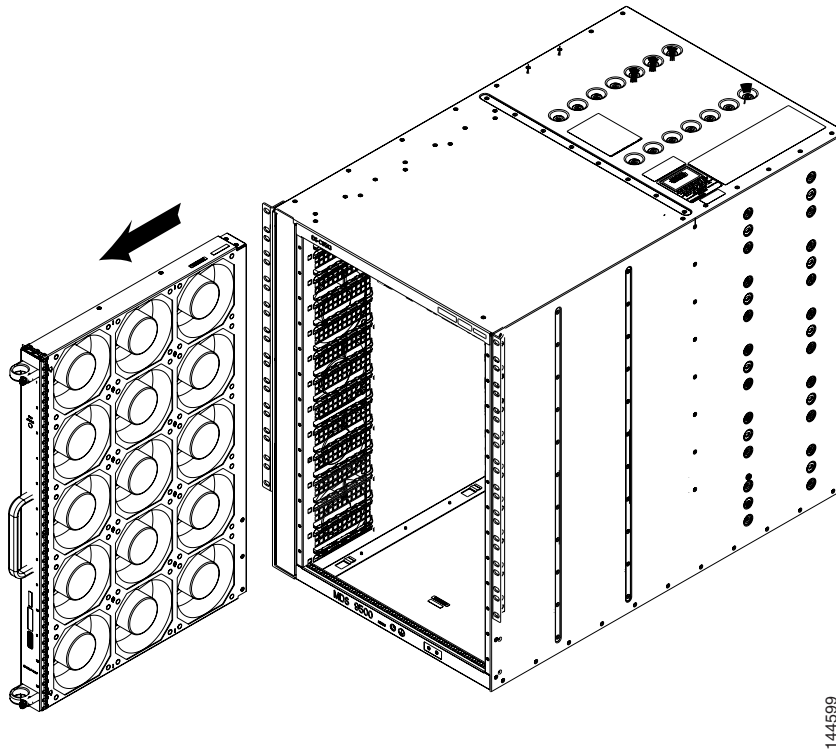
## Removing a Front Fan Module on the Cisco MDS 9513 Director

To remove the fan module from the Cisco MDS 9513 director, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Push the button on the top fan module latch to release the fan module from the midplane. Repeat this on the bottom fan module latch.
- Step 2** Grasp the fan module with both hands and pull it outward; rock it gently, if necessary, to unseat the power connector from the backplane.
- Step 3** Pull the fan module clear of the chassis. (See [Figure 2-36](#).)

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure 2-37 Removing the Fan Module for the Cisco MDS 9513 Director**



**Warning**

**When removing the fan tray, keep your hands and fingers away from the spinning fan blades. Let the fan blades completely stop before you remove the fan tray.** Statement 258

## Installing a Front Fan Module on the Cisco MDS 9513 Director

To install a front fan module on the Cisco MDS 9513 Director, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Hold the fan module so that the Fan Status LED is at the top. (See [Figure 2-39](#).)
- Step 2** Place the fan module into the front chassis cavity so it rests on the chassis, lift the fan module up slightly to align the top and bottom chassis guides, then push the fan module into the chassis until it seats in the backplane and the captive screws make contact with the chassis. The fan module will just snap in.
- Step 3** If the switch is powered on, listen for the fans; you should immediately hear them operating. If you do not hear them, ensure that the fan module is inserted completely in the chassis and the outside surface of the fan module is flush with the outside surface of the chassis.
- Step 4** Verify that the Fan Status LED is green. If the LED is not green, one or more fans are faulty. If this occurs, contact your customer service representative for a replacement part.

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

**Note**

If you purchased this product through a Cisco reseller, contact the reseller directly for technical support. If you purchased this product directly from Cisco Systems, contact Cisco Technical Support at this URL: <http://www.cisco.com/warp/public/687/Directory/DirTAC.shtml>.

## Removing the Crossbar Module Fan Tray

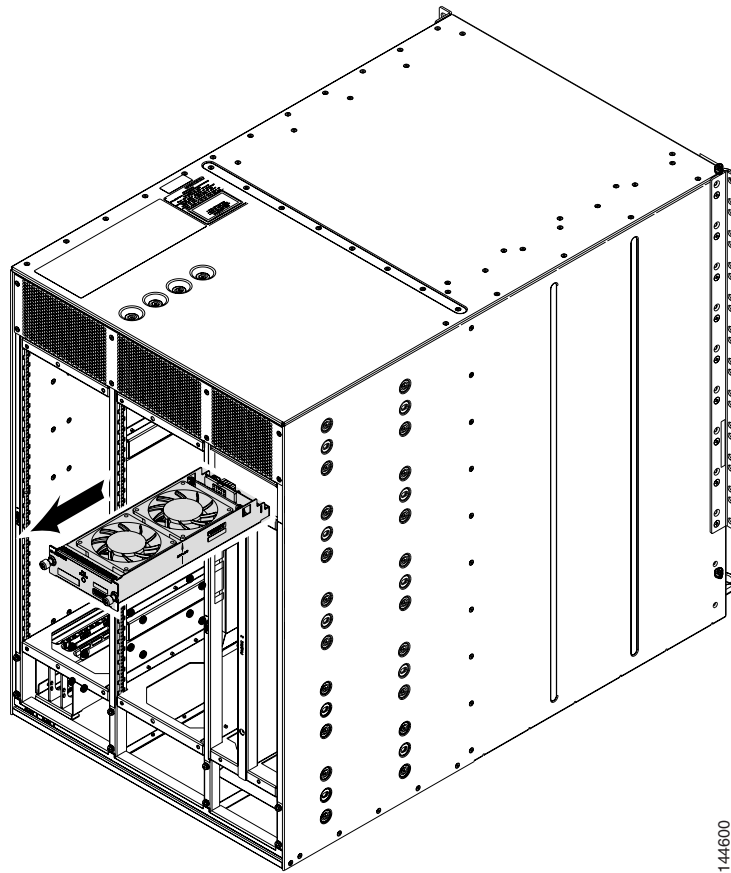
The crossbar module fan tray is designed to be removed and replaced while the system is operating without presenting an electrical hazard or damage to the system, provided the replacement is performed promptly. The crossbar module fan tray is used only in the Cisco MDS 9513 Director. It is installed at the rear of the chassis and plugs into the back side of the midplane just above the crossbar modules.

To remove a crossbar module fan tray, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Loosen the two captive screws on the fan tray.
- Step 2** Hold the two captive screws and pull the fan tray out of the chassis using both hands.
- Step 3** Take one hand and hold the face of the fan tray while supporting it with the other hand.
- Step 4** Pull the fan module clear of the chassis. (See [Figure 2-37](#).)

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure 2-38** Removing a Crossbar Module Fan Tray



## Installing the Crossbar Module Fan Tray

To install a crossbar module fan tray, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Remove the crossbar module fan tray from the bag if necessary.
- Step 2** Orient the crossbar module fan tray in the chassis as follows:
- a. Position the module in the slot. (See [Figure 2-38](#).)
  - b. Slide the module carefully into the slot until the fan tray is fully inserted into the chassis.
  - c. Tighten the two captive screws on the crossbar module fan tray to 8 in-lb screws.
-



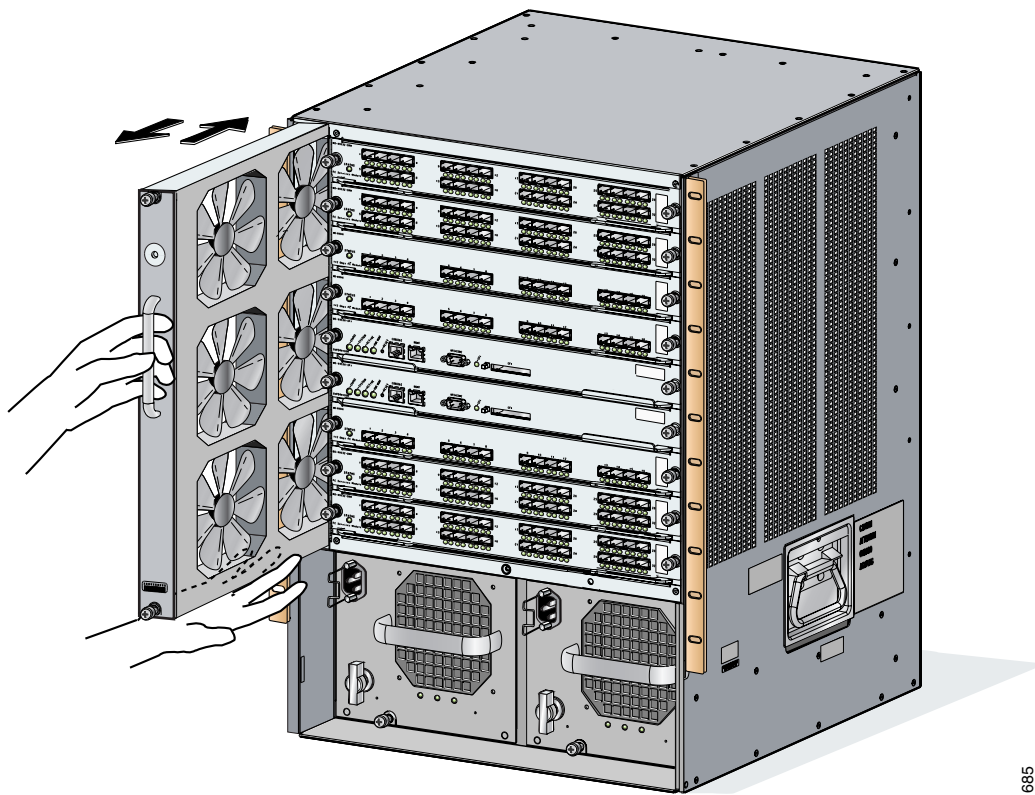
*Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).*

## Removing a Front Fan Module on the Cisco MDS 9509 Director

To remove a fan module from the Cisco MDS 9509 or 9506 switch, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Loosen the two captive screws on the fan module (see [Figure 2-39](#)) by turning them counterclockwise; use a flat-blade or number 2 Phillips screwdriver, if required.
- Step 2** Grasp the fan module with both hands and pull it outward; rock it gently, if necessary, to unseat the power connector from the backplane.
- Step 3** Pull the fan module clear of the chassis.

**Figure 2-39** Handling the Fan Module for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director



## Installing a Front Fan Module on the Cisco MDS 9509 Director

To install a front fan module on the Cisco MDS 9509 Director, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Hold the fan module so that the Fan Status LED is at the top. (See [Figure 2-39](#).)
- Step 2** Place the fan module into the front chassis cavity so it rests on the chassis, lift the fan module up slightly to align the top and bottom chassis guides, then push the fan module into the chassis until it seats in the backplane and the captive screws make contact with the chassis.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

- Step 3** Tighten the captive screws to 8 in-lb.
- Step 4** If the switch is powered on, listen for the fans; you should immediately hear them operating. If you do not hear them, ensure that the fan module is inserted completely in the chassis and the outside surface of the fan module is flush with the outside surface of the chassis.
- Step 5** Verify that the Fan Status LED is green. If the LED is not green, one or more fans are faulty. If this occurs, contact your customer service representative for a replacement part.



---

**Note** If you purchased this product through a Cisco reseller, contact the reseller directly for technical support. If you purchased this product directly from Cisco Systems, contact Cisco Technical Support at this URL: <http://www.cisco.com/warp/public/687/Directory/DirTAC.shtml>.

---

## Removing a Front Fan Module on the Cisco MDS 9506 Director

To remove a fan module from the Cisco MDS 9506 Director, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Loosen the two captive screws on the fan module (see [Figure 2-39](#)) by turning them counterclockwise; use a flat-blade or number 2 Phillips screwdriver, if required.
- Step 2** Grasp the fan module with both hands and pull it outward; rock it gently, if necessary, to unseat the power connector from the backplane.
- Step 3** Pull the fan module clear of the chassis.
- 

## Installing a Front Fan Module on the Cisco MDS 9506 Director

To install a front fan module on the Cisco MDS 9506 Director, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Hold the fan module so that the Fan Status LED is at the top.
- Step 2** Place the fan module into the front chassis cavity so it rests on the chassis, lift the fan module up slightly to align the top and bottom chassis guides, then push the fan module into the chassis until it seats in the backplane and the captive screws make contact with the chassis.
- Step 3** Tighten the captive screws to 8 in-lb.
- Step 4** If the switch is powered on, listen for the fans; you should immediately hear them operating. If you do not hear them, ensure that the fan module is inserted completely in the chassis and the outside surface of the fan module is flush with the outside surface of the chassis.
- Step 5** Verify that the Fan Status LED is green. If the LED is not green, one or more fans are faulty. If this occurs, contact your customer service representative for a replacement part.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Note**

If you purchased this product through a Cisco reseller, contact the reseller directly for technical support. If you purchased this product directly from Cisco Systems, contact Cisco Technical Support at this URL: <http://www.cisco.com/warp/public/687/Directory/DirTAC.shtml>.

## Removing and Installing CompactFlash Cards

The supervisor module has one slot for an optional CompactFlash card. You can use this slot to install additional flash memory for storing and running software images and configuration files, or to serve as an I/O device.

**Caution**

Only use CompactFlash devices that are certified for use with Cisco MDS switches and are formatted using Cisco MDS switches. Using CompactFlash devices that are uncertified or are formatted using other platforms may result in errors. For information on formatting the external CompactFlash, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide* or the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Fabric Manager Configuration Guide*.

You can install and remove the CompactFlash card with the switch powered on.

**Caution**

Do not remove the CompactFlash card while the access LED light is on or the file may be corrupted.

This section describes how to install and remove a CompactFlash card. For additional information about the CompactFlash card, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide* or the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Fabric Manager Configuration Guide*.

### Removing a CompactFlash Card

To remove a CompactFlash card, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Verify that no operations are in progress by verifying that the LED is off.
- Step 2** Press the ejector button until the card is free of the connector at the back.
- Step 3** Remove the card from the slot and place it in an antistatic bag.

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## Installing a CompactFlash Card

To install a CompactFlash card, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Position the CompactFlash card with the connector end of the card toward the slot. The connector end of the card is on the opposite side of the write-protection switch.
- Step 2** Insert the card into the slot until the card is firmly seated in the connector at the back of the slot and the ejector button pops out toward you.




---

**Caution** The card does not insert all the way inside the slot; a portion of the card remains outside the slot. Do not attempt to force the card past this point or you could damage the connector pins.

---

## Removing and Installing Clock Modules

The Cisco MDS 9500 Series includes one or more clock modules that are accessible from the back of the chassis. In the unlikely event of a clock module failure, Cisco recommends that the failed clock module be replaced during a maintenance window. The Cisco MDS 9513 and 9509 Directors have two field-replacable clock modules. The Cisco MDS 9506 Director has one field-replacable clock module. A separate procedure is provided for each type of director:

- [Removing a Clock Module from the Cisco MDS 9513 Director, page 2-77](#)
- [Installing a Clock Module into the Cisco MDS 9513 Director, page 2-79](#)
- [Removing a Clock Module from the Cisco MDS 9509 Director, page 2-80](#)
- [Installing a Clock Module into the Cisco MDS 9509 Director, page 2-83](#)
- [Removing a Clock Module from the Cisco MDS 9506 Director, page 2-83](#)
- [Installing a Clock Module into the Cisco MDS 9506 Director, page 2-86](#)

Before installing the clock module, check the contents of your kit. [Table 2-5](#) lists the contents of the clock module replacement kit, part number DS-C9513-CL.

**Table 2-5** *Contents of Cisco MDS 9513 Clock Module Replacement Kits*

Quantity	Part Description
1	Cisco MDS 9513 clock module
1	Disposable ESD wrist strap

These tools are required to remove or install a clock module:

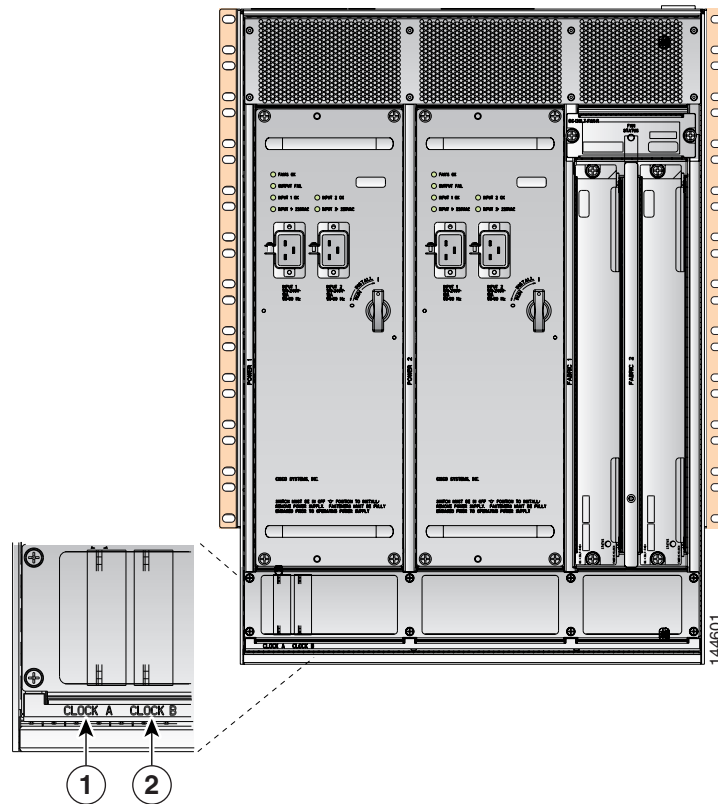
- Number 2 Phillips screwdriver
- Your own ESD-prevention equipment or the disposable grounding wrist strap included with all upgrade kits, field-replaceable units (FRUs), and spares

[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## Removing a Clock Module from the Cisco MDS 9513 Director

Clock modules are connected to the rear of the Cisco MDS 9513 Director and are not visible as they are located on the inside of the cover panel. [Figure 2-40](#) shows the clock modules in a rear view of the Cisco MDS 9513 Director with the back panel removed. Cisco recommends that the failed clock module be replaced during a maintenance window.

**Figure 2-40** Clock Module Location on the Cisco MDS 9513 Director (Rear View)



<b>1</b>	Clock A (CLK A)	<b>2</b>	Clock B (CLK B)
----------	-----------------	----------	-----------------



### Caution

Always wear an ESD wrist strap when handling modules or coming into contact with internal components.

To remove the clock module, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Note which clock module you are removing. Use the **show environment clock** command to verify which is active and standby.
- Step 2** Use a Phillips screwdriver to remove the eight back panel screws from the rear of the Cisco MDS 9513 Director chassis.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

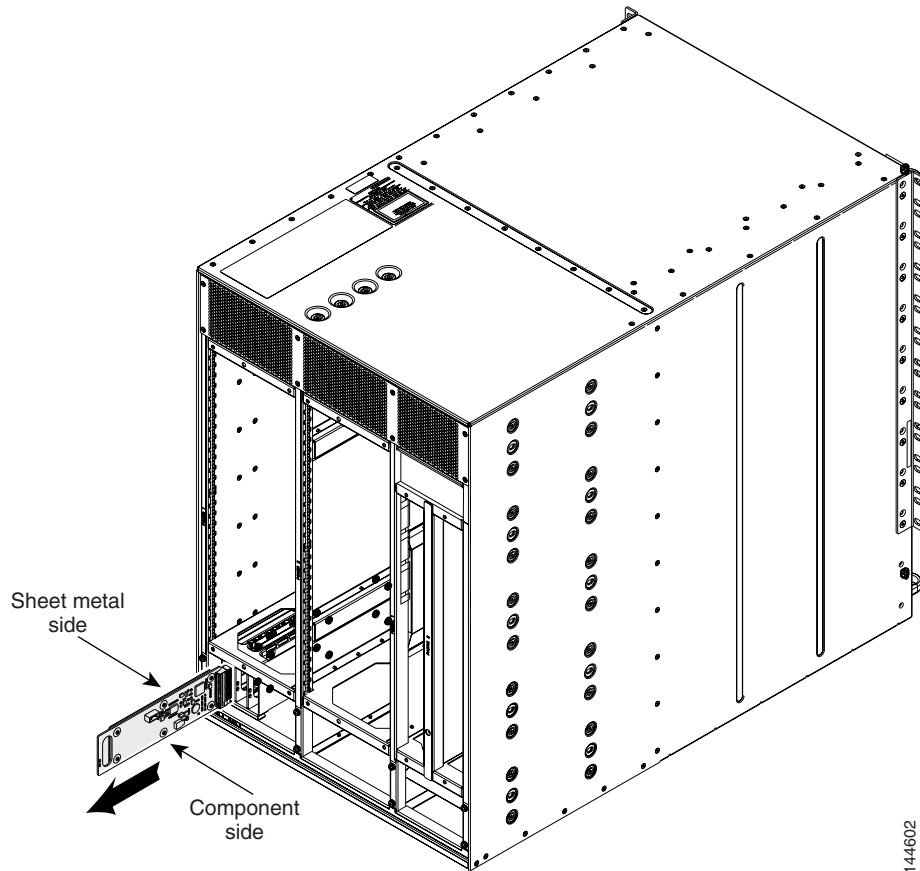


**Note** Note the position and orientation of the clock module before you remove it from the director chassis because you must install the new clock module in the same position.

**Step 3** Verify the LEDs on the clock modules.

**Step 4** Disconnect and gently remove the module, placing it on an antistatic mat or foam. (See [Figure 2-41](#).)

**Figure 2-41** Clock Module Replacement on the Cisco MDS 9513 Director (Rear View)



**Step 5** Repeat [Step 3](#) and [Step 4](#) to remove any additional clock modules.

*Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).*

## Installing a Clock Module into the Cisco MDS 9513 Director



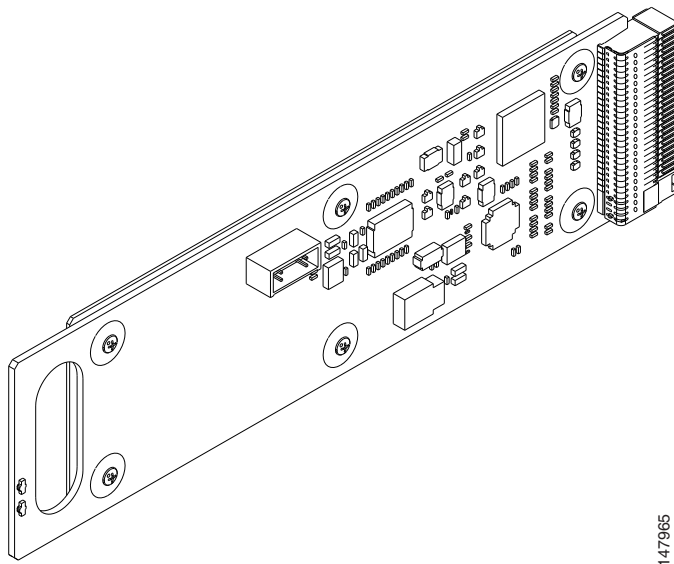
### Caution

Always wear an ESD wrist strap when handling modules or coming into contact with internal components.

To install the clock module, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Remove the new clock module from the antistatic bag.
- Step 2** Hold the module with the backplane connectors away from you and the circuit board facing the right.

**Figure 2-42** Clock Module for the Cisco MDS 9513 Director



- Step 3** Carefully press the module onto the two matching connectors on the backplane.



### Note

You must install the new clock module in the same position that you removed it.

- Step 4** Repeat [Step 1](#) through [Step 4](#) to install any additional clock modules.
- Step 5** Replace the back panel safety cover using the eight screws.
- Step 6** Provide power to the power supplies as described in the [“Connecting the Power Supplies”](#) section on [page 2-28](#).



### Caution

In a system with dual power supplies, connect each power supply to a separate power source. In case of a power source failure, the second source will most likely still be available.

- Step 7** Verify power supply operation by checking that the power supply LEDs are in the following states:
- INPUT OK LED is green.
  - FAN OK LED is green.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

- OUTPUT FAIL LED is off.

## Removing a Clock Module from the Cisco MDS 9509 Director

Before installing the clock module, check the contents of your kit. [Table 2-6](#) lists the contents of the clock module replacement kit, part number DS-C9509-CL=.

**Table 2-6** Contents of Cisco MDS 9509 Clock Module Replacement Kits

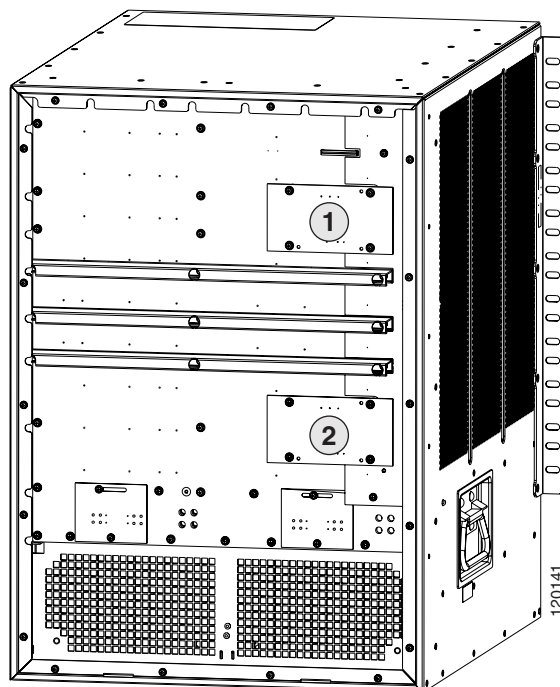
Quantity	Part Description
1	Cisco MDS 9509 clock module
12	M3 x 6-mm Phillips pan-head screws
1	Disposable ESD wrist strap

These tools are required to remove or install a clock module:

- Number 1 Phillips screwdriver
- Your own ESD-prevention equipment or the disposable grounding wrist strap included with all upgrade kits, field-replaceable units (FRUs), and spares

Clock modules are connected to the rear of the Cisco MDS 9509 Director using two connectors. [Figure 2-43](#) shows the clock modules in a rear view of the Cisco MDS 9509 Director with the back panel removed.

**Figure 2-43** Clock Module Location on the Cisco MDS 9509 Director (Rear View)



Cisco MDS 9509



***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

<b>1</b>	Clock A (CLK A)	<b>2</b>	Clock B (CLK B)
----------	-----------------	----------	-----------------

**Caution**

Always wear an ESD wrist strap when handling modules or coming into contact with internal components.

To remove the clock module, follow these steps:

**Step 1**

Remove power from both power supplies as follows:

- If the power supply is AC, press the power switch to off (0) and remove the power cable.
- If the power supply is DC, follow the instructions in the “[Providing Power to a DC Power Supply in the Cisco MDS 9509 Director](#)” section on page 2-33.

**Caution**

Before working on a system that has an on/off switch, turn off the power and unplug the power cord.

**Step 2**

Use a Phillips screwdriver to remove the 18 back panel screws from the rear of the Cisco MDS 9509 Director chassis.

**Note**

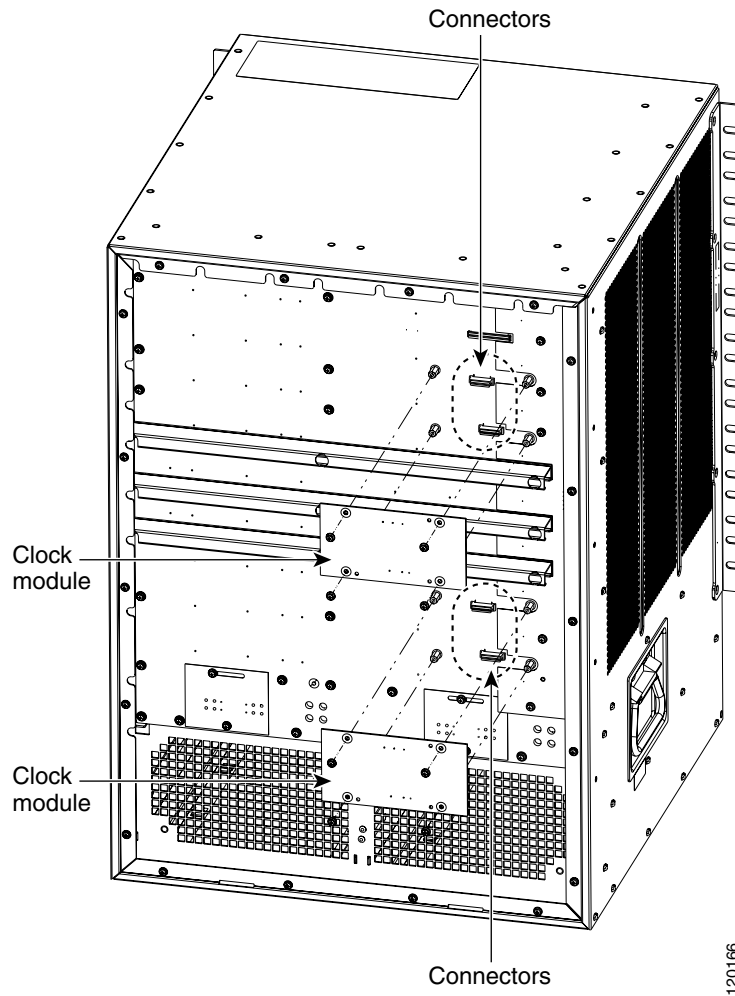
Note the position of the clock module before you remove it from the director chassis because you must install the new clock module in the same position.

**Step 3**

Remove the four screws that secure the clock module to the backplane. (See [Figure 2-44](#).)

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure 2-44** Clock Module Replacement on the Cisco MDS 9509 Director (Rear View)



**Step 4** Disconnect and gently remove the module, placing it on an antistatic mat or foam.

**Step 5** Repeat [Step 3](#) and [Step 4](#) to remove any additional clock modules.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

## Installing a Clock Module into the Cisco MDS 9509 Director



### Caution

Always wear an ESD wrist strap when handling modules or coming into contact with internal components.

To install the clock module, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Remove the new clock module from the antistatic bag.
- Step 2** Hold the module with the connectors away from you.
- Step 3** Carefully press the module onto the two matching connectors on the backplane.



### Note

You must install the new clock module in the same position that you removed it.

- Step 4** Replace the four screws to secure the clock module onto the backplane.
- Step 5** Repeat [Step 1](#) through [Step 4](#) to install any additional clock modules.
- Step 6** Replace the back panel safety cover using the 18 screws.
- Step 7** Provide power to the power supplies as described in the [“Connecting the Power Supplies”](#) section on [page 2-28](#).



### Caution

In a system with dual power supplies, connect each power supply to a separate power source. In case of a power source failure, the second source will most likely still be available.

- Step 8** Verify power supply operation by checking that the power supply LEDs are in the following states:
  - INPUT OK LED is green.
  - FAN OK LED is green.
  - OUTPUT FAIL LED is off.

## Removing a Clock Module from the Cisco MDS 9506 Director

Before replacing the clock module, check the contents of your kit. [Table 2-7](#) lists the contents of the clock module replacement kit, part number DS-C9506-CL=.

**Table 2-7** Contents of Cisco MDS 9506 Clock Module Replacement Kit

Quantity	Part Description
1	Cisco MDS 9506 clock module
12	M3 x 6-mm Phillips pan-head screws
1	Disposable ESD wrist strap

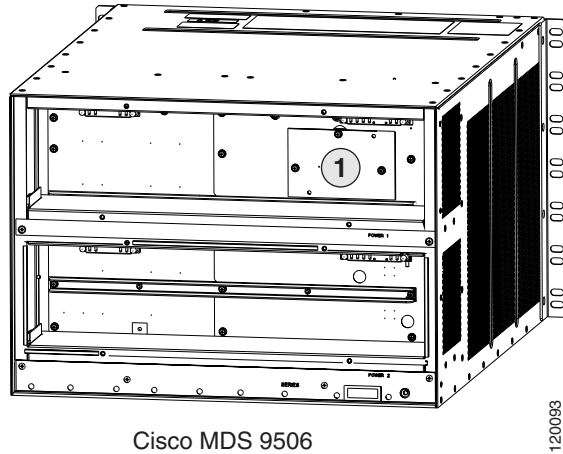
**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

These tools are required to remove and install a clock module:

- Number 1 Phillips screwdriver
- Your own ESD-prevention equipment or the disposable grounding wrist strap included with the clock module replacement kit

The clock module is located behind the top power supply in the rear of the Cisco MDS 9506 Director. [Figure 2-45](#) shows the rear view of the Cisco MDS 9506 Director with both power supplies removed.

**Figure 2-45** Clock Module Location on the Cisco MDS 9506 Director (Rear View)



<b>1</b>	Clock module
----------	--------------



**Caution**

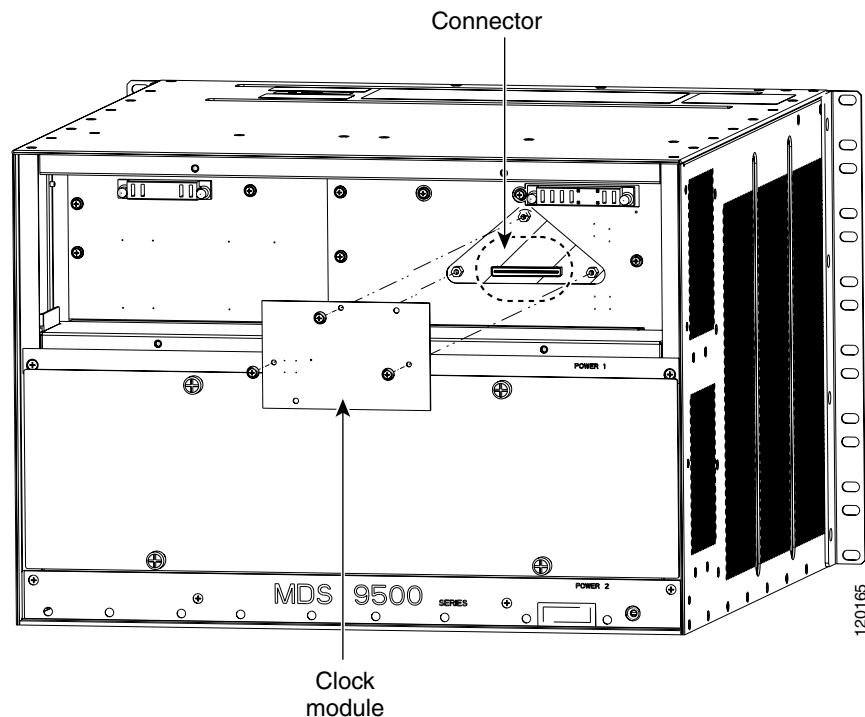
Always wear an ESD wrist strap when handling modules or coming into contact with internal components.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

To remove the clock module, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Remove power from both PEMs, accessed from the front of the chassis as follows:
- If the PEM is AC, press the power switch to off (0). Remove the power cord from the PEM.
  - If the PEM is DC, follow the instructions in the “[Removing a DC PEM](#)” section on page 2-64.
- Step 2** Loosen the four captive screws on the top power supply.
- Step 3** Grasp both power supply handles and slide the top power supply completely out of the chassis.
- Step 4** Remove the three screws that secure the clock module to the backplane (See [Figure 2-46](#)).

**Figure 2-46** Clock Module Replacement on the Cisco MDS 9506 Director (Rear View)



- Step 5** The clock module has one connector to the backplane. Gently disconnect and remove the clock module, placing it on an antistatic mat or foam.



**Note** Note the position of the clock module before you remove it from the director chassis because you must install the new clock module in the same position.

---

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## Installing a Clock Module into the Cisco MDS 9506 Director

**Caution**

Always wear an ESD wrist strap when handling modules or coming into contact with internal components.

To install the clock module, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Remove the new clock module from the antistatic bag.
- Step 2** Hold the module with the connector away from you and carefully press the module onto the backplane connector.
- Step 3** Replace the three securing screws on the clock module.
- Step 4** Grasp both power supply handles and slide the power supply into the power supply bay, ensuring that the power supply is fully seated in the bay.
- Step 5** Tighten the captive screws on the power supply to 8 in-lb.
- Step 6** Provide power to the PEMs as described in the [“Connecting the Power Supplies”](#) section on page 2-28.

**Note**

You must install the new clock module in the same position that you removed it.

**Caution**

In a system with dual power supplies, connect each power supply to a separate power source. In case of a power source failure, the second source will most likely still be available.

- Step 7** Verify power supply operation by checking that the power supply LEDs are in the following states:
- INPUT OK LED is green.
  - FAN OK LED is green.
  - OUTPUT FAIL LED is off.
-



## APPENDIX **A**

# Migrating to Generation 3 8-Gbps Fibre Channel Switching Modules

---

This appendix describes the tasks associated with readying the MDS 9500 Series to support Generation 3 8-Gbps Fibre Channel switching modules. It presents an overview of the Generation 3 8-Gbps modules, provides usage guidelines for the modules, and describes three procedures for migrating hardware and upgrading software to enable use of these modules in an MDS 9513 Director.

This appendix includes the following sections:

- [Overview, page A-1](#)
- [Usage Guidelines, page A-2](#)
- [Before You Begin Upgrading the MDS 9513 Director, page A-3](#)
- [Migration Procedures for the MDS 9513 Director, page A-3](#)
- [Migration Procedure for the MDS 9509 Director and MDS 9506 Director, page A-12](#)

## Overview

Cisco MDS NX-OS 4.1(1b) supports the following Generation 3 8-Gbps modules:

- MDS 9000 4/44-port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized Fibre Channel module (DS-X9248-48K9)
- MDS 9000 24-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel module (DS-X9224-96K9)
- MDS 9000 48-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel module (DS-X9248-96K9)

In addition, Cisco MDS NX-OS 4.1(1b) supports two fabric modules, which are also known as crossbar modules, for the MDS 9513 Director:

- MDS 9513 Fabric 2 module, DS-13SLT-FAB2
- MDS 9513 Fabric 1 module, DS-13SLT-FAB1

The MDS 9513 Director requires Cisco MDS NX-OS 4.1(1b) and the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 modules to support the MDS 9000 48-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel module and the MDS 9000 24-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel module. Two MDS 9513 Fabric 2 modules can double the active backplane bandwidth of the MDS 9513 Director to 192-Gbps full duplex per slot when used in conjunction with these two Generation 3 modules.

The MDS 9513 Director requires Cisco MDS NX-OS 4.1(1b), but does not require the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 modules to support the MDS 9000 4/44-port 8-Gbps Host-optimized Fibre Channel module.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

The MDS 9509 Director and the MDS 9506 Director also support the Generation 3 8-Gbps modules. The switches require Supervisor-2 modules and Cisco MDS NX-OS 4.1(1b) to support the Generation 3 8-Gbps modules.



**Note**

To upgrade to NX-OS Release 4.1(1b) from SAN-OS Release 3.2(3a) or earlier, first upgrade to SAN-OS Release 3.3(1x) and then upgrade to NX-OS Release 4.1(1b).

## Usage Guidelines

In preparation for using the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 module and the Generation 3 8-Gbps modules in an MDS 9513 Director, be aware of the following usage guidelines:

- Cisco SAN-OS release 3.x supports the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 module.
- Until you upgrade to Cisco NX-OS 4.1(1b) and reload the switch, a MDS 9513 Fabric 2 module functions like a MDS 9513 Fabric 1 module.
- You cannot use any Generation 3 8-Gbps module in a MDS 9513 Director, MDS 9509 Director, or MDS 9506 Director until you upgrade to NX-OS 4.1(1b).
- Supervisor-2 modules are required for the MDS 9509 Director and the MDS 9506 Director to support any Generation 3 8-Gbps module.
- You must do the following to enable the increased bandwidth capabilities of the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 modules:
  - Upgrade from Cisco SAN-OS 3.x to NX-OS release 4.1(1b).
  - Migrate the existing MDS 9513 Fabric 1 modules in the MDS 9513 chassis to MDS 9513 Fabric 2 modules.
  - Reload the switch to enable the increased bandwidth.
- If you install just one MDS 9513 Fabric 2 module, the active slot bandwidth of MDS 9513 Director is 96-Gbps full duplex.
- Once you upgrade to Cisco NX-OS 4.1(1b) and reload the switch, a downgrade to Cisco SAN-OS release 3.x will be disruptive. Following the downgrade, the Generation 3 8-Gbps modules in the switch will not power up.

[Table A-1](#) lists the types of Generation 3 modules that the MDS 9513 Director supports.

**Table A-1**      **Module Support Matrix for the MDS 9513 Director**

Generation 3 Module	Fabric Module	Software Release
MDS 9000 4/44-port 8-Gbps Host-optimized module, DS-X9248-48K9	MDS 9513 Fabric 1 module or MDS 9513 Fabric 2 module	Cisco NX-OS 4.1(1b)
MDS 9000 48-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel module, DS-X9248-96K9	MDS 9513 Fabric 2 module	Cisco NX-OS 4.1(1b)
MDS 9000 24-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel module, DS-X9224-96K9	MDS 9513 Fabric 2 module	Cisco NX-OS 4.1(1b)



*Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).*

## Before You Begin Upgrading the MDS 9513 Director

The sections that follow present three procedures for readying an MDS 9513 Director to support the Generation 3 8-Gbps modules. Before you begin one of these procedures, do the following:

1. Review the steps involved in each procedure, and then choose the one that best fits your business needs. In particular, decide which of the following you want to do:
  - Install the MDS 9000 4/44-port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized module and retain the MDS 9513 Fabric 1 module in the switch.
  - Install the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 modules and continue to run Cisco MDS SAN-OS 3.x software in preparation for use of a Generation 3 module at a later time.
  - Install the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 modules for immediate use of any Generation 3 module.

Your choice will determine which procedure you should follow.

2. Observe the following differences in the MDS 9513 Fabric 1 and MDS 9513 Fabric 2 modules:
  - The MDS 9513 Fabric 1 module, DS-13SLT-FAB1, has a light blue surface above the top-most captive screw on the front of the module.
  - The MDS 9513 Fabric 2 module, DS-13SLT-FAB2, has a light pink surface above the top-most captive screw on the front of the module.
3. Examine the slots for the fabric modules at the rear of the MDS 9513 chassis. The left slot is marked Fabric 1 and the right slot is marked Fabric 2. The slot name does not have any meaning in terms of which fabric module can be installed in it. The MDS 9513 Fabric 2 module, DS-13SLT-FAB2, can be installed in either slot, and the MDS 9513 Fabric 1 module DS-13SLT-FAB1, can be installed in either slot.

## Migration Procedures for the MDS 9513 Director

This section presents three procedures for migrating your hardware and upgrading your software in the MDS 9513 to make it ready for the Generation 8-Gbps modules. Each procedure lists the tasks involved and the benefits of the particular procedure.

### Installing the MDS 9000 4/44-Port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized Module

This procedure allows you to start using an 8-Gbps module, without replacing the MDS 9513 Fabric 1 modules in the switch. The procedure consists of the following tasks:

- Upgrade the MDS 9513 Director to Cisco NX-OS 4.1(1b).
- Install the MDS 9000 4/44-port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized module.

This procedure offers the following benefits:

- There is no service disruption. The upgrade to Cisco NX-OS 4.1(1b) is nondisruptive.
- You immediately realize the benefit of the faster 8-Gbps port speed.

To nondisruptively upgrade to Cisco NX-OS 4.1(1b), and install the MDS 9000 4/44-port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized module, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Connect a PC to the console port on the active supervisor module and log in to the switch.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

- Step 2** Verify that the MDS 9513 Director is running Cisco SAN-OS 3.x by entering the **show version** command at the command line.

This example shows the output of the **show version** command:

```
switch# show version
Cisco Storage Area Networking Operating System (SAN-OS) Software
TAC support: http://www.cisco.com/tac
Copyright (c) 2002-2006, Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
The copyrights to certain works contained herein are owned by
other third parties and are used and distributed under license.
Some parts of this software may be covered under the GNU Public
License or the GNU Lesser General Public License. A copy of
each such license is available at
http://www.gnu.org/licenses/gpl.html and
http://www.gnu.org/licenses/lgpl.html
Software
BIOS: version 1.1.0
loader: version 1.2(2)
kickstart: version 3.0(3) [gdb]
system: version 3.0(3) [gdb]

BIOS compile time: 10/24/03
kickstart image file is: bootflash:///boot-3.0.3
kickstart compile time: 9/15/2006 10:00:00 [10/02/2006 06:26:25]
system image file is: bootflash:///isan-3.0.3
system compile time: 9/15/2006 10:00:00 [10/02/2006 06:45:25]
```

- Step 3** Upgrade to Cisco NX-OS 4.1(1b). Refer to the upgrade procedure described in the *MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide*.

- Step 4** Verify that the switch is running Cisco NX-OS 4.1(1b) by entering the **show version** command.

This example shows the output of the **show version** command:

```
switch# show version
Cisco Nexus Operating System (NX-OS) Software
TAC support: http://www.cisco.com/tac
Copyright (c) 2002-2008, Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
The copyrights to certain works contained herein are owned by
other third parties and are used and distributed under license.
Some parts of this software are covered under the GNU Public
License. A copy of the license is available at
http://www.gnu.org/licenses/gpl.html.
Software
  BIOS:          version 1.0.7
  loader:        version N/A
  kickstart:     version 4.1(1b)
  system:        version 4.1(1b)
  BIOS compile time:      08/26/08
  kickstart image file is: bootflash:/bootimage
  kickstart compile time: 10/12/2020 25:00:00 [09/06/2008 01:36:07]
  system image file is:   bootflash:/isanimage
  system compile time:    8/22/2008 0:00:00 [09/06/2008 02:48:50]
Hardware
  cisco MDS 9513 (13 Slot) Chassis ("Supervisor/Fabric-2")
  Motorola, 7447A, altivec with 1032472 kB of memory.
  Processor Board ID JAE1217FOFI
Device name: sw5-qa01
  bootflash:      1023120 kB
  slot0:          511664 kB (expansion flash)
Kernel uptime is 1 day(s), 9 hour(s), 12 minute(s), 4 second(s)
Last reset at 518531 usecs after Sun Sep 7 01:29:37 2008
Reason: Reset triggered due to Switchover Request by User
```

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

```
System version: 4.1(1b)
Service:
```

- Step 5** Install the MDS 9000 4/44-port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized Fibre Channel module.
- Step 6** Refer to the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide* or *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Fabric Manager Configuration Guide* for information on how to configure the module.

## Installing MDS 9513 Fabric 2 Modules and Running Cisco SAN-OS 3.x

This procedure allows you to prepare your switch for the future installation of an MDS 48-port 8-Gbps module or an MDS 9000 24-port 8-Gbps module. The procedure consists of the following tasks:

- Replace the MDS 9513 Fabric 1 modules with MDS 9513 Fabric 2 modules.

This procedure offers the following benefits:

- There is no service disruption. The installation of the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 modules is nondisruptive, and you can continue running Cisco SAN-OS 3.x.
- You have completed the MDS 9513 hardware upgrade.
- You can schedule time for proceeding with the software upgrade and the installation of Generation 3 modules at a later time.

To nondisruptively remove a MDS 9513 Fabric 1 module from the Cisco MDS 9513 Director and replace it with a MDS 9513 Fabric 2 module, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Connect a PC to the console port on the active supervisor module and log in to the switch.
- Step 2** Enter the **show module** command to determine which supervisor and its associated fabric module are in active mode.

The supervisor module in slot 7 is associated with the fabric module in the Fabric 1 slot and the supervisor module in slot 8 is associated with the fabric module in the Fabric 2 slot.

The following example shows the output of the **show module** command, which indicates that the supervisor in slot 7 is active and the supervisor in slot 8 is in standby mode.

```
switch# show module
Mod  Ports  Module-Type                               Model                Status
---  -
7    0      Supervisor/Fabric-2                       DS-X9530-SF2-K9      ha-standby
8    0      Supervisor/Fabric-2                       DS-X9530-SF2-K9      active *
```

- Step 3** If the supervisor module in slot 7 is active, shut down the standby supervisor and fabric module by entering the **out-of-service xbar 2** command.

The following example shows how to shut down the standby supervisor and associated fabric module in slot 2.

```
switch# out-of-service xbar 2
```

- Step 4** If the supervisor module in slot 8 is active, shut down the standby supervisor and fabric module by entering the **out-of-service xbar 1** command.

The following example shows the output of the **show module** command and then shows how to shut down the standby supervisor (in slot 7) and its associated fabric module in the Fabric 1 slot.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

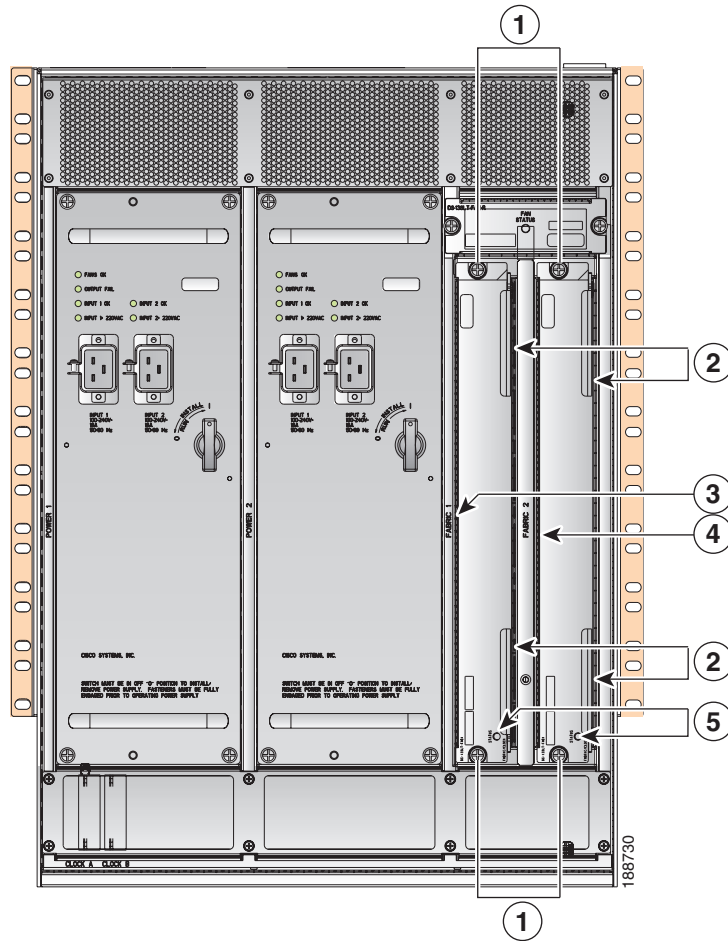
```
switch# show module
Mod  Ports  Module-Type                Model                Status
---  -
7    0       Supervisor/Fabric-2       DS-X9530-SF2-K9     ha-standby
8    0       Supervisor/Fabric-2       DS-X9530-SF2-K9     active *
```

switch# out-of-service xbar 1

- Step 5** Enter the **show module xbar** command to verify that the standby supervisor module is powered down.
- Step 6** Attach a ESD wrist strap according to the instructions in the section [“Preventing Electrostatic Discharge Damage”](#) section on page 2-19.
- Step 7** Confirm that the LED light is red, which indicates that the module is powered off, and then loosen the two captive screws on the module being removed.
- Step 8** Remove the module from the chassis as follows:
- a. Place your thumbs on the top and bottom ejector levers and simultaneously rotate the levers outward to unseat the module from the midplane connector. (See [Figure A-1](#))
  - b. Hold the front edge of the module and slide the module partially out of the slot. Do not touch the module circuitry.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure A-1 Captive Screws and Ejector Levers on the Fabric Module**



1	Captive screws	2	Ejector levers
3	Fabric slot 1 label	4	Fabric slot 2 label
5	Power LEDs		

**Step 9** Place the MDS 9513 Fabric 1 module on an antistatic surface.

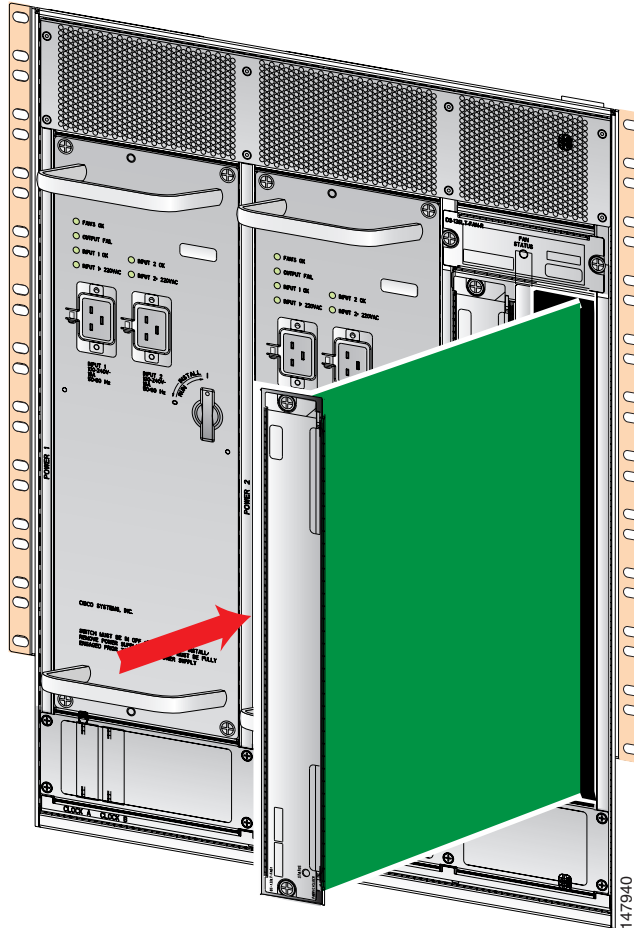
**Step 10** On the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 module to be installed, ensure that the ejector levers are completely open.

**Step 11** Position the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 module in the chassis as follows:

- a. Position the module in the empty slot. Ensure that you align the sides of the module carrier with the slot guides on each side of the slot.
- b. Slide the module carefully into the slot until the EMI gasket along the top edge of the module contacts the module in the slot above it and both ejector levers close to approximately 45 degrees with respect to the front of the module. (See [Figure A-2](#).)

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure A-2 Installing a Fabric Module**



- c. Grasp the two ejector levers using the thumb and forefinger of each hand, and press down to create a small 0.040-inch (1-mm) gap between the module's EMI gasket and the module above it.



**Caution** Do not press down too forcefully on the levers because they can bend.

- d. While pressing down, simultaneously close the top and bottom ejector levers to completely seat the module in the midplane connector. The ejector levers are completely closed when they are flush with the front of the module.



**Note** Ensure that the ejector levers are completely closed before tightening the captive screws. Failure to completely seat the module in the backplane connector can result in error messages.

- e. Tighten the two captive screws on the module until they are finger tight.

**Step 12** Verify that the LED light on the front of the module is green. The light should come on within five seconds of the module being inserted. If it does not, check to see if the module is seated correctly in the slot.

**Step 13** Enter the **system switchover** command to put the other supervisor in active mode.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

- Step 14** Move the console cable to the console port on the active supervisor.
- Step 15** Enter the **show module** command to confirm which supervisor module is active.
- Step 16** Enter the **out-of-service xbar slot** command (where *slot* refers to the external fabric module slot number) to shut down the standby supervisor
- Step 17** Remove the out-of-service fabric module and install a MDS 9513 Fabric 2 module by repeating steps 7 through 12.
- Step 18** After you have replaced both MDS 9513 Fabric 1 modules, enter the **show module xbar** command to verify that the system can detect the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 modules and that their status is ok.

This example shows the output of the **show module xbar** command:

```
switch# show module xbar
Xbar Ports  Module-Type                               Model                Status
-----
1      0      Fabric Module 2                                     DS-13SLT-FAB2       ok
2      0      Fabric Module 2                                     DS-13SLT-FAB2       ok

Xbar Sw           Hw      World-Wide-Name(s) (WWN)
-----
1      NA           2.0     --
2      NA           2.0     --

Xbar MAC-Address(es)                               Serial-Num
-----
1      NA                                           JAF1207ARRS
2      NA                                           JAE1212BPR0

* this terminal session
switch#
```

The MDS 9513 Director with the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 modules should function as it did prior to the migration procedure. Until you upgrade to Cisco NX-OS 4.1(1b) and reload the switch, the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 modules function like MDS 9513 Fabric 1 modules.

## Installing MDS 9513 Fabric 2 Modules and Installing MDS 9000 24-port or 48-port 8-Gbps Modules

This procedure allows you to install the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 modules and activate the increased backplane bandwidth of the MDS 9513 Director. The procedure consists of the following tasks:

- Upgrade to NX-OS 4.1(1b). This is a nondisruptive procedure.
- Replace the MDS 9513 Fabric 1 modules with MDS 9513 Fabric 2 modules.
- Install the MDS 9000 48-port or 24-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel modules.
- Activate the higher bandwidth capabilities of the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 modules.

This procedure offers the following benefits:

- You double the active backplane bandwidth to 192-Gbps full duplex per slot on the MDS 9513 Director once you activate the increased bandwidth capabilities of the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 modules through a reload or power cycle.
- You simplify the migration process if you choose to power down the switch and install all the hardware modules at one time.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

Activating the higher bandwidth capabilities of the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 modules can occur in one of two ways:

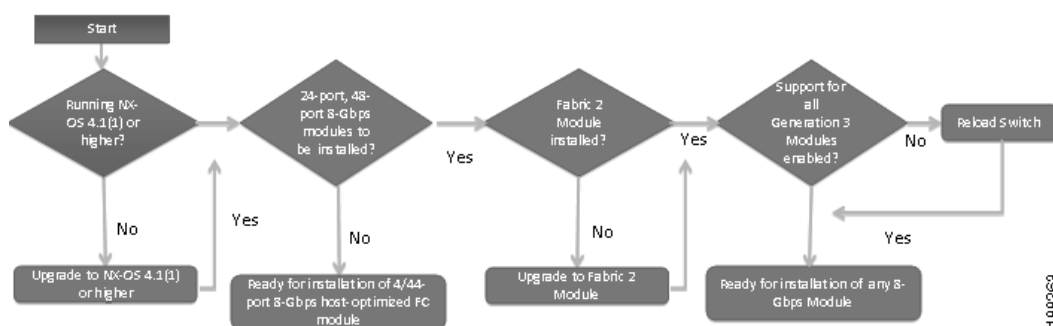
- You can enter the **reload** command after a nondisruptive installation of the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 modules.
- You can power down the switch, install the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 modules, and then power up the switch.

Both methods are disruptive. The latter method is a best practice because it requires fewer steps. Depending on which method you choose, follow the instructions in either the “[Installing the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 Modules and Activating Higher Bandwidth by Reloading the Switch](#)” section on page A-10 or in the “[Installing the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 Modules and Activating Higher Bandwidth by Powering Down the Switch](#)” section on page A-11.

## Installing the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 Modules and Activating Higher Bandwidth by Reloading the Switch

Figure A-3 shows the process flow that occurs when you reload the switch to activate the higher bandwidth capabilities of the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 modules.

**Figure A-3 Strategy 2: Migration Process Flow**



To reload the switch to activate the increased bandwidth capabilities of the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 modules, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Upgrade to Cisco NX-OS 4.1(1b). Refer to the upgrade procedure described in the *MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide*.
- Step 2** Verify that the switch is running Cisco NX-OS 4.1(1b) by entering the **show version** command.
- Step 3** Enter the **copy running-config startup-config** command to save a copy of the current switch configuration.
- Step 4** Check the type of fabric modules that are present in the chassis by entering the **show module xbar** command.
- Step 5** If there are MDS 9513 Fabric 1 modules in the chassis, replace them according to the instructions in the “[Installing MDS 9513 Fabric 2 Modules and Running Cisco SAN-OS 3.x](#)” section on page A-5.
- Step 6** Enter the **show hardware fabric-mode** command to display information about Generation 3 module support.

The following example shows the output of the **show hardware fabric-mode** command, which indicates that support for the MDS 9000 48-port and 24-port 8-Gbps Generation 3 modules has not been enabled for the switch.



**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

```
switch# show hardware fabric-mode
Fabric mode supports only one configuration of Gen3 Linecards - 4/44 Host-Optimized 8G FC
Linecard.
switch#
Failure message for Gen3 cards for fabric2 in the above fabric-mode:switch# 2008 Jul 24
10:27:58 switch %XBAR-2-INCOMPATIBLE_CONFIG: Fabric mode does not support linecard in slot
4 . Please reload the switch to support 24-port and 48-port 8G FC linecards.
```

- Step 7** Enter the **reload** command to enable the increased bandwidth capabilities of the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 modules.
- Step 8** When the switch comes back up, install the MDS 9000 48-port or 24-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel modules.
- Step 9** Enter the **show hardware fabric-mode** command to verify that increased bandwidth capabilities are activated.

The following example shows the output of the **show hardware fabric-mode** command, and indicates that support for the MDS 9000 48-port and 24-port 8-Gbps Generation 3 modules has been activated.

```
switch# show hardware fabric-mode
Fabric mode supports Gen3 and above linecards.
switch#
```

- Step 10** Refer to the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide* or *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Fabric Manager Configuration Guide* for information on how to configure the MDS 9000 48-port or 24-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel modules.

---

## Installing the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 Modules and Activating Higher Bandwidth by Powering Down the Switch

To power down the switch to activate the increased bandwidth capabilities of the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 modules, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Upgrade to Cisco NX-OS 4.1(1b). Refer to the upgrade procedure described in the *MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide*.
- Step 2** Verify that the switch is running Cisco NX-OS 4.1(1b) by entering the **show version** command.
- Step 3** Enter the **copy running-config startup-config** command to save a copy of the current switch configuration.
- Step 4** Power down the switch by turning the power supply switch at the rear of the power supply counterclockwise to the off position on both power supplies.
- Step 5** Remove the MDS 9513 Fabric 1 modules and replace them with MDS 9513 Fabric 2 modules. See steps 5 through 10 in the [“Installing MDS 9513 Fabric 2 Modules and Running Cisco SAN-OS 3.x” section on page A-5](#).
- Step 6** Install the MDS 9000 48-port or 24-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel modules.
- Step 7** Power up the switch by turning the power supply switch at the rear of the power supply clockwise to the on position on both power supplies.
- Step 8** Enter the **show hardware fabric-mode** command to verify that increased bandwidth capabilities are activated.

The following example shows the output of the **show hardware fabric-mode** command, and indicates that support for the MDS 9000 48-port and 24-port 8-Gbps Generation 3 modules has been activated.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

```
switch# show hardware fabric-mode
Fabric mode supports Gen3 and above linecards.
switch#
```

- Step 9** Refer to the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide* or *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Fabric Manager Configuration Guide* for information on how to configure the MDS 9000 48-port or 24-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel modules.

## Migration Procedure for the MDS 9509 Director and MDS 9506 Director



### Note

Do not upgrade to NX-OS 4.1(1b) if a Supervisor-1 module is installed.

To use any Generation 3 8-Gbps module in an MDS 9509 Director or MDS 9506 Director, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Log in to the switch.
- Step 2** Verify that the switch is running Cisco NX-OS 4.1(1b) by entering the **show version** command. If the switch has NX-OS 4.x or higher installed, then Supervisor-2 module is already installed on the switch. Skip to step 7 to install any Generation 3 8-Gbps module.
- Step 3** Enter the **show module** command to determine which supervisor module is in active mode and which is in standby module. Supervisor modules are installed in slot 5 and slot 6 on the MDS 9509 Director and MDS 9506 Director.

The following example shows the output of the **show module** command:

```
switch# show module
Mod  Ports  Module-Type                               Model                               Status
---  ---
4    22     4x1GE IPS, 18x1/2/4Gbps FC Modul DS-X9304-18K9                       ok
5     0      Supervisor/Fabric-1                 DS-X9530-SF1-K9                     active *
6     0      Supervisor/Fabric-1                 DS-X9530-SF1-K9                     ha-standby

Mod  Sw              Hw      World-Wide-Name(s) (WWN)
---  ---
4    4.1(0.182)     0.304  20:c1:00:05:30:00:a7:9e to 20:d2:00:05:30:00:a7:9e
5    4.1(0.182)     4.0    --
6    4.1(0.182)     0.0    --

Mod  MAC-Address(es)                               Serial-Num
---  ---
4    00-19-56-be-65-d0 to 00-19-56-be-65-d8  JAB1107027K
5    00-0c-30-0d-2b-b8 to 00-0c-30-0d-2b-bc  JAB074004VE
6    00-05-30-00-52-f2 to 00-05-30-00-52-f6  NA
```

- Step 4** If the switch has Supervisor-1 modules installed, remove the modules according to the instructions in the [“Removing Supervisor Modules”](#) section on page 2-39. If the switch has Supervisor-2 modules installed, then skip to Step 6.

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

- Step 5** Install Supervisor-2 modules according to the instructions in the “[Installing Supervisor Modules](#)” section on page 2-40. Refer to the Migrating from Supervisor-1 Modules to Supervisor-2 Modules procedure described in the *MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide*.
- Step 6** Upgrade to Cisco NX-OS 4.1(1b). Refer to the upgrade procedure described in the *MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide*.
- Step 7** Install any Generation 3 8-Gbps module.
- Step 8** Refer to the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide* or *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Fabric Manager Configuration Guide* for information on how to configure a Generation 3 8-Gbps module.
-

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***



## CHAPTER **B**

# Connecting the Cisco MDS 9500 Series

---

The Cisco MDS 9500 Series provides the following types of ports:

- Console port (supervisor modules) —An RS-232 port that you can use to create a local management connection.
- COM1 port (supervisor modules)—An RS-232 port that you can use to connect to an external serial communication device such as a modem.
- MGMT 10/100/1000 Ethernet port (Supervisor-2 module)—An Ethernet port that you can use to access and manage the switch by IP address, such as through Fabric Manager.
- MGMT 10/100 Ethernet port (Supervisor-1 module)—An Ethernet port that you can use to access and manage the switch by IP address, such as through Fabric Manager.
- Fibre Channel ports (switching modules)—Fibre Channel ports that you can use to connect to the SAN or for in-band management.
- Gigabit Ethernet ports (IP services modules)—Gigabit Ethernet ports that you can use for iSCSI and/or FCIP.
- Two USB ports (Supervisor-2 module)—A simple interface that allows you to connect to different devices supported by Cisco MDS SAN-OS and NX-OS. On the double-decker connector, USB port 1 is on the upper position and port 2 is on the lower position.



**Note**

---

The USB ports are not functional on Cisco MDS SAN-OS Release 3.0(1) or earlier.

---

- CPU subsystem based on Motorola PowerPC 7447

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Preparing for Network Connections, page B-2](#)
- [Connecting to the Console Port, page B-2](#)
- [Connecting to the COM1 Port, page B-4](#)
- [Connecting to the MGMT 10/100/1000 Ethernet Port, page B-6](#)
- [Connecting to the MGMT 10/100 Ethernet Port, page B-7](#)
- [Connecting to a Fibre Channel Port, page B-9](#)

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

**Caution**

---

When running power and data cables in overhead or subfloor cable trays, we strongly recommend that power cables and other potential noise sources be located as far away as is practical from network cabling that terminates on Cisco equipment. In situations where long parallel cable runs cannot be separated by at least 3.3 ft (1 m), we recommend shielding any potential noise sources by housing them in a grounded metallic conduit.

---

**Note**

---

The Cisco MDS 9506 Director and Cisco MDS 9509 Director use the Supervisor-1 module and require the same port connecting procedures.

---

## Preparing for Network Connections

When preparing your site for network connections to the Cisco MDS 9500 Series, consider the following for each type of interface, and gather all the required equipment before connecting the ports:

- Cabling required for each interface type
- Distance limitations for each signal type
- Additional interface equipment required

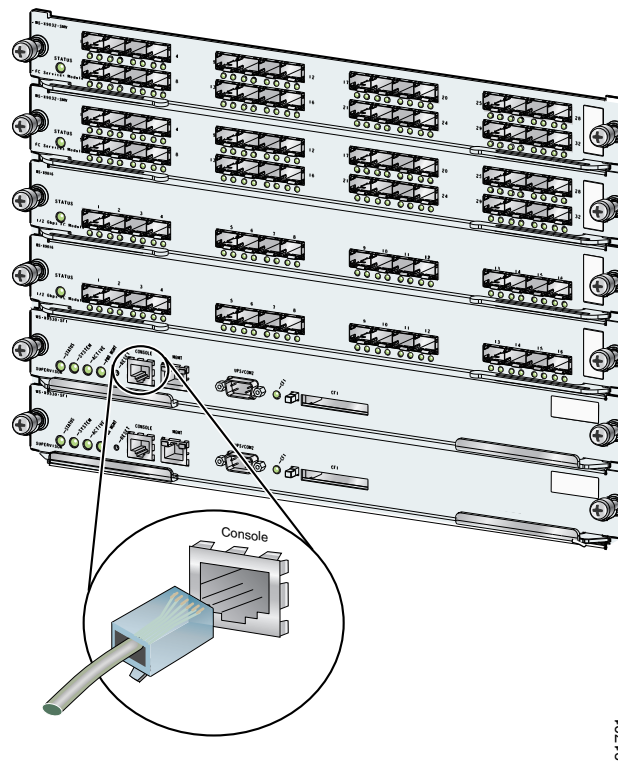
## Connecting to the Console Port

The console port, labeled “Console,” is an RS-232 port with an RJ-45 interface (see [Figure B-1](#)). It is an asynchronous (async) serial port; any device connected to this port must be capable of asynchronous transmission.

We recommend using this port to create a local management connection to set the IP address and other initial configuration settings before connecting the switch to the network for the first time.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure B-1** Connecting to the Console Port on the Supervisor Module for the Cisco MDS 9500 Series



91701

**Note**

Connecting the console port to a modem is supported for switches running Cisco MDS SAN-OS Release 1.2(2a) or later or NX-OS Release 4.1(1b).

**Caution**

The console port can be used to connect to a modem, however, we recommend using the COM1 port for this purpose. If you decide to connect the console port to a modem, do not connect it while the switch is booting; connect either before powering the switch on or after the switch has completed the boot process.

You can use the console port to perform the following functions:

- Configure the Cisco MDS 9500 from the CLI.
- Monitor network statistics and errors.
- Configure SNMP agent parameters.
- Download software updates.

**Note**

To connect the console port to a computer terminal, the computer must support VT100 terminal emulation. The terminal emulation software—frequently an application such as HyperTerminal or Procomm Plus—makes communication between the switch and computer possible during setup and configuration.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

To connect the console port to a computer terminal, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Configure the terminal emulator program to match the following default port characteristics: 9600 baud, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, no parity.
  - Step 2** Connect the supplied RJ-45 to DB-9 female adapter or RJ-45 to DP-25 female adapter (depending on your computer) to the computer serial port. We recommend using the adapter and cable provided with the switch.
  - Step 3** Connect the console cable (a rollover RJ-45 to RJ-45 cable) to the console port and to the RJ-45 to DB-9 adapter or the RJ-45 to DP-25 adapter (depending on your computer) at the computer serial port.



---

**Note** For configuration instructions, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide* or the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Fabric Manager Configuration Guide*.

---

## Connecting to the COM1 Port



---

**Note** The COM1 port is not supported for connection to a console.

---

The COM1 port (labeled “COM1”) is an RS-232 port with a DB-9 interface (see [Figure B-2](#)). You can use it to connect to an external serial communication device such as a modem. For information about how to turn off hardware flow control, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide*.



---

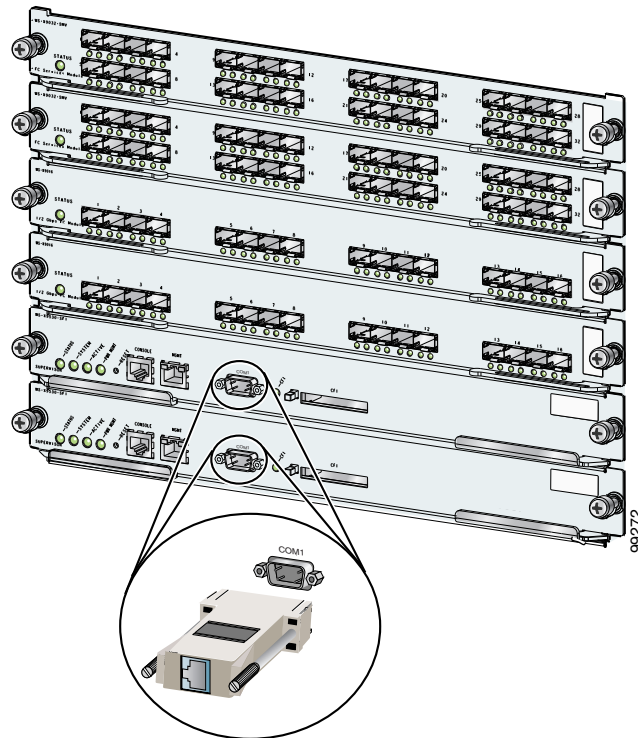
**Note** Switches running Cisco MDS SAN-OS Release 1.2(1a) or later NX-OS Release 4.1(1b) support the connection of a COM1 port to a modem.

---



**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure B-2** Connecting to the COM1 Port on the Supervisor Module for the Cisco MDS 9500 Series



To connect the COM1 port to a modem, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Connect the modem to the COM1 port using the adapters and cables provided with the accessory kit, as follows:
- a. Connect the DB-9 serial adapter to the COM1 port.
  - b. Connect the RJ-45 to DB-25 modem adapter to the modem.
  - c. Connect the adapters using the RJ-45 to RJ-45 rollover cable (or equivalent crossover cable).

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Step 2** If the default settings for the COM1 are modified, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide* containing information regarding verifying and resetting the default settings.

The default COM1 settings are as follows:

```
line Aux:
Speed: 9600 bauds
Databits: 8 bits per byte
Stopbits: 1 bit(s)
Parity: none
Modem In: Enable
Modem Init-String -
default: ATE0Q1&D2&C1S0=1\015
Statistics: tx:17 rx:0 Register Bits:RTS|DTR
```

## Connecting to the MGMT 10/100/1000 Ethernet Port

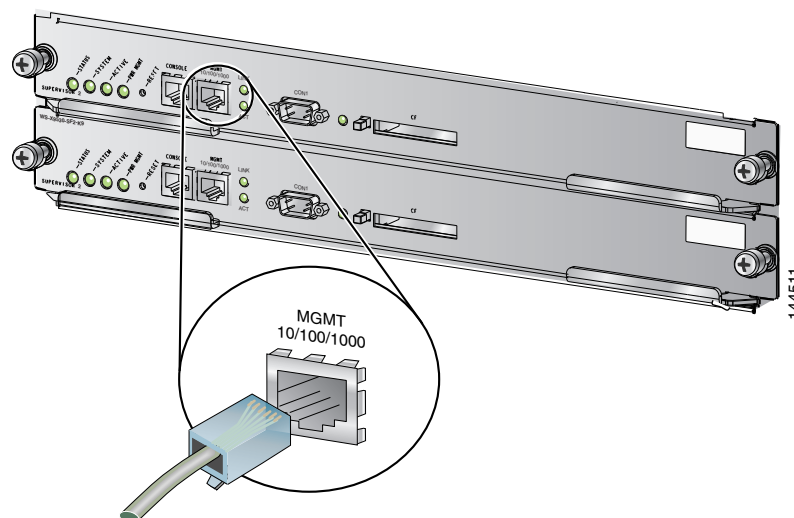


### Caution

To prevent an IP address conflict, do not connect the MGMT 10/100/1000 Ethernet port to the network until the initial configuration is complete. For more information, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide*.

The Supervisor-2 module supports an autosensing MGMT 10/100/1000 Ethernet port (labeled “MGMT 10/100/1000”) and has an RJ-45 interface. (See [Figure B-3](#).) You can use this port to access and manage the switch by IP address, such as through Cisco Fabric Manager.

**Figure B-3** Connecting to the MGMT 10/100/1000 Ethernet Port on the Supervisor-2 Module for the Cisco MDS 9500 Series



***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

To connect the MGMT 10/100/1000 Ethernet port to an external hub, switch, or router, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Connect the appropriate modular cable to the MGMT 10/100/1000 Ethernet port:
- Use a modular, RJ-45, straight-through UTP cable to connect the MGMT 10/100/1000 Ethernet port to an Ethernet switch port or hub.
  - Use a cross-over cable to connect to a router interface.
- Step 2** Connect the other end of the cable to the device.
- 

**Note**

For high availability, connect the MGMT 10/100/1000 Ethernet port on the active Supervisor-2 module and on the standby Supervisor-2 module to the same network or VLAN. The active supervisor module owns the IP address used by both of these Ethernet connections. On a switchover, the newly activated supervisor module takes over this IP address. This process requires an Ethernet connection to the newly activated supervisor module.

---

## Connecting to the MGMT 10/100 Ethernet Port

**Caution**

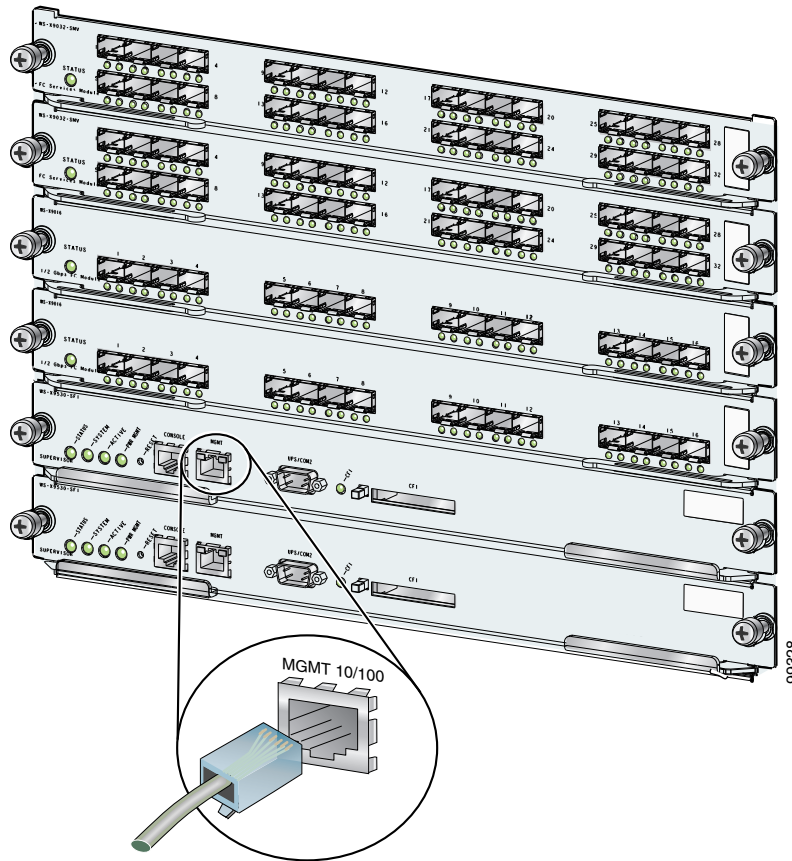
To prevent an IP address conflict, do not connect the MGMT 10/100 Ethernet port to the network until the initial configuration is complete. For more information, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide*.

---

The Supervisor-1 module supports an autosensing MGMT 10/100 Ethernet port (labeled “MGMT 10/100”) and has an RJ-45 interface. (See [Figure B-4](#).) You can use this port to access and manage the switch by IP address, such as through Cisco Fabric Manager.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure B-4** Connecting to the MGMT 10/100 Ethernet Port on the Supervisor-1 Module for the Cisco MDS 9500 Series



To connect the MGMT 10/100 Ethernet port to an external hub, switch, or router, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Connect the appropriate modular cable to the MGMT 10/100 Ethernet port:
- Use a modular, RJ-45, straight-through UTP cable to connect the MGMT 10/100 Ethernet port to an Ethernet switch port or hub.
  - Use a cross-over cable to connect to a router interface.
- Step 2** Connect the other end of the cable to the device.
- 



**Note**

For high availability, connect the MGMT 10/100 Ethernet port on the active Supervisor-1 module and on the standby Supervisor-1 module to the same network or VLAN. The active supervisor module owns the IP address used by both of these Ethernet connections. On a switchover, the newly activated supervisor module takes over this IP address. This process requires an Ethernet connection to the newly activated supervisor module.

---

[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## Connecting to a Fibre Channel Port

The Fibre Channel ports on the switching modules are compatible with LC-type fiber-optic SFP transceivers and cables. You can use these ports to connect to the SAN or for in-band management. For information about configuring the switch for in-band management, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide*.

The Cisco MDS 9000 Family supports both Fibre Channel and Gigabit Ethernet protocols for SFP transceivers. Each transceiver must match the transceiver on the other end of the cable, and the cable must not exceed the stipulated cable length for reliable communication. For information on how to get the list of supported SFP transceivers for your software release, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Release Notes for Cisco MDS SAN-OS*.



---

**Class 1 laser product.** Statement 1008

---



---

**Invisible laser radiation may be emitted from disconnected fibers or connectors. Do not stare into beams or view directly with optical instruments.** Statement 1051

---



---

Wear an ESD wrist strap connected to the chassis when handling transceivers. Keep optical connectors covered when not in use, and do not touch connector ends. The fiber-optic connectors must be free of dust, oil, and other contaminants.

---

This section provides the following topics:

- [Removing and Installing X2 Transceivers, page B-9](#)
- [Removing and Installing SFP Transceivers, page B-12](#)
- [Removing and Installing Cables into SFP Transceivers, page B-14](#)
- [Maintaining SFP Transceivers and Fiber-Optic Cables, page B-16](#)

## Removing and Installing X2 Transceivers



---

Excessively removing and installing X2 transceivers can shorten its useful life. Do not remove and insert X2 transceivers more often than is absolutely necessary. We recommend disconnecting cables before installing or removing SFP transceivers to prevent damage to the cable or transceiver.

---



---

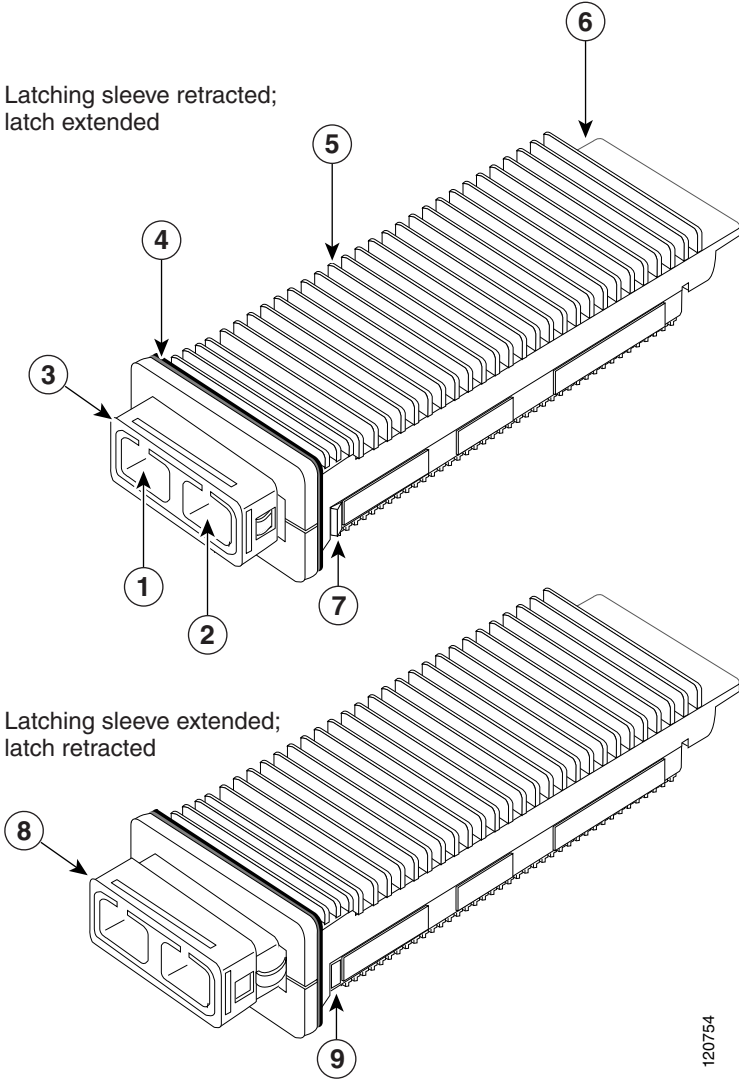
Use only Cisco X2 transceivers listed in [Table D-19 on page D-20](#) on the Cisco MDS 9200 Series. Each X2 transceiver is encoded with model information that enables the switch to verify that the X2 transceiver meets the requirements for the switch. For instructions specific to the transceiver type, see the [“X2 Transceiver Specifications” section on page D-19](#).

---

Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).

The Cisco MDS 9000 Family supports X2 transceivers with SC connectors. (See Figure B-5.)

Figure B-5 Cisco MDS 9000 Family X2 Transceivers



1	Transmit optical bore	6	Module connector
2	Receive optical bore	7	Latch (extended)
3	Latching sleeve (retracted)	8	Latching sleeve (extended)
4	EMI gasket	9	Latch (retracted)
5	Transceiver heat sink		

120754

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## Removing an X2 Transceiver

To remove an X2 transceiver, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Attach an ESD-preventive wrist strap and follow its instructions for use.
- Step 2** If a cable is installed in the transceiver:
- Record the cable and port connections for later reference.
  - Press the release latch on the cable, grasp the connector near the connection point, and gently pull the connector from the transceiver.
  - Insert a dust plug into the cable end of the transceiver.



---

**Caution** If the transceiver does not remove easily in the next step, push the transceiver all the way back in and then ensure that the latch is in the correct position before continuing.

---

- Step 3** Remove the transceiver from the port.
- Step 4** Insert a dust cover into the port end of the transceiver and place the transceiver on an antistatic mat or into a static-shielding bag if you plan to return it to the factory.
- 

## Installing an X2 Transceiver

To install an X2 transceiver, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Attach an ESD-preventive wrist strap and follow its instructions for use.



---

**Caution** If the transceiver does not install easily, ensure that it is correctly oriented before continuing.

---

- Step 2** Remove the dust cover from the port end of the transceiver.
- Step 3** Insert the transceiver into the port. Ensure that the transceiver is fully seated.



---

**Note** If you cannot install the cable into the transceiver, insert or leave the dust plug in the cable end of the transceiver.

---

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

## Removing and Installing SFP Transceivers

**Caution**

Removing and installing an SFP transceiver can shorten its useful life. Do not remove and insert SFP transceivers more often than is absolutely necessary. We recommend disconnecting cables before installing or removing SFP transceivers to prevent damage to the cable or transceiver.

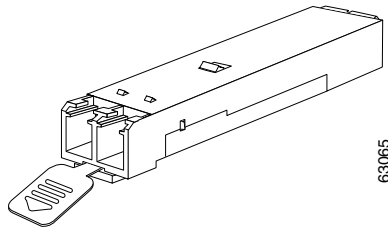
**Note**

Use only Cisco SFP transceivers on the Cisco MDS 9200 Series. Each Cisco SFP transceiver is encoded with model information that enables the switch to verify that the SFP transceiver meets the requirements for the switch. For instructions specific to the transceiver type, see the “[SFP and SFP+ Transceiver Specifications](#)” section on page D-22.

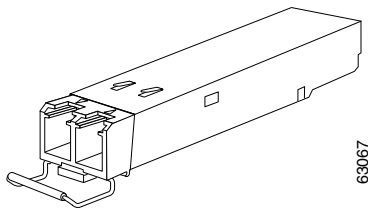
The Cisco MDS 9000 Family supports SFP transceivers with the following two types of latching devices:

- Mylar tab latch ([Figure B-6](#))
- Bale-clasp latch ([Figure B-7](#))

**Figure B-6** SFP Transceiver with Mylar Tab Latch



**Figure B-7** SFP Transceiver with Bale-Clasp Latch



### Removing an SFP Transceiver

To remove an SFP transceiver, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Attach an ESD-preventive wrist strap and follow its instructions for use.
- Step 2** If a cable is installed in the transceiver:
  - a. Record the cable and port connections for later reference.
  - b. Press the release latch on the cable, grasp the connector near the connection point, and gently pull the connector from the transceiver.



**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

- c. Insert a dust plug into the cable end of the transceiver.



**Caution**

If the transceiver does not remove easily in the next step, push the transceiver all the way back in and then ensure that the latch is in the correct position before continuing.

**Step 3** Remove the transceiver from the port:

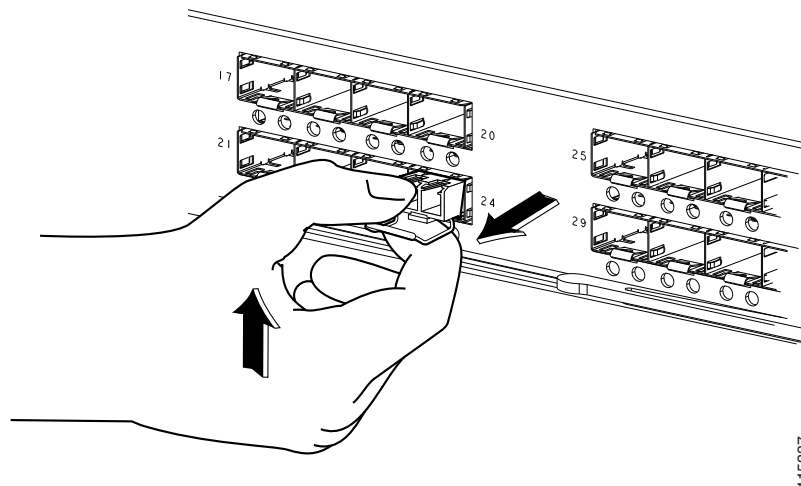
- If the transceiver has a Mylar tab latch, gently pull the tab straight out (do not twist), and then pull the transceiver out of the port.
- If the transceiver has a bale clasp latch, open the clasp by pressing it downwards, and then pull the transceiver out of the port.



**Note**

If you have difficulty removing a bale clasp SFP transceiver, you should reseal the SFP by returning the bale clasp in the up position. Then press the SFP inward and upward into the cage. Next, lower the bale clasp and pull the SFP straight out with a slight upward lifting force (see [Figure B-8](#)). Be careful not to damage the port cage during this process.

**Figure B-8** *Alternate Removal Method for Bale Clasp SFP Transceivers*



- Step 4** Insert a dust cover into the port end of the transceiver and place the transceiver on an antistatic mat or into a static shielding bag if you plan to return it to the factory.

- Step 5** If another transceiver is not being installed, protect the optical cage by inserting a clean cover.

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## Installing an SFP Transceiver

To install an SFP transceiver, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Attach an ESD-preventive wrist strap and follow its instructions for use.
- Step 2** Remove the dust cover from the port cage.
- Step 3** Remove the dust cover from the port end of the transceiver.
- Step 4** Insert the transceiver into the port:
- If the transceiver has a Mylar tab, orient the transceiver with the tab on the bottom, and then gently insert the transceiver into the port until it clicks into place.
  - If the transceiver has a bale clasp, orient the transceiver with the clasp on the bottom, close the clasp by pushing it up over the transceiver, and then gently insert the transceiver into the port until it clicks into place.



**Caution** If the transceiver does not install easily, ensure that it is correctly oriented and the tab or clasp are in the correct position before continuing.



**Note** If you cannot install the cable into the transceiver, insert or leave the dust plug in the cable end of the transceiver.

---

## Removing and Installing Cables into SFP Transceivers



**Caution** To prevent damage to the fiber-optic cables, do not place more tension on them than the rated limit and do not bend to a radius of less than 1 inch if there is no tension in the cable, or 2 inches if there is tension in the cable.

---

### Removing a Cable from an SFP Transceiver



**Caution** When pulling a cable from a transceiver, grip the body of the connector. Do not pull on the jacket sleeve, because this can compromise the fiber-optic termination in the connector.



**Caution** If the cable does not remove easily, ensure that any latch present on the cable has been released before continuing.

To remove the cable, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Attach an ESD-preventive wrist strap and follow its instructions for use.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

- Step 2** Press the release latch on the cable, grasp the connector near the connection point, and gently pull the connector from the transceiver.
- Step 3** Insert a dust plug into the cable end of the transceiver.
- Step 4** Insert a dust plug onto the end of the cable.

## Installing a Cable into an SFP Transceiver



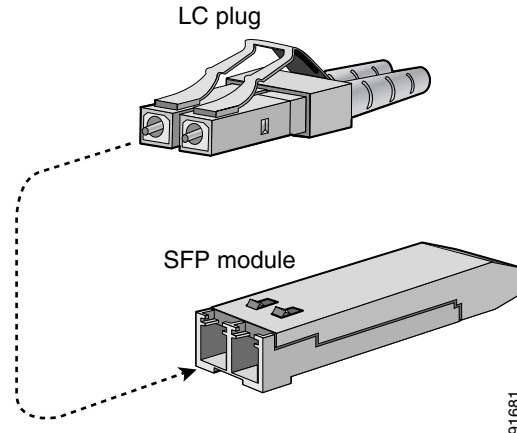
### Caution

To prevent possible damage to the cable or transceiver, install the transceiver in the port before installing the cable in the transceiver.

To install a cable into a transceiver, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Attach an ESD-preventive wrist strap and follow its instructions for use.
- Step 2** Remove the dust cover from the connector on the cable.
- Step 3** Remove the dust cover from the cable end of the transceiver.
- Step 4** Align the cable connector with the transceiver and insert the connector into the transceiver until it clicks into place (see [Figure B-9](#)).

**Figure B-9** Connecting the LC-Type Cable to a Fibre Channel Port



### Caution

If the cable does not install easily, ensure that it is correctly oriented before continuing.

For instructions on verifying connectivity, see the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide* or the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Fabric Manager Configuration Guide*.

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## Maintaining SFP Transceivers and Fiber-Optic Cables

SFP transceivers and fiber-optic cables must be kept clean and dust-free to maintain high signal accuracy and prevent damage to the connectors. Attenuation (Loss Of Light) is increased by contamination and should be below 0.35 dB.

Consider the following maintenance guidelines:

- SFP transceivers are static sensitive. To prevent ESD damage, wear an ESD-preventive wrist strap that is connected to the chassis.
- Do not remove and insert a transceiver more often than is necessary. Repeated removals and insertions can shorten its useful life.
- Keep all optical connections covered when not in use. If they become dusty, clean before using to prevent dust from scratching the fiber-optic cable ends.
- Do not touch ends of connectors to prevent fingerprints and other contamination.
- Clean regularly; the required frequency of cleaning depends upon the environment. In addition, clean connectors if they are exposed to dust or accidentally touched. Both wet and dry cleaning techniques can be effective; refer to your site's fiber-optic connection cleaning procedure.
- Inspect routinely for dust and damage. If damage is suspected, clean and then inspect fiber ends under a microscope to determine if damage has occurred.



## Cabinet and Rack Installation

---

This appendix provides information on the cabinet and rack installation and includes the following sections:

- [Cabinet and Rack Requirements, page C-1](#)
- [Cisco MDS 9000 Family Telco and EIA Shelf Bracket, page C-6](#)
- [Cisco MDS 9500 Shelf Bracket, page C-13](#)

## Cabinet and Rack Requirements

This section provides the Cisco MDS 9000 Family requirements for the following types of cabinets and racks, assuming an external ambient air temperature range of 32 to 104°F (0 to 40°C):

- Standard perforated cabinets
- Solid-walled cabinets with a roof fan tray (bottom to top cooling)
- Standard open racks
- Two-post telco racks



**Note**

---

If you are selecting an enclosed cabinet, We recommend one of the thermally validated types: standard perforated or solid-walled with a fan tray.

---

## General Requirements for Cabinets and Racks

The cabinet or rack must be one of the following types:

- Standard 19-inch four-post EIA cabinet or rack, with mounting rails that conform to English universal hole spacing per section 1 of ANSI/EIA-310-D-1992. See the [“Requirements Specific to Perforated Cabinets”](#) section on page C-3 and the [“Requirements Specific to Solid-Walled Cabinets”](#) section on page C-4.
- Standard two-post telco rack, with mounting rails that conform to English universal hole spacing per section 1 of ANSI/EIA-310-D-1992. See the [“Requirements Specific to Two-Post Telco Racks”](#) section on page C-6.

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## Cabinet and Rack Requirements for the Cisco MDS 9513 Chassis

The cabinet or rack must also meet the following requirements for the Cisco MDS 9513 chassis:

- The minimum vertical rack space per chassis:
  - Cisco MDS 9513 chassis: 24.5 inches (62.2 cm) or 14 RU, height with required rack mount support is 15 RU.
- The distance between the rack-mounting rails for four-post EIA racks must be at least 26.56 inches (67.46 cm). For more information, see [“Installing the Cisco MDS 9513 Director in a Rack” section on page 2-7](#).
- The minimum spacing for four-post EIA cabinets (perforated or solid-walled):
  - To ensure the minimum bend radius for fiber-optic cables, the front mounting rails of the cabinet should be offset from the front door by a minimum of 3 inches (7.6 cm), and a minimum of 5 inches (12.7 cm) if cable management brackets are installed on the front of the chassis.
  - A minimum of 4.0 inches (10.16 cm) of clear space between the side edge of the chassis and the side wall of the cabinet. No sizeable flow obstructions should be immediately in the way of the chassis air intake or exhaust vents.

**Note**

---

Optional jumper power cords are available for use in a cabinet. See the [“Jumper Power Cord” section on page E-11](#).

---

## Cabinet and Rack Requirements for the Cisco MDS 9509 and Cisco MDS 9506 Chassis

The cabinet or rack must also meet the following requirements:

- The minimum vertical rack space per chassis:
  - Cisco MDS 9509 chassis: 24.5 inches (62.2 cm) or 14 RU
  - Cisco MDS 9506 chassis: 12.25 inches (31.1 cm) or 7 RU (rack unit)
- The width between the rack-mounting rails must be at least 17.75 inches (45.1 cm). For four-post EIA racks, this is the distance between the two front rails and rear rails.
- The minimum spacing for four-post EIA cabinets (perforated or solid-walled):
  - To ensure the minimum bend radius for fiber-optic cables, the front mounting rails of the cabinet should be offset from the front door by a minimum of 3 inches (7.6 cm), and a minimum of 5 inches (12.7 cm) if cable management brackets are installed on the front of the chassis.
  - A minimum of 2.5 inches (6.4 cm) of clear space between the side edge of the chassis and the side wall of the cabinet. No sizeable flow obstructions should be immediately in the way of the chassis air intake or exhaust vents.

**Note**

---

Optional jumper power cords are available for use in a cabinet. See the [“Jumper Power Cord” section on page E-11](#).

---

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## Requirements Specific to Perforated Cabinets

A perforated cabinet is defined here as a cabinet with perforated front and rear doors and solid side walls. In addition to the requirements listed in the “[General Requirements for Cabinets and Racks](#)” section on [page C-1](#), perforated cabinets must meet the requirements listed under [Perforated Cabinet Requirements for the Cisco MDS 9513 Chassis](#).

### Perforated Cabinet Requirements for the Cisco MDS 9513 Chassis

The perforated cabinet requirements for the Cisco MDS 9513 chassis are as follows:

- The front and rear doors must have at least a 60 percent open area (per square inch) perforation pattern, with at least 80 percent perforated.
- Cisco recommends that the roof should be solid.
- Cisco recommends an open cabinet floor to enhance cooling.

A perforated cabinet that conforms to these requirements is available from Panduit Corporation:

#### **Panduit Corporation**

17301 South Ridgeland Avenue

Tinley Park, IL 60477

Contact: (708) 532-1800

Cabinet P/N: CN4-2

Cabinet description: Net-Access cabinet, 31.5 in. W X 40 in. D X 84 in. H (800 mm x 1017 mm x 2134 mm), 45 RU cable management on front and rear of front posts

A new cabinet that conforms to these requirements is available from Chatsworth Products:

#### **Chatsworth Products, Inc.**

31425 Agoura Road

Westlake Village, CA 91361

Customer Service and Technical Support phone number 800 834-4969

Cabinet: P/N: NF3K-113C-C42

Cabinet description: The N-Series TeraFrame Network Cabinet, 31.4 in. W X 40.4 in. D X 83.4 in. H (798 mm x 1025 mm x 2118 mm), 45 RU

For more information see <http://www.chatsworth.com/ciscoteraframe>

### Perforated Cabinet Requirements for the Cisco MDS 9509 and the Cisco MDS 9506 Chassis

The perforated cabinet requirements for the Cisco MDS 9506 and MDS 9509 chassis are as follows:

- The front and rear doors must have at least a 60 percent open area perforation pattern, with at least 15 square inches of open area per rack unit of door height.
- Cisco recommends that the roof should be perforated with at least a 20 percent open area.
- Cisco recommends an open or perforated cabinet floor to enhance cooling.

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

A perforated cabinet that conforms to these requirements is available from Rittal Corporation:

**Rittal Corporation**

One Rittal Place

Springfield, OH 45504

Contact: (800) 477-4220

Cabinet P/N: Rittal 9969427

Cabinet description: PS-DK/OEM Cabinet Assembly, 78.7 in. (1998 mm) x 23.6 in. (600 mm) x 39.4 in. (1000 mm) (H x W x D) (42RU)

A new cabinet that conforms to these requirements is available from Panduit Corporation:

**Panduit Corporation**

17301 South Ridgeland Avenue

Tinley Park, IL 60477

Customer Service and Technical Support phone number: 800 777-3300.

Cabinet P/N: CN4-1

Cabinet description: Net-Access cabinet, 31.5 in. W X 40 in. D X 84 in. H (800 mm x 1017 mm x 2134 mm), 45 RU cable management on front and rear of front posts

For more information see <http://www.panduit.com>.

A new cabinet that conforms to these requirements is available from Chatsworth Products:

**Chatsworth Products, Inc.**

31425 Agoura Road

Westlake Village, CA 91361

Customer Service and Technical Support phone number 800 834-4969

Cabinet: P/N: NF2K-113C-C42

Cabinet description: The N-Series TeraFrame Network Cabinet, 31.4 in. W X 40.4 in. D X 83.4 in. H (798 mm x 1025 mm x 2118 mm), 45 RU

For more information see: <http://www.chatsworth.com/ciscoteraframe>



**Note**

---

Do not use the perforated cabinet from Rittal Corporation with the Cisco MDS 9513 Director.

---

## Requirements Specific to Solid-Walled Cabinets

A solid-walled cabinet is defined here as a cabinet with solid (nonperforated) front and rear doors and solid side walls. In addition to the requirements listed in the “[General Requirements for Cabinets and Racks](#)” section on page C-1, solid-walled cabinets must meet the following requirements:

### Solid-Walled Cabinet Requirements for the Cisco MDS 9513 Chassis

The solid-walled cabinet requirements for the Cisco MDS 9513 chassis are as follows:

- Perforated front and back doors and solid or open side panels.



***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

- A recommended cabinet depth of 36 to 42 inches (91.4 to 106.7 cm) to allow the doors to close and adequate airflow.
- Bottom of cabinet should be open to enhance airflow.
- The lowest piece of equipment should be installed a minimum of 1.75 inches (4.4 cm) above the floor openings to prevent blocking the floor intake.

## Solid-Walled Cabinet Requirements for the Cisco MDS 9509 and the Cisco MDS 9506 Chassis

The solid-walled cabinet requirements for the Cisco MDS 9509 and the Cisco MDS 9506 chassis are as follows:

- A roof-mounted fan tray and an air cooling scheme in which the fan tray pulls air in at the bottom of the cabinet and exhausts it out the top, with a minimum of 500 cfm of airflow exiting the cabinet roof through the fan tray.
- Nonperforated (solid and sealed) front and back doors and side panels so that air travels predictably from bottom to top.
- A recommended cabinet depth of 36 to 42 inches (91.4 to 106.7 cm) to allow the doors to close and adequate airflow.
- A minimum of 150 square inches (968 sq. cm) of open area at the floor air intake of the cabinet.
- The lowest piece of equipment should be installed a minimum of 1.75 inches (4.4 cm) above the floor openings to prevent blocking the floor intake.

## Requirements Specific to Standard Open Racks

In addition to the requirements listed in the [“General Requirements for Cabinets and Racks”](#) section on [page C-1](#), if mounting the chassis in an open rack (no side panels or doors), ensure that the rack meets the following requirements:

- The minimum width between two front mounting rails must be 17.75 inches (45.1 cm).
- The minimum vertical rack space per chassis:
  - Cisco MDS 9513 chassis: 24.5 inches (62.2 cm) or 14 RU.
  - Cisco MDS 9509 chassis: 24.5 inches (62.2 cm) or 14 RU.
  - Cisco MDS 9506 chassis: 12.25 inches (31.1 cm) or 7 RU.

**Note**

The rack-mount support brackets provided with the Cisco MDS 9513 Director require an additional height of 0.75 inches (1.9 cm). They are required during the installation of the Cisco MDS 9513 Director and cannot be removed.

**Note**

The side rail-mount brackets provided with the Cisco MDS 9509 Director require an additional height of 0.75 inches (1.9 cm). They are required during the installation of the Cisco MDS 9509 Director only, and can be removed or left installed once the front rack-mount brackets are securely fastened to the rack-mounting rails.

**Note**

The Cisco MDS 9506 Director does not require shelf brackets.

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

- The horizontal distance between the chassis and any adjacent chassis should be 6 inches (15.2 cm), and the distance between the chassis air vents and any walls should be 2.5 inches (6.4 cm).

## Requirements Specific to Two-Post Telco Racks

In addition to the requirements listed in the “[General Requirements for Cabinets and Racks](#)” section on [page C-1](#), two-post telco racks must meet the following requirements:

- The minimum width between the two rack-mounting rails must be at least 17.75 inches (45.1 cm).
- The distance between the chassis air vents and any walls should be 2.5 inches (6.4 cm).



**Note**

---

Two-post telco racks are not intended for use with the Cisco MDS 9513 Director.

---

## Cisco MDS 9000 Family Telco and EIA Shelf Bracket

The optional telco and EIA shelf bracket kit (DS-SHELF) can temporarily or permanently support the Cisco MDS 9200 Series during installation. After the front rack-mount brackets are securely attached to the rack-mounting rails, the shelf bracket can be removed. This kit supports the following configurations:

- A Cisco MDS 9506 Director in a two-post telco rack
- A Cisco MDS 9506 Director in a four-post EIA rack



**Note**

---

This kit is not intended for use with a Cisco MDS 9509 Director in a two-post telco rack nor with a Cisco MDS 9513 Director in any rack.

---

This section describes the procedure for installing a Cisco MDS 9000 Family switch in a rack or a cabinet using the optional telco and EIA shelf bracket kit. It includes the following information:

- [Rack-Mounting Guidelines, page C-7](#)
- [Before Installing the Rack-Mount Support Brackets, page C-7](#)
- [Before Installing the Shelf Brackets, page C-8](#)
- [Installing the Shelf Bracket Kit into a Two-Post Telco Rack, page C-9](#)
- [Installing the Shelf Bracket Kit into a Four-Post EIA Rack, page C-10](#)
- [Installing the Switch on the Rack-Mount Support Brackets, page C-11](#)
- [Installing the Switch on the Shelf Brackets, page C-12](#)
- [Removing the Shelf Bracket Kit \(Optional\), page C-12](#)



**Note**

---

This optional kit is not provided with the switch; to order the kit, contact your switch supplier.

---

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

## Rack-Mounting Guidelines



### Caution

If the rack is on wheels, ensure that the brakes are engaged or the rack is otherwise stabilized.



### Caution

If installing this kit in an EIA rack, attach the switch to all four rack-mounting rails; the EIA rails may not be thick enough to prevent flexing of the shelf brackets if only two rails are used.

Before rack-mounting the chassis, ensure that the cabinet or the rack meets the following requirements:

- The specifications listed in the “[Cabinet and Rack Requirements](#)” section on page C-1.
- The depth of the rack between the front-mounting and rear-mounting rails is at least 18 in. (45.7 cm) but less than or equal to 30 in. (76.2 cm). This is specific to four-post EIA cabinets or racks.
- The airflow and cooling are adequate and there is sufficient clearance around the air vents on the switch, as described in [Appendix D, “Technical Specifications.”](#) This is particularly important to verify if you are installing the switch in an enclosed cabinet.
- The rack has sufficient vertical clearance for the chassis plus 2 RU for the shelf brackets, and any desired clearance for the installation process.
- The rack meets the minimum rack load ratings per rack unit listed in the following table:

Rack Type	MDS 9513	MDS 9509	MDS 9506	MDS 9222i MDS 9216i MDS 9216A	MDS 9100
EIA (4-Post)	45 lb (20.41 kg)	45 lb (20.41 kg)	30 lb (13.61 kg)	15 lb (6.8 kg)	7.5 lb (3.4 kg)
Telco (2-Post)	Do not use.	Do not use.	60 lb (27.22 kg)	30 lb (13.61 kg)	15 lb (6.8 kg)

## Before Installing the Rack-Mount Support Brackets

Before installing the rack-mount support brackets for the Cisco MDS 9513 Director, check the contents of your kit. [Table C-1](#) lists the contents of the optional shelf bracket kit.

**Table C-1** Contents of Shelf Bracket Kit

Quantity	Part Description
2	Support rack-mount bracket
2	Rack-mount support brace
20	12-24 x 3/4-in. Phillips screws
20	10-32 x 3/4-in. Phillips screws

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## Before Installing the Shelf Brackets

Before installing the shelf brackets, check the contents of your kit. [Table C-2](#) lists the contents of the optional shelf bracket kit.

**Table C-2**      **Contents of Shelf Bracket Kit**

Quantity	Part Description
2	Slider brackets
2	Shelf brackets
1	Crossbar
2	10-32 x 3/8-in. Phillips pan-head screws
16	12-24 x 3/4-in. Phillips screws
16	10-24 x 3/4-in. Phillips screws

## Required Equipment

You need the following equipment for this installation:

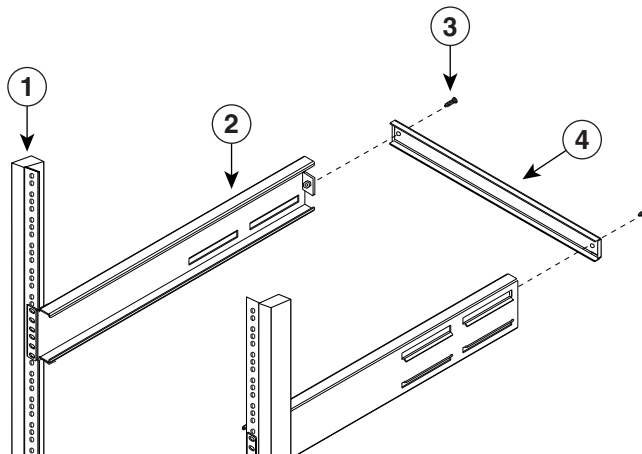
- Number 2 Phillips screwdriver
- Tape measure and level (to ensure shelf brackets are level)

[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## Installing the Shelf Bracket Kit into a Two-Post Telco Rack

Figure C-1 shows the installation of the shelf bracket kit into a two-post telco rack.

**Figure C-1** Installing the Shelf Bracket Kit into a Two-Post Telco Rack



<b>1</b>	Rack-mounting rail (2x)	<b>3</b>	10-32 screws (2x)
<b>2</b>	Shelf bracket (2x)	<b>4</b>	Crossbar

To install the shelf brackets in a two-post telco rack, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Position a shelf bracket inside a rack-mounting rail as shown in [Figure C-1](#). Align the screw holes at the front of the shelf bracket with the holes in the rack-mounting rail. Then attach the shelf bracket to the rack-mounting rail using a minimum of four 12-24 or 10-24 screws.



**Note** The bottom hole of the shelf bracket should align with the bottom hole of a rack unit on the rack-mounting rail (the hole immediately above the 1/2-in. spacing).

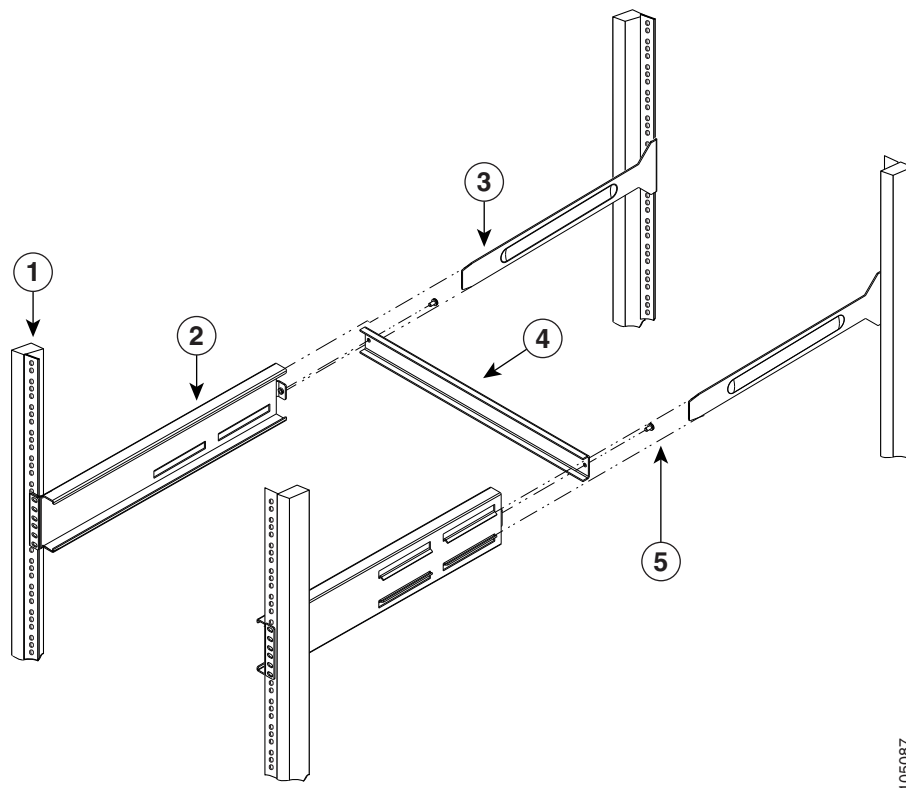
- Step 2** Repeat with the other shelf bracket.
- Step 3** Verify that the shelf brackets are at the same height (using the level or tape measure as desired).
- Step 4** Attach the crossbar to the rear of the shelf brackets as shown in [Figure C-1](#), using the 10-32 screws.

[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## Installing the Shelf Bracket Kit into a Four-Post EIA Rack

Figure C-2 shows the installation of the shelf bracket kit into a four-post EIA rack.

**Figure C-2** Installing the Shelf Bracket Kit into an EIA Rack



105087

1	Rack-mounting rail (4x)	4	Crossbar
2	Shelf bracket (2x)	5	10-32 screws (2x)
3	Slider rail (2)		

To install the shelf brackets in an EIA rack, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Position a shelf bracket inside the rack-mounting rails as shown in [Figure C-2](#). Align the screw holes at the front of the shelf bracket with the holes in the front rack-mounting rail. Then attach the shelf bracket to the front rack-mounting rail using a minimum of four 12-24 or 10-24 screws.



**Note** The bottom hole of the shelf bracket should align with the bottom hole of a rack unit on the rack-mounting rail (the hole immediately above the 1/2-in. spacing).

- Step 2** Repeat with the other shelf bracket.
- Step 3** Verify that the shelf brackets are at the same height (using the level or tape measure as desired).

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

- Step 4** Attach the crossbar to the shelf brackets as shown in [Figure C-2](#), using the 10-32 screws.
- Step 5** Insert the slider rails into the shelf brackets as shown in [Figure C-2](#). Then attach them to the rear rack-mounting rails using a minimum of four 12-24 or 10-24 screws.
- 

## Installing the Switch on the Rack-Mount Support Brackets

This section provides general instructions for installing the switch on top of the rack-mount support brackets. For detailed installation instructions, see the [“Installing the Chassis in a Cabinet or Rack” section on page 2-6](#).

**Warning**

**This unit is intended for installation in restricted access areas. A restricted access area can be accessed only through the use of a special tool, lock and key, or other means of security.**

Statement 1017

---

**Warning**

**Only trained and qualified personnel should be allowed to install, replace, or service this equipment.**

Statement 1030

---

**Note**

Before you install, operate, or service the system, see the *Regulatory Compliance and Safety Information for the Cisco MDS 9000 Family* for important safety information.

---

To install the switch on top of the rack-mount support brackets, follow these steps:

---

- Step 1** Verify that the rack-mount support brackets are level and securely attached to the rack-mounting rails, the support rack mount support brace is securely attached to the brackets, and the rack is stabilized.
- Step 2** Slide a mechanical lift under the switch and lift the switch up onto the rack-mount support brackets, ensuring it is squarely positioned.
- Step 3** Attach the switch to the rack-mounting rails. See the [“Installing the Chassis in a Cabinet or Rack” section on page 2-6](#).

**Caution**

We recommend grounding the chassis, even if the rack is already grounded. There is a grounding pad with two threaded M4 holes on the chassis for attaching a grounding lug.

---

**[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)**

## Installing the Switch on the Shelf Brackets

This section provides general instructions for installing the switch on top of the shelf brackets. For detailed installation instructions, see the [“Installing the Chassis in a Cabinet or Rack” section on page 2-6.](#)

**Warning**

**This unit is intended for installation in restricted access areas. A restricted access area can be accessed only through the use of a special tool, lock and key, or other means of security.**

Statement 1017

**Warning**

**Only trained and qualified personnel should be allowed to install, replace, or service this equipment.**

Statement 1030

**Note**

Before you install, operate, or service the system, see the *Regulatory Compliance and Safety Information for the Cisco MDS 9000 Family* for important safety information.

To install the switch on top of the shelf brackets, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Verify that the shelf brackets are level and securely attached to the rack-mounting rails, the crossbar is securely attached to the shelf brackets, and the rack is stabilized.
- Step 2** Slide the switch onto the shelf brackets, ensuring it is squarely positioned.
- Step 3** Attach the switch to the rack-mounting rails. See the [“Installing the Chassis in a Cabinet or Rack” section on page 2-6.](#)

**Caution**

Cisco recommends grounding the chassis, even if the rack is already grounded. There is a grounding pad with two threaded M4 holes on the chassis for attaching a grounding lug.

## Removing the Shelf Bracket Kit (Optional)

The shelf bracket kit can be removed once the Cisco MDS 9500 Series has been installed in a two-post telco or four-post EIA rack, and the front rack-mount brackets are securely attached to the rack-mounting rails. For additional support in an EIA rack, ensure that the C brackets on the Cisco MDS 9500 Series are attached to the rear rack-mounting rails.

To remove the shelf bracket kit, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Remove the screws fastening the slider brackets to the rear rack-mounting rails. Then slide the slider brackets out of the shelf brackets.
- Step 2** Remove the screws fastening the crossbar to the shelf brackets and remove the crossbar.



***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

**Step 3** Remove the screws fastening the shelf brackets to the front rack-mounting rails. Then remove the shelf brackets from the rack.

---



**Note** This does not apply to the Cisco MDS 9513 Director.

---

## Cisco MDS 9500 Shelf Bracket



**Note** This kit is optional and is not provided with the switch. To order the kit, contact your switch supplier.

---

The optional Cisco MDS 9500 Shelf Bracket Kit (DS-SHELF-9500) can be used to support the Cisco MDS 9509 Director in a nonthreaded cabinet or rack with an 18-inch (45.7 cm) front to rear fixed rail spacing. This shelf bracket kit can be used as a permanent support when installing a Cisco MDS 9509 Director in a cabinet or rack that meets the requirements listed in the [“Cabinet and Rack Requirements” section on page C-1](#).



**Note** Do not use this shelf bracket with the Cisco MDS 9513 Director.

---



**Note** Do not use this shelf bracket with the Cisco MDS 9506 Director.

---



**Note** This kit is not intended for use with a Cisco MDS 9509 Director in a two-post telco rack. This kit is also not intended for use with any other product in the Cisco MDS 9000 Family.

---

This section describes the procedure for installing a Cisco MDS 9509 Director in a nonthreaded rack or cabinet using the optional Cisco MDS 9500 Shelf Bracket Kit. It includes the following information:

- [Rack-Mounting Guidelines, page C-14](#)
- [Before Installing the Shelf Brackets, page C-14](#)
- [Installing the Cisco MDS 9500 Shelf Bracket Kit into a Cabinet or Rack, page C-15](#)
- [Installing the Switch on the Shelf Brackets, page C-16](#)

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

## Rack-Mounting Guidelines



### Caution

If the rack is on wheels, ensure that the brakes are engaged or the rack is otherwise stabilized.

Before rack-mounting the chassis, ensure that the cabinet or the rack meets the following requirements:

- The specifications listed in the “[Cabinet and Rack Requirements](#)” section on [page C-1](#).
- The depth of the rack between the front-mounting and rear-mounting rails is fixed at 18 inches (45.7 cm).
- The depth of the rack between the front-mounting and rear-mounting rails is fixed at 26.56 inches (67.4 cm) for a Cisco MDS 9513 Director.
- The cabinet or rack-mounting rails are nonthreaded.
- The airflow and cooling are adequate and there is sufficient clearance around the air vents on the Cisco MDS 9509 Director, as described in [Appendix D, “Technical Specifications.”](#) This is particularly important to verify if you are installing the switch in an enclosed cabinet.
- The rack has sufficient vertical clearance for the chassis and any desired clearance for the installation process. The Cisco MDS 9500 Shelf Bracket Kit does not consume any RU when installed.
- The rack meets the minimum rack load ratings of 45 lb (20.41 kg) per rack unit (RU) for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director.

## Before Installing the Shelf Brackets

Before installing the shelf brackets, check the contents of your kit. [Table C-3](#) lists the contents of the optional shelf bracket kit.

**Table C-3** Contents of Cisco MDS 9500 Shelf Bracket Kit

Quantity	Part Description
2	Shelf brackets
16	1/4-20 x 3/4 in. Phillips pan-head screws with lock washers
12	10-32 x 1/3 in. Phillips pan-head screws with lock washers
12	10-32 clip nuts

## Required Equipment

You need the following equipment for this installation:

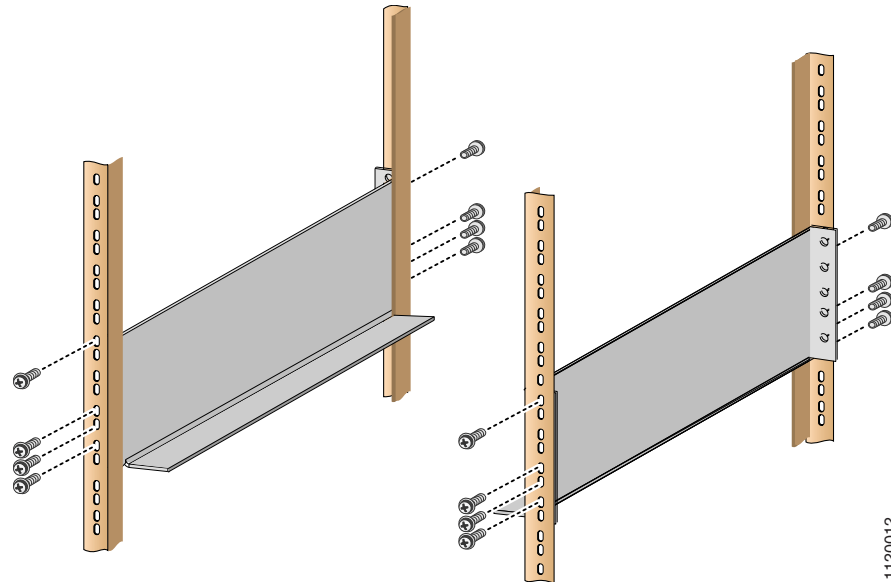
- Number 2 Phillips screwdriver
- Tape measure and level (to ensure shelf brackets are level)

*Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).*

## Installing the Cisco MDS 9500 Shelf Bracket Kit into a Cabinet or Rack

Figure C-3 shows the installation of the Cisco MDS 9500 Shelf Bracket Kit into a four-post rack.

**Figure C-3** Installing the Shelf Bracket Kit into a Rack



To install the shelf brackets in a cabinet or rack, follow these steps:

- Step 1** Position a shelf bracket inside the rack-mounting rails as shown in Figure C-3. Align the screw holes at the front of the shelf bracket with the holes in the front rack-mounting rail, and then attach the shelf bracket to the front rack-mounting rail using a minimum of four 1/4-20 screws.



**Note** The bottom hole of the shelf bracket should align with the bottom hole of a rack unit on the rack-mounting rail (the hole immediately above the 1/2-inch spacing).

- Step 2** Align the screw holes at the back of the shelf bracket with the holes in the back rack-mounting rail, and then attach the shelf bracket to the back rack-mounting rail using a minimum of four 1/4-20 screws.
- Step 3** Repeat Step 1 and Step 2 with the other shelf bracket.
- Step 4** Verify that the shelf brackets are at the same height (using the level or tape measure as desired).

**[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)**

## Installing the Switch on the Shelf Brackets

This section provides general instructions for installing the Cisco MDS 9509 Director on top of the shelf brackets. For detailed installation instructions, see [“Installing the Chassis in a Cabinet or Rack” section on page 2-6.](#)

**Warning**

---

**This unit is intended for installation in restricted access areas. A restricted access area can be accessed only through the use of a special tool, lock and key, or other means of security.**

Statement 1017

---

**Warning**

---

**Only trained and qualified personnel should be allowed to install, replace, or service this equipment.**

Statement 1030

---

**Note**

---

Before you install, operate, or service the system, see the *Regulatory Compliance and Safety Information for the Cisco MDS 9000 Family* for important safety information.

---

To install the Cisco MDS 9509 Director on top of the shelf brackets, follow these steps:

- 
- Step 1** Verify that the shelf brackets are level and securely attached to the rack-mounting rails, and the rack is stabilized.
- Step 2** Slide the Cisco MDS 9509 Director onto the shelf brackets, ensuring it is squarely positioned.
- Step 3** Attach the Cisco MDS 9509 Director to the rack-mounting rails. Slide the clip nuts over the holes on the nonthreaded rails on the cabinet or rack. These clip nuts provide the threading for the screws that will secure the chassis to the cabinet or rack. Use the 10-32 x 1/2 inch screws provided in this shelf bracket kit to secure the chassis to the cabinet or rack. See [“Installing the Chassis in a Cabinet or Rack” section on page 2-6.](#)

**Caution**

---

We recommend grounding the chassis, although the rack is already grounded. There is a grounding pad with two threaded M4 holes on the chassis for attaching a grounding lug.

---



# APPENDIX **D**

## Technical Specifications

---

This appendix provides technical specifications and includes the following sections:

- [Switch Specifications, page D-1](#)
- [Module Specifications, page D-4](#)
- [Power Specifications for the Cisco MDS 9513 Director, page D-6](#)
- [Power Specifications for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director, page D-9](#)
- [Power Specifications for the Cisco MDS 9506 Director, page D-14](#)
- [X2 Transceiver Specifications, page D-19](#)
- [SFP and SFP+ Transceiver Specifications, page D-22](#)



**Note**

Specifications for cables and connectors are provided in [Appendix E, “Cable and Port Specifications.”](#)

---

## Switch Specifications

The Cisco MDS 9500 Series supports hot-swappable fan modules that provide 85 cfm (cubic feet per minute) of airflow per slot with 410 W of power dissipation per slot.

[Table D-1](#) lists the environmental specifications for the Cisco MDS 9500 Series.

**Table D-1** *Environmental Specifications for the Cisco MDS 9500 Series*

Description	Specification
Temperature, certified for operation	32 to 104°F (0 to 40°C)
Temperature, designed and tested for operation	32 to 130°F (0 to 55°C)
Temperature, ambient nonoperating and storage	-40 to 158°F (-40 to 70°C)
Humidity (RH), ambient (noncondensing) operating	10 to 90%
Humidity (RH), ambient (noncondensing) nonoperating and storage	5 to 95%
Altitude, certified for operation	0 to 6500 ft (0 to 2000 m)
Altitude, designed and tested for operation	-200 to 10000 ft (-60 to 3000 m)
Noise levels	70 dB

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

Table D-2 lists the physical specifications for the Cisco MDS 9513 Director.

**Table D-2 Physical Specifications for the Cisco MDS 9513 Director**

Description	Specification
Dimensions (HxWxD)	24.5 x 17.5 x 28 in. (62.2 x 44.5 x 71.1 cm) Chassis requires 14 RU <sup>1</sup> , 15 RU with a rack-mount kit. Chassis depth including cable guide is 33 in. (83.8 cm). Crossbar module: 1.7 x 14.0 x 11.2 in. (4.4 x 35.6 x 28.4 cm)
Weight	Chassis only: 101 lb (45.36 kg) Fully loaded chassis <sup>2</sup> : 375 lb (170.10 kg) System fan tray: 18 lbs (8.2 kg) Crossbar module fan tray: 2.25 lbs (1.02 kg)
Power supply	6000-W, AC input 33 lb (15 kg)
Airflow	275 to 325 lfm <sup>3</sup> through system fan module, or 90 cfm <sup>4</sup> per supervisor, switching, or services module. Total of 1150 cfm if all slots are filled. Spacing requirements: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If installed in an open rack (no side panels), the horizontal distance required between the chassis and any devices that exhaust air towards the chassis is a minimum of 12 in. (304 cm), and the distance required between the chassis air vents and any walls is a minimum of 6 in. (15.2 cm).</li> </ul>

1. RU = rack unit; 1 RU = 1.75 in. (4.45 cm).
2. Depending on what modules are installed in the chassis.
3. lfm = linear feet per minute.
4. cfm = cubic feet per minute.

Table D-3 lists the physical specifications for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director.

**Table D-3 Physical Specifications for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director**

Description	Specification
Dimensions (HxWxD)	24.5 x 17.25 x 18.8 in. (62.2 x 43.8 x 47.8 cm) Chassis requires 14 RU <sup>1</sup> plus space for shelf brackets. Chassis depth including cable guide is 21.64 in. (55.0 cm).
Weight	Chassis only: 55 lb (24.9 kg) Chassis configured with two supervisor modules, and 2500-W power supplies: 120 lb (54.4 kg) Chassis configured with two supervisor modules, and 4000-W power supplies: 140 lb (63.5 kg) System fan tray: 10.5 lb (5.0 kg).

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Table D-3 Physical Specifications for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director (continued)**

Description	Specification
Power supply	4000-W, AC input 3000-W, AC input 2500-W, AC input 2500-W, DC input
Airflow	300 lfm <sup>2</sup> through system fan module, or 80 cfm <sup>3</sup> per supervisor, switching, or services module. Total of 720 cfm if all slots are filled.  Spacing requirements: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If installed in a cabinet, a minimum clearance of 2.5 in. (6.4 cm) is required between the chassis air vents and the cabinet walls.</li> <li>• If installed in an open rack (no side panels), the horizontal distance required between the chassis and any devices that exhaust air towards the chassis is a minimum of 6 in. (15.2 cm), and the distance required between the chassis air vents and any walls is a minimum of 2.5 in. (6.4 cm).</li> </ul>

1. RU = rack unit; 1 RU = 1.75 in. (4.45 cm)
2. lfm = linear feet per minute
3. cfm = cubic feet per minute

Table D-4 lists the physical specifications for the Cisco MDS 9506 Director.

**Table D-4 Physical Specifications for the Cisco MDS 9506 Director**

Description	Specification
Dimensions (HxWxD)	12.25 x 17.37 x 21.75 in. (31.1 x 44.1 x 55.2 cm). Chassis requires 7 RU <sup>1</sup> . Chassis depth including cable guides is 26.75 inches (67.9 cm).
Weight	Chassis only: 46 lb (20.9 kg). Chassis configured with two supervisor modules, fan module, and two power supplies: 86 lb (39 kg). System fan tray: 7.70 lbs (3.49 kg) 1900W AC power supply: 11 lbs (4.99 kg)

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Table D-4 Physical Specifications for the Cisco MDS 9506 Director (continued)**

Description	Specification
Power supply	1900-W, AC input 1900-W, DC input
Airflow	300 lfm <sup>2</sup> through system fan module, or 80 cfm <sup>3</sup> per supervisor, switching, or services module (total of 480 cfm if all slots are filled). Spacing requirements: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If installed in a cabinet, a minimum of 2.5 in. (6.4 cm) is required between the chassis air vents and the cabinet walls.</li> <li>• If installed in an open rack (no side panels), the horizontal distance required between the chassis and any devices that exhaust air towards the chassis is a minimum of 6 in. (15.2 cm), and the distance required between the chassis air vents and any walls is a minimum of 2.5 in. (6.4 cm).</li> </ul>

1. RU = rack unit; 1 RU = 1.75 in. (4.45 cm)
2. lfm = linear feet per minute
3. cfm = cubic feet per minute

## Module Specifications

Table D-5 lists the specifications for the Cisco MDS 9500 Series supervisor modules, services modules, and switching modules.

**Table D-5 Cisco MDS 9500 Series Module Specifications**

Description	Specification
<b>Environmental Requirements</b>	
Temperature, certified for operation	32 to 104°F (0 to 40°C)
Temperature, designed and tested for operation	32 to 130°F (0 to 55°C)
Temperature, ambient nonoperating and storage	-40 to 167°F (-40 to 75°C)
Humidity (RH), ambient (noncondensing) operating	10 to 90%
Altitude, certified for operation	0 to 6500 ft (0 to 2000 m)
Altitude, designed and tested for operation	-200 to 10000 ft (-60 to 3000 m)
<b>Physical Characteristics</b>	



**[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)**

**Table D-5** Cisco MDS 9500 Series Module Specifications (continued)

Description	Specification
Dimensions	1.75 x 15.5 x 16.5 in. (4.4 x 39.4 x 41.9 cm) <b>Note</b> These are the maximum dimensions of the faceplate and board, and include the connectors on the board.
Weight	8 to 11.5 lb (1.4 to 5.2 kg)

## Weight of Modules

Table D-6 lists the weight for each module in the Cisco MDS 9000 Family.

**Table D-6** Weight of Modules in the Cisco MDS 9000 Family

Module	Weight
48-port 8-Gbps switching module	10.25 lb (4.65 kg)
24-port 8-Gbps switching module	10.25 lb (4.65 kg)
4/44-port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized switching module	9.75 lb (4.42 kg)
Fabric 2 external crossbar module (DS-13SLT-FAB2)	6 lb (2.7 kg)
Fabric 1 external crossbar module (DS-13SLT-FAB1)	6 lb (2.7 kg)
48-port 4-Gbps switching module	11.0 lb (4.99 kg)
24-port 4-Gbps switching module	7.75 lb (3.52 kg)
12-port 4-Gbps switching module	7.5 lb (3.40 kg)
4-Port 10-Gbps switching module	8.5 lb (3.86 kg)
32-port FC switching module	9 lb (4.1 kg)
16-port FC switching module	9 lb (4.1 kg)
SSM	11 lb (5 kg)
ASM	11 lb (5 kg)
CSM	11.5 lb (5.2 kg)
IPS-8	10 lb (4.5 kg)
IPS-4	9 lb (4.1 kg)
MSM-18/4	8.5 lb (3.86 kg)
MSFM-18/4	8.5 lb (3.86 kg)
MPS-14/2	10 lb (4.5 kg)
Supervisor-2 for MDS 9500 Series	7.25 lb (kg)
Supervisor-1 for MDS 9500 Series	9 lb (4.1 kg)
Supervisor for MDS 9200 Series	9 lb (4.1 kg)

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Table D-6** Weight of Modules in the Cisco MDS 9000 Family (continued)

Module	Weight
Crossbar module fan tray	2.25 lb (1.13 kg)
Module blank panels	0.50 lb (0.25 kg)

Table D-7 lists the specifications for the batteries on the Cisco MDS 9000 Family caching services module.



**Note**

The CSM does not support Cisco SAN-OS Release 3.0(1).

**Table D-7** Caching Services Module Battery Specifications

Attribute	Value
Nominal voltage	9.6 V
Rated capacity	Typical discharge capacity at 0.2C rate: 2100 mAh
	Minimum discharge capacity at 0.2C rate: 2000 mAh
	Minimum discharge capacity at 5C rate: 1800 mAh (1 V/cell discharge cut-off)
Discharge	The battery is capable of continuous discharge from 41 to 140°F (5 to 60°C) at 5C-rate
Charge	From 32 to 59°F (0 to 15°C) at C/10 rate and from 59 to 104°F (15 to 40°C) at C/2 rate
Storage temperature	32 to 95°F (0 to +35°C)
Relative humidity range	From 5 to 90%

## Power Specifications for the Cisco MDS 9513 Director

This section includes the following topics:

- [Specifications for the Cisco MDS 9513 Power Supplies, page D-6](#)
- [Component Power Requirements and Heat Dissipation for the Cisco MDS 9513 Director, page D-7](#)
- [AC Power Consumption for the Cisco MDS 9513 Director, page D-8](#)

## Specifications for the Cisco MDS 9513 Power Supplies

The 6000-W AC power supply provides power based upon the input voltage. Each power supply has two AC power connections and will provide power as follows:

- One AC power connection @ 110 VAC = No output
- Two AC power connection @ 110 VAC = 2900 W output
- One AC power connection @ 220 VAC = 2900 W output
- One AC power connection @ 110 VAC and one AC power connection @ 220 VAC = 2900 W output

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

- Two AC power connection @ 220 VAC = 6000 W output

If a 110 VAC input is chosen, a 110-VAC power cord (CAB-7513AC=) must be ordered separately.



**Note**

Power output does not include the power used by the individual modules used in the chassis.

Table D-8 lists the specifications for the Cisco MDS 9513 power supplies.

**Table D-8 Specifications for Cisco MDS 9513 Power Supplies**

Description	Specification
<b>6000-W AC Power Supply</b>	
Type	Autoranging input with power factor corrector.
Voltage	100 to 240 VAC ( $\pm 10\%$ ).
Current rating	16 A maximum at 100 to 120 VAC and 2900-W output. 16 A maximum at 200 to 240 VAC and 6000-W output.
Frequency	50 to 60 Hz (nominal) ( $\pm 3$ Hz for full range).
Output capacity	One AC power connection @ 110 VAC = No output Two AC power connection @ 110 VAC = 2900 W output One AC power connection @ 220 VAC = 2900 W output One AC power connection @ 110 VAC and one AC power connection @ 220 VAC = 2900 W output Two AC power connection @ 220 VAC = 6000 W output
Output voltage at 110/120	3.3 V at 10 A, 50 V at 57 A
Output voltage at 200/240	3.3 V at 10A, 50 V at 119 A

## Component Power Requirements and Heat Dissipation for the Cisco MDS 9513 Director

Consider heat dissipation when sizing the air-conditioning requirements for an installation. The power and heat associated with a Cisco MDS 9513 Director varies based upon the following considerations:

- Power supply type
- Switching module type and number of switching modules installed
- Average switching traffic levels

Table D-9 lists the power requirements and heat dissipation for the components of the Cisco MDS 9513 Director.



**Note**

Unless noted otherwise, the data listed in Table D-9 is based on worst-case conditions. Typical numbers are approximately 30 percent below the numbers listed here.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Table D-9 Requirements and Heat Dissipation for 6000-W AC Power Supplies**

Module Type/ Product Number	NX-OS Release	SAN-OS Release	Power Required (watts)	Heat Dissipation (BTU/hr)	Input Current			
					90 VAC (amps)	120 VAC (amps)	180 VAC (amps)	240 VAC (amps)
Fan tray 1 (front panel), DS-13SLT-FAN-F		3.x	248	1059	3.44	2.58	1.72	1.29
Fan tray 2 (rear panel), DS-13SLT-FAN-R		3.x	70	299	0.97	0.73	0.49	0.36
Cisco MDS 9513 chassis, DS-C9513, with front (DS-13SLT-FAN-F) and rear (DS-13SLT-FAN-R) fan trays		3.x	318	1358	4.41	3.31	2.21	1.65
Supervisor-2, DS-X9530-SF2-K9		3.x	126	538	1.75	1.31	0.88	0.66
48-port 4-Gbps switching module, DS-X9148		3.x	185	790	2.57	1.93	1.28	0.96
24-port 4-Gbps switching module, DS-X9124		3.x	147	628	2.04	1.53	1.02	0.77
12-port 4-Gbps switching module, DS-X9112		3.x	132	564	1.83	1.38	0.92	0.69
4-Port 10-Gbps switching module, DS-X9704		3.x	172	734	2.39	1.79	1.19	0.90
18/4 Multiservice module, DS-X9304-18K9		3.2.(1)	200	855	2.78	2.08	1.39	1.04
Crossbar module, DS-13SLT-FAB1, DS-13SLT-FAB2		3.x	63	269	0.88	0.66	0.44	0.33
48-port 8-Gbps switching module, DS-X9248-96K9	4.x		298	1273	4.14	3.11	2.07	1.55
24-port 8-Gbps switching module, DS-X9224-96K	4.x		273	1163	3.79	2.84	1.90	1.42
4/44-port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized switching module, DS-X9248-48K9	4.x		214	915	2.98	2.23	1.49	1.12

## AC Power Consumption for the Cisco MDS 9513 Director

Table D-10 shows the typical AC power consumption for a Cisco MDS 9513 Director.

**[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)**

**Table D-10** Typical AC Power Consumption for a Cisco MDS 9513 Director

Module Type / Product Number	Typical AC Power Consumption (Watts)
Cisco MDS 9513 chassis, DS-C9513, with front (DS-13SLT-FAN-F) and rear (DS-13SLT-FAN-R) fan trays, two Supervisor-2 (DS-X9530-SF2-K9), and two crossbar modules (DS-13SLT-FAB1 or DS-13SLT-FAB2)	697
48-port 4-Gbps switching module, DS-X9148	181
24-port 4-Gbps switching module, DS-X9124	127
12-port 4-Gbps switching module, DS-X9112	107
4-Port 10-Gbps switching module, DS-X9704	162
48-port 8-Gbps switching module, DS-X9248-96K9	230
24-port 8-Gbps switching module, DS-X9224-96K	221
4/44-port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized switching module, DS-X9248-48K9	175

## Power Specifications for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director

This section includes the following topics:

- [Specifications for the Cisco MDS 9509 Power Supplies, page D-9](#)
- [Component Power Requirements and Heat Dissipation for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director, page D-11](#)
- [AC Power Consumption for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director, page D-14](#)

## Specifications for the Cisco MDS 9509 Power Supplies

The 3000-W AC power supply provides power based upon the input voltage, as follows:

- Maximum of 1400 W at input of 100 to 120 VAC (1174 W available to modules and fans)
- Maximum of 3000 W at input of 200 to 240 VAC (2774 W available to modules and fans)

The 2500-W AC power supply provides power based upon the input voltage, as follows:

- Maximum of 1325 W at input of 100 to 120 VAC (1150 W available to modules and fans)
- Maximum of 2525 W at input of 200 to 240 VAC (2331 W available to modules and fans)

If a 110-VAC input is chosen, a 110-VAC power cord (CAB-7513AC=) must be ordered separately.

[Table D-11](#) lists the specifications for the Cisco MDS 9509 power supplies.

**Table D-11** Specifications for Cisco MDS 9509 Power Supplies

Description	Specification
<b>2500-W AC Power Supply</b>	
Type	Autorangeing input with power factor corrector.
Voltage	100 to 240 VAC ( $\pm 10\%$ ).

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Table D-11 Specifications for Cisco MDS 9509 Power Supplies (continued)**

Description	Specification
Current rating	16 A maximum at 100 to 120 VAC and 1300-W output. 16 A maximum at 200 to 240 VAC and 2500-W output. <b>Note</b> For current ratings of plugs, see <a href="#">Figure E-5 on page E-9</a> .
Frequency	50 to 60 Hz (nominal) ( $\pm 3$ Hz for full range).
Output capacity	1325 W maximum (100 to 120 VAC). 2525 W maximum (200 to 240 VAC).
Output voltage at 110/120	3.3 V at 15 A; 5 V at 5 A; 12 V at 12 A; 42 V at 27.5 A.
Output voltage at 200/240	3.3 V at 15 A; 5 V at 5 A; 12 V at 12 A; 42 V at 55.5 A.
<b>2500-W DC Power Supply</b>	
Voltage	-48 VDC to -60 VDC continuous.
Current rating	70 A at -48 VDC; 55 A at -60 VDC; 80 A at -40.5 VDC.
Terminal block	Accommodates 2 to 14 AWG copper conductors. Use 90°C copper conductors for North American installations. <b>Note</b> Actual size of the wire required is determined by the installer or local electrician. Terminal block material is rated at 302°F (150°C).
Output capacity	2525 W maximum (-48 to -60 VDC).
Output voltage	3.3 V at 15 A; 5 V at 5 A; 12 V at 12 A; 42 V at 55.5 A.
<b>3000-W AC Power Supply</b>	
Type	Autoranging input with power factor corrector.
Voltage	100 to 240 VAC ( $\pm 10\%$ ).
Current rating	17.6 A maximum at 100 to 120 VAC and 1400-W output. 17.6 A maximum at 200 to 240 VAC and 3000-W output. For current ratings of plugs, see <a href="#">Figure E-5 on page E-9</a>
Frequency	50 to 60 Hz (nominal) ( $\pm 3$ Hz for full range).
Output capacity	1400 W maximum (100 to 120 VAC). 3000 W maximum (200 to 240 VAC).
Output voltage at 110/120	3.3 V at 15 A; 12 V at 12 A; 42 V at 27.9 A.
Output voltage at 200/240	3.3 V at 15 A; 12 V at 12 A; 42 V at 66 A.
<b>4000-W AC Power Supply</b>	
Type	High-line input with power factor corrector, 220 VAC, single-phase circuit.
Voltage	200 to 240 VAC ( $\pm 10\%$ ).
Current rating	23 A <b>Note</b> For current ratings of plugs, see <a href="#">Figure E-8 on page E-11</a> .
Frequency	50/60 Hz (nominal) ( $\pm 3\%$ for full range).
Output capacity	4000 W maximum.
Output voltage at 200/240	3.3 V at 15 A; 5 V at 5 A; 12 V at 12 A; 42 V at 91.2 A

[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## Component Power Requirements and Heat Dissipation for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director

When sizing the air-conditioning requirements for an installation, consider heat dissipation. The power and heat associated with a Cisco MDS 9509 Director varies based upon the following considerations:

- Power supply type
- Switching module type and number of switching modules installed
- Average switching traffic levels

Table D-12 and Table D-13 list the power requirements and heat dissipation for the components of the Cisco MDS 9509 Director.



### Note

Unless noted otherwise, the data listed in Table D-12 and Table D-13 is based on worst-case conditions. Typical numbers are approximately 30 percent below the numbers listed here.

**Table D-12** Requirements and Heat Dissipation for 2500-, 3000-, and 4000-W AC Power Supplies

Module Type/ Product Number	NX-OS Release	SAN-OS Release	Power Required (watts)	Heat Dissipation (BTU/hr)	Input Current			
					90 VAC (amps)	120 VAC (amps)	180 VAC (amps)	240 VAC (amps)
Cisco MDS 9509 chassis with fan module DS-C9509		3.x	210	897	2.92	2.19	1.46	1.09
		2.x and 1.x	216	920	3.00	2.25	1.50	1.13
Supervisor/fabric 1 DS-X9530-SF1		3.x	210	897	2.92	2.19	1.46	1.09
		2.x and 1.x	220	940	3.05	2.29	1.53	1.15
Supervisor-2, DS-X9530-SF2-K9		3.x	126	538	1.75	1.31	0.88	0.66
48-port 4-Gbps switching module, DS-X9148		3.x	185	790	2.57	1.93	1.28	0.96
		2.x and 1.x	—	—	—	—	—	—
24-port 4-Gbps switching module, DS-X9124		3.x	147	628	2.04	1.53	1.02	0.77
		2.x and 1.x	—	—	—	—	—	—
12-port 4-Gbps switching module, DS-X9112		3.x	132	564	1.83	1.38	0.92	0.69
		2.x and 1.x	—	—	—	—	—	—
4-Port 10-Gbps switching module, DS-X9704		3.x	172	734	2.39	1.79	1.19	0.90
		2.x and 1.x	—	—	—	—	—	—
32-port 1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel module, DS-X9032		3.x	191	816	2.65	1.99	1.33	0.99
		2.x and 1.x	200	855	2.78	2.08	1.39	1.04

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Table D-12 Requirements and Heat Dissipation for 2500-, 3000-, and 4000-W AC Power Supplies (continued)**

Module Type/ Product Number	NX-OS Release	SAN-OS Release	Power Required (watts)	Heat Dissipation (BTU/hr)	Input Current			
					90 VAC (amps)	120 VAC (amps)	180 VAC (amps)	240 VAC (amps)
16-port 1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel module, DS-X9016		3.x	210	897	2.92	2.19	1.46	1.09
		2.x and 1.x	220	940	3.05	2.29	1.53	1.15
18/4 Multiservice module, DS-X9304-18K9		3.2.(1)	200	855	2.78	2.08	1.39	1.04
MPS-14/2 module DS-X9302-14K9		3.x	200	854	2.78	2.08	1.39	1.04
		2.x and 1.x	227	970	3.15	2.37	1.57	1.19
8-port IPS module DS-X9308-SMIP		3.x	200	854	2.78	2.08	1.39	1.04
		2.x and 1.x	220	940	3.05	2.29	1.53	1.15
4-port IPS module DS-X9304-SMIP		3.x	160	683	2.22	1.67	1.11	0.83
		2.x and 1.x	185	789	2.57	1.93	1.28	0.96
32-port SSM DS-X9032-SSM		3.x	281	1200	3.90	2.93	1.95	1.46
		2.x and 1.x	295	1260	4.10	3.07	2.05	1.54
32-port ASM DS-X9032-SMV		3.x	281	1200	3.90	2.93	1.95	1.46
		2.x and 1.x	295	1260	4.10	3.07	2.05	1.54
CSM DS-X9560-SMC		3.x	200	854	2.78	2.08	1.39	1.04
		2.x and 1.x	210	919	2.99	2.19	1.50	1.12
48-port 8-Gbps switching module, DS-X9248-96K9	4.x		298	1273	4.14	3.11	2.07	1.55
24-port 8-Gbps switching module, DS-X9224-96K	4.x		273	1163	3.79	2.84	1.90	1.42
4/44-port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized switching module, DS-X9248-48K9	4.x		214	915	2.98	2.23	1.49	1.12



**[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)**

**Table D-13 Power Requirements and Heat Dissipation for the 2500-W DC Power Supply**

Module Type/ Product Number	SAN-OS Release	Power Required (watts)	Heat Dissipation (BTU/hr)	Input Current	
				48 VDC (amps)	60 VDC (amps)
Cisco MDS 9509 chassis with fan module DS-C9509	3.x	210	956	5.83	4.67
	2.x and 1.x	216	983	6.00	4.80
Supervisor/fabric 1 DS-X9530-SF1	3.x	210	956	5.83	4.67
	2.x and 1.x	220	1000	6.10	4.88
32-port 1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel module DS-X9032	3.x	191	869	5.31	4.24
	2.x and 1.x	200	911	5.56	4.45
16-port 1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel module DS-X9016	3.x	210	956	5.83	4.67
	2.x and 1.x	220	1000	6.10	4.88
MSM-18/4 module, DS-X9304-18K9	3.2(1)	200	855	2.78	2.08
MSFM-18/4 module, DS-X9304-18FK9	3.2(1)	200	855	2.78	2.08
MPS-14/2 module DS-X9302-14K9	3.x	200	910	5.56	4.44
	2.x and 1.x	227	970	3.15	2.37
8-port IPS module DS-X9308-SMIP	3.x	200	910	5.56	4.44
	2.x and 1.x	220	1000	6.10	4.88
4-port IPS module DS-X9304-SMIP	3.x	160	728	4.44	3.56
	2.x and 1.x	185	841	5.14	4.11
32-port SSM DS-X9032-SSM	3.x	281	1279	7.81	6.24
	2.x and 1.x	295	1342	8.19	6.56
32-port ASM DS-X9032-SMV	3.x	281	1279	7.81	6.24
	2.x and 1.x	295	1342	8.19	6.56
CSM DS-X9560-SMC	3.x	200	910	5.56	4.44
	2.x and 1.x	210	956	5.83	4.67

[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## AC Power Consumption for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director

Table D-14 shows the typical AC power consumption for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director

**Table D-14** Typical AC Power Consumption for a Cisco MDS 9509 Director

Module Type / Product Number	Typical AC Power Consumption (Watts)
Cisco MDS 9509 chassis, DS-C9509, with fan module, and two Supervisor-2 (DS-X9530-SF2-K9)	380
Cisco MDS 9509 chassis, DS-C9509, with fan module, and two Supervisor-1 (DS-X9530-SF1-K9)	622
48-port 4-Gbps switching module, DS-X9148	181
24-port 4-Gbps switching module, DS-X9124	127
12-port 4-Gbps switching module, DS-X9112	107
4-Port 10-Gbps switching module, DS-X9704	162
32-port 1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel module, DS-X9032	174
16-port 1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel module, DS-X9016	144
MPS-14/2 module, DS-X9302-14K9	178
32-port SSM, DS-X9032-SSM	211
8-port IPS module, DS-X9308-SMIP	175
4-port IPS module, DS-X9304-SMIP	128
48-port 8-Gbps switching module, DS-X9248-96K9	230
24-port 8-Gbps switching module, DS-X9224-96K	221
4/44-port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized switching module, DS-X9248-48K9	175

## Power Specifications for the Cisco MDS 9506 Director

This section includes the following topics:

- [Specifications for the Cisco MDS 9506 Power Supplies, page D-15](#)
- [Component Power Requirements and Heat Dissipation for the Cisco MDS 9506 Director, page D-16](#)
- [AC Power Consumption for the Cisco MDS 9506 Director, page D-19](#)

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

## Specifications for the Cisco MDS 9506 Power Supplies



### Caution

The following applies to AC power supplies on the Cisco MDS 9506 only:  
The DS-C9506 equipment is suitable for use on TN power systems and the IT-power system connection of Norway (max 230 v phase-phase). If connected to a 230/400-V IT power system, beware of high-leakage current. Earth connection is essential before connecting the supply.

The 1900-W AC power supply provides power based upon the input voltage:

- Maximum of 1050 W at input of 100 to 120 VAC
- Maximum of 1900 W at input of 200 to 240 VAC

A 110-VAC power cord (CAB-7513AC=) must be ordered separately.

[Table D-15](#) lists the specifications for the Cisco MDS 9506 power supplies.

**Table D-15 Specifications for Cisco MDS 9506 Power Supplies**

Description	Specification
<b>1900-W AC Power Supply</b>	
Type	Autoranging input with power factor corrector.
Voltage	100 to 240 VAC ( $\pm 10\%$ ).
Current rating	12 A maximum at 100 to 120 VAC and 1050-W output. 12 A maximum at 200 to 240 VAC and 1900-W output. <b>Note</b> For current ratings of plugs, see <a href="#">Figure E-5 on page E-9</a> .
Frequency	50/60 Hz (nominal) ( $\pm 3$ Hz for full range).
Output capacity	1050 W maximum (at input of 100 to 120 VAC). 1900 W maximum (at input of 200 to 240 VAC).
Output voltage at 110/120	3.3 V at 2.5 A; 1.5 V at 15 A; 50 V at 20.4 A.
Output voltage at 200/240	3.3 V at 2.5 A; 1.5 V at 15 A; 50 V at 37.4 A.
<b>1900-W DC Power Supply</b>	
Voltage	-48 to -60 VDC continuous.
Current rating	50 A at -48 VDC, 40 A at -60 VDC, 60 A at -40.5 VDC.
Terminal block	Accommodates 2 to 14 AWG copper conductors. Use 90°C copper conductors for North American installations. <b>Note</b> Actual size of the wire required is determined by the installer or local electrician. Terminal block material is rated at 302°F (150°C).
Output capacity	1900 W maximum (at input of -48 to -60 VDC).
Output voltage	3.3 V at 2.5 A; 1.5 V at 15 A; 50 V at 37.4 A.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

## Component Power Requirements and Heat Dissipation for the Cisco MDS 9506 Director

When sizing the air-conditioning requirements for an installation, consider heat dissipation. The power and heat associated with a Cisco MDS 9506 Director varies depending upon the following:

- Power supply type
- Switching module type and number of switching modules installed
- Average switching traffic levels

Table D-16 and Table D-17 list the AC and DC power requirements and heat dissipation for the components of the Cisco MDS 9506 Director.



### Note

Unless noted otherwise, the information listed in Table D-16 and Table D-17 is based on worst-case conditions. Typical numbers are approximately 30 percent below the numbers listed here.

**Table D-16** Power Requirements and Heat Dissipation for the 1900-W AC Power Supply

Module Type/ Product Number	NX-OS Release	SAN-OS Release	Power Required (watts)	Heat Dissipation (BTU/hr)	Input Current			
					90 VAC (amps)	120 VAC (amps)	180 VAC (amps)	240 VAC (amps)
Cisco MDS 9506 chassis with fan module DS-C9506		3.x	126	538	1.75	1.31	0.88	0.66
		2.x and 1.x	126	538	1.75	1.32	0.88	0.66
Supervisor/fabric 1 DS-X9530-SF1		3.x	210	897	2.92	2.19	1.46	1.09
		2.x and 1.x	220	940	3.05	2.29	1.53	1.15
Supervisor-2, DS-X9530-SF2-K9		3.x	126	538	1.75	1.31	0.88	0.66
48-port 4-Gbps switching module, DS-X9148		3.x	185	790	2.57	1.93	1.28	0.96
		2.x and 1.x	—	—	—	—	—	—
24-port 4-Gbps switching module, DS-X9124		3.x	147	628	2.04	1.53	1.02	0.77
		2.x and 1.x	—	—	—	—	—	—
12-port 4-Gbps switching module, DS-X9112		3.x	132	564	1.83	1.38	0.92	0.69
		2.x and 1.x	—	—	—	—	—	—
4-Port 10-Gbps switching module, DS-X9704		3.x	172	734	2.39	1.79	1.19	0.90
		2.x and 1.x	—	—	—	—	—	—
32-port 1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel module DS-X9032		3.x	191	816	2.65	1.99	1.33	0.99
		2.x and 1.x	200	855	2.78	2.08	1.39	1.04

**[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)**

**Table D-16 Power Requirements and Heat Dissipation for the 1900-W AC Power Supply (continued)**

Module Type/ Product Number	NX-OS Release	SAN-OS Release	Power Required (watts)	Heat Dissipation (BTU/hr)	Input Current			
					90 VAC (amps)	120 VAC (amps)	180 VAC (amps)	240 VAC (amps)
16-port 1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel module DS-X9016		3.x	210	897	2.92	2.19	1.46	1.09
		2.x and 1.x	220	940	3.05	2.29	1.53	1.15
18/4 Multiservice module, DS-X9304-18K9		3.2.(1)	200	855	2.78	2.08	1.39	1.04
MPS-14/2 module DS-X9302-14K9		3.x	200	854	2.78	2.08	1.39	1.04
		2.x and 1.x	227	970	3.15	2.37	1.57	1.19
8-port IPS module DS-X9308-SMIP		3.x	200	854	2.78	2.08	1.39	1.04
		2.x and 1.x	220	940	3.05	2.29	1.53	1.15
4-port IPS module DS-X9304-SMIP		3.x	160	683	2.22	1.67	1.11	0.83
		2.x and 1.x	185	789	2.57	1.93	1.28	0.96
32-port SSM DS-X9032-SSM		3.x	281	1200	3.90	2.93	1.95	1.46
		2.x and 1.x	295	1260	4.10	3.07	2.05	1.54
32-port ASM DS-X9032-SMV		3.x	281	1200	3.90	2.93	1.95	1.46
		2.x and 1.x	295	1260	4.10	3.07	2.05	1.54
CSM DS-X9560-SMC		3.x	200	854	2.78	2.08	1.39	1.04
		2.x and 1.x	210	907	2.95	2.22	1.48	1.11
48-port 8-Gbps switching module, DS-X9248-96K9	4.x		298	1273	4.14	3.11	2.07	1.55
24-port 8-Gbps switching module, DS-X9224-96K	4.x		273	1163	3.79	2.84	1.90	1.42
4/44-port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized switching module, DS-X9248-48K9	4.x		214	915	2.98	2.23	1.49	1.12

**Table D-17 Power Requirements and Heat Dissipation for the 1900-W DC Power Supply**

Module Type/ Product Number	SAN-OS Release	Power Required (watts)	Heat Dissipation (BTU/hr)	Input Current	
				48 VDC (amps)	60 VDC (amps)
Cisco MDS 9506 chassis with fan module DS-C9506	3.x	126	573	3.50	2.80
	2.x and 1.x	126	573	3.50	2.80

**[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)**

**Table D-17 Power Requirements and Heat Dissipation for the 1900-W DC Power Supply (continued)**

Module Type/ Product Number	SAN-OS Release	Power Required (watts)	Heat Dissipation (BTU/hr)	Input Current	
				48 VDC (amps)	60 VDC (amps)
Supervisor/fabric 1 DS-X9530-SF1	3.x	210	956	5.83	4.67
	2.x and 1.x	220	1000	6.10	4.88
32-port 1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel module DS-X9032	3.x	191	869	5.31	4.24
	2.x and 1.x	200	911	5.56	4.45
16-port 1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel module DS-X9016	3.x	210	956	5.83	4.67
	2.x and 1.x	220	1000	6.10	4.88
18/4 Multiservice module, DS-X9304-18K9	3.2.(1)	200	855	2.78	2.08
MPS-14/2 module DS-X9302-14K9	3.x	200	910	5.56	4.44
	2.x and 1.x	227	970	3.15	2.37
8-port IPS module DS-X9308-SMIP	3.x	200	910	5.56	4.44
	2.x and 1.x	220	1000	6.10	4.88
4-port IPS module DS-X9304-SMIP	3.x	160	728	4.44	3.56
	2.x and 1.x	185	841	5.14	4.11
32-port SSM DS-X9032-SSM	3.x	281	1279	7.81	6.24
	2.x and 1.x	295	1342	8.19	6.56
32-port ASM DS-X9032-SMV	3.x	281	1279	7.81	6.24
	2.x and 1.x	295	1342	8.19	6.56
CSM DS-X9560-SMC	3.x	200	910	5.56	4.44
	2.x and 1.x	210	955	5.83	4.66

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## AC Power Consumption for the Cisco MDS 9506 Director

Table D-18 shows the typical AC power consumption for the Cisco MDS 9506 Director.

**Table D-18** Typical AC Power Consumption for a Cisco MDS 9506 Director

Module Type / Product Number	Typical AC Power Consumption (Watts)
Cisco MDS 9506 chassis, DS-C9506, with fan module, and two Supervisor-2 (DS-X9530-SF2-K9)	395
Cisco MDS 9506 chassis, DS-C9506, with fan module, and two Supervisor-1 (DS-X9530-SF1-K9)	624
48-port 4-Gbps switching module, DS-X9148	181
24-port 4-Gbps switching module, DS-X9124	127
12-port 4-Gbps switching module, DS-X9112	107
4-Port 10-Gbps switching module, DS-X9704	162
32-port 1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel module, DS-X9032	174
16-port 1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel module, DS-X9016	144
MPS-14/2 module, DS-X9302-14K9	178
32-port SSM, DS-X9032-SSM	211
8-port IPS module, DS-X9308-SMIP	175
4-port IPS module, DS-X9304-SMIP	128
48-port 8-Gbps switching module, DS-X9248-96K9	230
24-port 8-Gbps switching module, DS-X9224-96K	221
4/44-port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized switching module, DS-X9248-48K9	175

## X2 Transceiver Specifications

The Cisco MDS 9500 Series is compatible with X2 transceivers and cables that have SC connectors. Each transceiver must match the transceiver on the other end of the cable in terms of wavelength, and the cable must not exceed the stipulated cable length for reliable communications.

Use only Cisco X2 transceivers on the Cisco MDS 9500 Series Switches. Each Cisco X2 transceiver is encoded with the model information that enables the switch to verify that the SFP transceiver meets the requirements for the switch.

For information about safety, regulatory, and standards compliance, refer to the *Regulatory Compliance and Safety Information for the Cisco MDS 9000 Family*.

[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## Cisco 10-Gbps Fibre Channel X2 Transceivers

Table D-19 lists the Cisco 10-Gbps Fibre Channel X2 transceivers.

**Table D-19** Cisco 10-Gbps Fibre Channel X2 Transceivers

Transceiver Module Product Number	Description	Type
DS-X2-FC10G-SR	10-Gbps Fibre Channel SR, X2, SC	Short Reach
DS-X2-FC10G-LR	10-Gbps Fibre Channel LR, X2, SC	Long Reach
DS-X2-FC10G-ER	10-Gbps Fibre Channel ER, X2, SC	Extended Reach
DS-X2-FC10G-CX4	10-Gbps Fibre Channel Copper, X2, CX4	–

## General Specification for Cisco 10-Gbps Fibre Channel X2 Transceivers

Table D-20 provides the general specifications for Cisco 10-Gbps Fibre Channel X2 transceivers.

**Table D-20** General Specifications for the Cisco 10-Gbps Fibre Channel X2 Transceivers

X2	Wavelength (nanometer)	Fiber Type	Core Size (micron)	Baud Rate (GBd)	Cable Distance
DS-X2-FC10G-SR	850	MMF	62.5	10.51875	33 m (108 ft)
			50.0 (OM3)	10.51875	300 m (984 ft)
DS-X2-FC10G-LR	1310	SMF	9.0	10.51875	24.8 miles (40 km)
DS-X2-FC10G-ER	1550	SMF	9.0	10.51875	6.2 miles (10 km)
DS-X2-FC10G-CX4	–	Copper	–	10.51875	15 m (49.2 ft)



### Note

The minimum cable distance for all the transceivers, such as multimode fiber (MMF) and single-mode fiber (SMF), except CX4 which is 2 meters (6.5 feet).

## Environmental Conditions and Power Requirement Specifications for Cisco 10-Gbps Fibre Channel X2 Transceivers

Table D-21 provides the power requirement specifications for Cisco 10-Gbps Fibre Channel X2 transceivers.

**Table D-21** Power Requirement Specifications for Cisco 10-Gbps Fibre Channel X2 Transceivers

X2	Average Transmit Power (dBm)		Average Receive Power (dBm)		Fiber Loss Budget (dBm)
	Maximum	Minimum	Maximum	Minimum	
DS-X2-FC10G-SR	-1.2	-7.3	-1.0	-9.9	2.6 (50.0 micron-OM3)
DS-X2-FC10G-LR	0.5	-8.2	0.5	-14.4	6.2
DS-X2-FC10G-ER	4.0	-4.7	-1.0	-15.8	11.1



**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**



**Note**

DS-X2-FC10G-CX4 is not an optical module; therefore, it is not listed in [Table D-21](#).

[Table D-22](#) provides the environmental specifications for the Cisco 10-Gbps Fibre Channel X2 transceivers.

**Table D-22 Environmental Specifications for the Cisco 10- Gbps Fibre Channel X2 Transceivers**

X2	Operating		Storage	
	Maximum	Minimum	Maximum	Minimum
DS-X2-FC10G-SR	40°C	0°C	85°C	-40°C
DS-X2-FC10G-LR	40°C	0°C	85°C	-40°C
DS-X2-FC10G-ER	40°C	0°C	85°C	-40°C
DS-X2-FC10G-CX4	40°C	0°C	85°C	-40°C

For information about safety, regulatory, and standards compliance, refer to the *Regulatory Compliance and Safety Information for the Cisco MDS 9000 Family*.

## Cisco 10-Gbps Ethernet X2 Transceivers

[Table D-23](#) lists the Cisco 10-Gbps Ethernet X2 transceivers.

**Table D-23 Cisco 10-Gbps Ethernet X2 Transceivers**

Transceiver Module Product Number	Description	Type
DS-X2-E10G-SR	10-Gbps Ethernet Short Reach, X2, SC	Short reach

## General Specification for Cisco 10-Gbps Ethernet X2 Transceivers

[Table D-24](#) provides the general specifications for Cisco 10-Gbps Ethernet X2 transceivers.

**Table D-24 General Specifications for the Cisco 10-Gbps Ethernet X2 Transceivers**

X2	Wavelength (nanometer)	Fiber Type	Core Size (micron)	Baud Rate (GBd)	Cable Distance
DS-X2-E10G-SR	850	MMF	62.5	10.312	33 (108 ft)
			50.0	10.312	300 (984 ft)



**Note**

The minimum cable distance for the MMF transceiver listed above is 2 meters (6.5 feet).

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

## Environmental and Power Requirements Specifications for Cisco 10-Gbps Ethernet X2 Transceiver

Table D-25 provides the power requirement specifications for the Cisco 10-Gbps Ethernet X2 transceiver.

**Table D-25 Power Requirement Specification for Cisco 10-Gbps Ethernet X2 Transceivers**

X2	Average Transmit Power (dBm)		Average Receive Power (dBm)		Fiber Loss Budget (dBm)
	Maximum	Minimum	Maximum	Minimum	
DS-X2-E10G-SR	-1.2	-7.3	-1.0	-9.9	2.6 (50.0 micron-OM3)

Table D-26 provides the environmental specifications for the Cisco 10-Gbps Ethernet X2 transceivers.

**Table D-26 Environmental Specifications for Cisco 10-Gbps Ethernet X2 Transceiver**

X2	Operating		Storage	
	Maximum	Minimum	Maximum	Minimum
DS-X2-E10G-SR	40°C	0°C	85°C	-40°C

For information about safety, regulatory, and standards compliance, refer to the *Regulatory Compliance and Safety Information for the Cisco MDS 9000 Family*.

## Cisco 10-Gbps Ethernet DWDM X2 Transceiver

The Cisco 10-Gbps Ethernet DWDM X2 Transceiver pluggable module (DWDM-X2-xx.xx=) provides high-performance Fibre Channel connectivity for the Cisco MDS 9000 family 10-Gbps Fibre Channel switching module to an existing Ethernet DWDM infrastructure. The data format transmitted by the Ethernet DWDM X2 transceiver on the fiber is identical to that transmitted by the Fibre Channel X2 transceiver, except that the Fibre Channel packets are clocked at the 10-Gigabit Ethernet rate.

The main features of the Cisco 10-Gbps Ethernet DWDM X2 Transceiver include:

- Support for 32 nontunable ITU 100-GHz wavelengths compatible with the Cisco ONS DWDM channel plan.
- Support for digital optical monitoring capability.

For more information, refer to the data sheet at:

<http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps6576/index.html>

## SFP and SFP+ Transceiver Specifications

The Cisco MDS 9500 Series is compatible with SFP and SFP+ transceivers and cables that have LC connectors. The wavelength of each transceiver must match the transceiver on the other end of the cable, and the cable must not exceed the stipulated cable length for reliable communications.

Cisco SFP and SFP+ transceivers provide the uplink interfaces, laser transmit (TX) and laser receive (RX), and support 850 to 1610 nm nominal wavelengths, depending upon the transceiver.

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

Use only Cisco SFP transceivers on the Cisco MDS 9500 Series. Each Cisco SFP transceiver is encoded with model information that enables the switch to verify that the SFP transceiver meets the requirements for the switch.



**Note**

Generation 2 modules will not support 1-Gbps/2-Gbps SFPs. Generation 2 modules only support 4-Gbps SFPs.

This section provides the following topics:

- [Cisco Fibre Channel SFP and SFP+ Transceivers, page D-23](#)
- [Cisco Fibre Channel and Gigabit Ethernet Transceivers, page D-28](#)
- [Cisco CWDM SFP Transceivers, page D-30](#)
- [Cisco Gigabit Ethernet Transceivers, page D-34](#)
- [Cisco DWDM SFP Transceivers, page D-34](#)

## Cisco Fibre Channel SFP and SFP+ Transceivers

[Table D-27](#) lists the Cisco 2-Gbps and 4-Gbps SFP, and 8-Gbps SFP+ Fibre Channel transceivers.

**Table D-27** *Cisco 2-Gbps and 4-Gbps SFP, and 8-Gbps SFP+ Fibre Channel Transceivers*

Transceiver Module Product Number	Description	Type
DS-SFP-FC4G-SW	1/2/4-Gbps Fibre Channel SW, SFP, LC	Short wavelength
DS-SFP-FC4G-MR	1/2/4-Gbps Fibre Channel LW 4-km, SFP, LC	Long wavelength
DS-SFP-FC4G-LW	1/2/4-Gbps Fibre Channel LW 10-km, SFP, LC	Long wavelength
DS-SFP-FC-2G-SW	1/2-Gbps Fibre Channel SW, SFP, LC	Short wavelength
DS-SFP-FC-2G-LW	1/2-Gbps Fibre Channel LW, SFP, LC	Long wavelength
DS-SFP-FC8G-SW	2/4/8-Gbps Fibre Channel SW, SFP+, LC	Short wavelength
DS-SFP-FC8G-LW	2/4/8-Gbps Fibre Channel LW, SFP+, LC	Long wavelength

**[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)**

## General Specifications for Cisco 8-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP+ Transceivers

Table D-28 provides the general specifications for Cisco Fibre Channel SFP+ transceivers.

**Table D-28 General Specifications for Cisco 8-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP+ Transceivers**

SFP	Wavelength (nanometer)	Fiber Type	Core Size (micron)	Baud Rate (GBd)	Cable Distance (meter)
DS-SFP-FC8G-SW	850	MMF	62.5	2.125	150 m (492 ft)
			62.5	4.250	70 m (230 ft)
			62.5	8.500	21 m (69 ft)
			50.0 (OM2)	2.125	300 m (984 ft)
			50.0 (OM2)	4.250	150 m (492 ft)
			50.0(OM2)	8.500	50 m (164 ft)
			50. 0 (OM3)	2.125	500 m (1640 ft)
			50. 0 (OM3)	4.250	380 m (1246 ft)
			50. 0 (OM3)	8.500	150 m (492 ft)
DS-SFP-FC8G-LW	1310	SMF	9.0	2.125	6.2 miles (10 km)
			9.0	4.250	6.2 miles (10 km)
			9.0	8.500	6.2 miles (10 km)

## Environmental and Power Requirements for Cisco 8-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP+ Transceivers

Table D-29 provides the power specification for the Cisco 8-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP+ transceivers.

**Table D-29 Power Requirements Specification for Cisco 8-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP+ Transceivers**

SFP	Average Transmit Power (dBm)		Average Receive Power (dBm)		Fiber Loss Budget (dBm)		
	Maximum	Minimum	Maximum	Minimum			
DS-SFP-FC8G-SW	-1.3	-10 (2 Gbps) -9 (4 Gbps) -8.2 (8 Gbps)	0	-	62.5 microns	50.0 microns [OM2]	50.0 microns [OM3]

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Table D-29 Power Requirements Specification for Cisco 8-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP+ Transceivers (continued)**

SFP	Average Transmit Power (dBm)		Average Receive Power (dBm)		Fiber Loss Budget (dBm)		
	Maximum	Minimum	Maximum	Minimum			
					2.10 (2 Gbps)	2.62 (2 Gbps)	3.31 (2 Gbps)
					1.78 (4 Gbps)	2.06 (4 Gbps)	2.88 (4 Gbps)
					1.58 (8 Gbps)	1.68 (8 Gbps)	2.04 (8 Gbps)
DS-SFP-FC8G-LW	-3 (2 Gbps)	-11.7 (2 Gbps)	-3 (2 Gbps)	-	7.8 (2 Gbps)		
	-1 (4 Gbps)	-8.4 (4 Gbps)	-1 (4 Gbps)		7.8 (4 Gbps)		
	+0.5 (8 Gbps)	-8.4 (8 Gbps)	+0.5 (8 Gbps)		6.4 (8 Gbps)		

Table D-30 provides the environment specification for the Cisco 8-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP+ transceivers.

**Table D-30 Environmental Specifications for Cisco 8-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP+ Transceivers**

SFP	Operating		Storage	
	Maximum	Minimum	Maximum	Minimum
DS-SFP-FC8G-SW	40°C	0°C	85°C	-40°C
DS-SFP-FC8G-LW	40°C	0°C	85°C	-40°C

For information about safety, regulatory, and standards compliance, refer to the *Regulatory Compliance and Safety Information for the Cisco MDS 9000 Family*.

[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## General Specifications for Cisco 4-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP Transceivers

Table D-31 provides the general specifications for Cisco Fibre Channel SFP transceivers.

**Table D-31** General Specifications for Cisco 4-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP Transceivers

SFP	Wavelength (nanometer)	Fiber Type	Core Size (micron)	Baud Rate (GBd)	Cable Distance (meter)
DS-SFP-FC4G-SW	850	MMF	62.5	1.0625	300 m (984 ft)
			62.5	2.125	150 m (492 ft)
			62.5	4.250	70 m (230 ft)
			50.0 (OM2)	1.0625	500 m (1640 ft)
			50.0 (OM2)	2.125	300 m (984 ft)
			50.0(OM2)	4.250	150 m (492 ft)
			50. 0 (OM3)	1.0625	860 m (2821 ft)
			50. 0 (OM3)	2.125	500 m (1640 ft)
			50. 0 (OM3)	4.250	380 m (1246 ft)
DS-SFP-FC4G-MR	1310	SMF	9.0	1.0625	6.2 miles (10 km)
			9.0	2.125	2.4 miles (4 km)
			9.0	4.250	2.4 miles (4 km)
DS-SFP-FC4G-LW	1310	SMF	9.0	1.0625	6.2 miles (10 km)
			9.0	2.125	6.2 miles (10 km)
			9.0	4.250	2.4 miles (4 km)



**Note**

The minimum cable distance for all the transceivers, such as MMF and SMF, is 2 meters (6.5 feet).

## Environmental and Power Requirement for Cisco 4-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP Transceivers

Table D-32 provides the power specification for the Cisco 4-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP transceivers.

**Table D-32** Power Requirement Specification for Cisco 4-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP Transceivers

SFP	Average Transmit Power (dBm)		Average Receive Power (dBm)		Fiber Loss Budget (dBm)
	Maximum	Minimum	Maximum	Minimum	
DS-SFP-FC4G-SW	-2.5	-9	0	–	1.78 (62.5 micron), 2.06 (50 micron - OM2), 2.88 (50 micron - OM3)
DS-SFP-FC4G-MR	-3	-11.2	-1	–	4.8
DS-SFP-FC4G-LW	-3	-8.4	-1.0	–	7.8

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

Table D-33 provides the environment specification for the Cisco 4-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP transceivers.

**Table D-33 Environmental Specifications for Cisco 4-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP Transceivers**

SFP	Operating		Storage	
	Maximum	Minimum	Maximum	Minimum
DS-SFP-FC4G-SW	40°C	0°C	85°C	-40°C
DS-SFP-FC4G-MR	40°C	0°C	85°C	-40°C
DS-SFP-FC4G-LW	40°C	0°C	85°C	-40°C

For information about safety, regulatory, and standards compliance, refer to the *Regulatory Compliance and Safety Information for the Cisco MDS 9000 Family*.

## General Specifications for Cisco 2-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP Transceivers

Table D-34 provides general specification for the 4-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP transceiver.

**Table D-34 General Specifications for Cisco 4-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP Transceivers**

SFP	Wavelength (nanometer)	Fiber Type	Core Size (micron)	Baud Rate (GBd)	Cable Distance (meter)
DS-SFP-FC-2G-SW	850	MMF	62.5	1.0625	300 m (984 ft)
			62.5	2.125	150 m (492 ft)
			50.0 (OM2)	1.0625	500 m (1640 ft)
			50.0 (OM)	2.125	300 m (984 ft)
DS-SFP-FC-2G-LW	1310	SMF	9.0	1.0625	6.2 miles (10 km)
			9.0	2.125	6.2 miles (10 km)



**Note**

The minimum cable distance for both the transceivers, such as MMF and SMF, is 2 meters (6.5 feet).

## Environmental and Power Requirement for Cisco 2-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP Transceivers

Table D-35 provides the power specification for Cisco 2-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP transceivers.

**Table D-35 Power Requirement Specification for Cisco 2-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP Transceivers**

SFP	Average Transmit Power (dBm)		Average Receive Power (dBm)		Fiber Loss Budget (dBm)
	Maximum	Minimum	Maximum	Minimum	
DS-SFP-FC-2G-SW	-2.5	-10.0	0	–	2.1 (62.5 micron), 2.62 (50 micron -OM2)
DS-SFP-FC-2G-LW	-3	-11.7	-3	–	7.8

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

Table D-36 provides the environmental specification for Cisco 2-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP transceivers.

**Table D-36 Environmental Specifications for Cisco 2-Gbps Fibre Channel SFP Transceivers**

SFP	Operating		Storage	
	Maximum	Minimum	Maximum	Minimum
DS-SFP-FC-2G-SW	40°C	0°C	85°C	-40°C
DS-SFP-FC-2G-LW	40°C	0°C	85°C	-40°C

For information about safety, regulatory, and standards compliance, refer to the *Regulatory Compliance and Safety Information for the Cisco MDS 9000 Family*.

## Maximum Environmental and Electrical Ratings for Cisco Fibre Channel SFP Transceivers

Table D-37 provides the maximum environmental and electrical ratings for Cisco Fibre Channel SFP transceivers.

**Table D-37 Maximum Environmental and Electrical Ratings for Cisco Fibre Channel SFP Transceivers**

Parameter <sup>1</sup>	Symbol	Min.	Max. <sup>2</sup>	Unit	Notes
Storage temperature	T <sub>S</sub>	-40	85	°C	1
Case temperature	T <sub>C</sub>	0	70	°C	1, 2
Relative humidity	RH	5	95	%	1

- Do not operate outside the recommended operating conditions. Device reliability may be affected and damage to the device may occur over an extended period of time.
- Absolute maximum ratings are those values beyond which damage to the device may occur if these limits are exceeded for other than a short period of time.

For information about safety, regulatory, and standards compliance, refer to the *Regulatory Compliance and Safety Information for the Cisco MDS 9000 Family*.

## Cisco Fibre Channel and Gigabit Ethernet Transceivers

Table D-38 lists the combination Fibre Channel/Gigabit Ethernet SFP transceivers.

**Table D-38 Cisco Fibre Channel and Gigabit Ethernet SFP Transceivers**

Transceiver Module Product Number	Description	Type
DS-SFP-FCGE-LW	1-Gbps Ethernet and 1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel-LW SFP, LC	Long wavelength
DS-SFP-FCGE-SW	1-Gbps Ethernet and 1-Gbps/2-Gbps Fibre Channel-SW SFP, LC	Short wavelength



**[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)**

## General Specifications for Cisco Fibre Channel and Gigabit Ethernet SFP Transceivers

Table D-39 provides general specification for Cisco Fibre Channel and Gigabit Ethernet SFP transceiver.

**Table D-39** General Specifications for Cisco Fibre Channel and Gigabit Ethernet SFP Transceivers

SFP	Wavelength (nanometer)	Fiber Type	Core Size (micron)	Baud Rate (GBd)	Cable Distance (meter)
DS-SFP-FCGE-SW	850	MMF	62.5	1.0625	300 m (984 ft)
			62.5	2.125	150 m (492 ft)
			50.0 (OM2)	1.0625	500 m (1640 ft)
			50.0 (OM2)	2.125	300 m (984 ft)
DS-SFP-FCGE-LW	1310	SMF	9.0	1.0625	6.2 miles (10 km)
			9.0	2.125	6.2 miles (10 km)



**Note**

The minimum cable distance for both the transceivers listed above (multimode fiber (MMF)) and single-mode fiber (SMF) is 2 meters (6.5 feet).

## Environmental and Power Requirement Specifications for Cisco Fibre Channel and Gigabit Ethernet SFP Transceivers

Table D-40 provides the power requirement specification for Cisco Fibre Channel and Gigabit Ethernet SFP transceivers.

**Table D-40** Power Requirement Specification for Cisco Fibre Channel and Gigabit Ethernet SFP Transceivers

SFP	Average Transmit Power (dBm)		Average Receive Power (dBm)		Fiber Loss Budget (dBm)
	Maximum	Minimum	Maximum	Minimum	
DS-SFP-FCGE-SW	-1.2	-10.0 (FC) -9.5 (GE)	0	-17 (GE)	2.1 (FC - 62.5 micron), 2.62 (FC - 50.0 micron), 2.38 (GE - 62.5 micron), 3.37 (FC - 50.0 micron)
DS-SFP-FCGE-LW	-3	-11.0	-3	-19 (GE)	7.8 (FC) 4.57 (GE)

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

Table D-41 provides the environmental specification for Cisco Fibre Channel and Gigabit Ethernet SFP transceivers.

**Table D-41 Environmental Specifications for Cisco Fibre Channel and Gigabit Ethernet SFP Transceivers**

SFP	Operating		Storage	
	Maximum	Minimum	Maximum	Minimum
DS-SFP-FCGE-SW	40°C	0°C	85°C	-40°C
DS-SFP-FCGE-LW	40°C	0°C	85°C	-40°C

For information about safety, regulatory, and standards compliance, refer to the *Regulatory Compliance and Safety Information for the Cisco MDS 9000 Family*.

## Cisco CWDM SFP Transceivers

Table D-42 lists the Cisco 1-Gbps and 2-Gbps CWDM SFP transceivers.

**Table D-42 Cisco 1-Gbps and 2-Gbps CWDM SFP Transceivers**

Description	Color
Cisco CWDM SFP 1470 nm; Gigabit Ethernet and 1-Gbps/2-Gbps FC	Gray
Cisco CWDM SFP 1490 nm; Gigabit Ethernet and 1-Gbps/2-Gbps FC	Violet
Cisco CWDM SFP 1510 nm; Gigabit Ethernet and 1-Gbps/2-Gbps FC	Blue
Cisco CWDM SFP 1530 nm; Gigabit Ethernet and 1-Gbps/2-Gbps FC	Green
Cisco CWDM SFP 1550 nm; Gigabit Ethernet and 1-Gbps/2-Gbps FC	Yellow
Cisco CWDM SFP 1570 nm; Gigabit Ethernet and 1-Gbps/2-Gbps FC	Orange
Cisco CWDM SFP 1590 nm; Gigabit Ethernet and 1-Gbps/2-Gbps FC	Red
Cisco CWDM SFP 1610 nm; Gigabit Ethernet and 1-Gbps/2-Gbps FC	Brown

**[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)**

Table D-43 lists the Cisco 4-Gbps CWDM SFP transceivers available through Cisco.

**Table D-43 Cisco 4-Gbps CWDM SFP Transceivers**

Description	Color
DS-CWDM4G1470: Cisco MDS9000 1470 nm; CWDM 4-Gbps FC	Gray
DS-CWDM4G1490: Cisco MDS9000 1490 nm; CWDM 4-Gbps FC	Violet
DS-CWDM4G1510: Cisco MDS9000 1510 nm; CWDM 4-Gbps FC	Blue
DS-CWDM4G1530: Cisco MDS9000 1530 nm; CWDM 4-Gbps FC	Green
DS-CWDM4G1550: Cisco MDS9000 1550 nm; CWDM 4-Gbps FC	Yellow
DS-CWDM4G1570: Cisco MDS9000 1570 nm; CWDM 4-Gbps FC	Orange
DS-CWDM4G1590: Cisco MDS9000 1590 nm; CWDM 4-Gbps FC	Red
DS-CWDM4G1610: Cisco MDS9000 1610 nm; CWDM 4-Gbps FC	Brown

## Environmental and Optical Specifications for Cisco 2-Gbps CWDM SFP Transceivers

Table D-44 provides the environmental specifications for the Cisco 2-Gbps CWDM SFP transceivers.

**Table D-44 Environmental Specifications for Cisco 2-Gbps CWDM SFP Transceivers**

SFP	Operating		Storage	
	Maximum	Minimum	Maximum	Minimum
All Cisco 2-Gbps CWDM SFP Transceivers	40°C	0°C	85°C	-40°C

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

Table D-45 provides the optical specifications for the Cisco 2-Gbps CWDM SFP transceivers.

**Table D-45 Optical Specification for Cisco 2-Gbps CWDM SFP Transceivers**

Parameters	Symbol	Minimum	Typical	Maximum	Units	Notes/Conditions
Transmitter Center Wavelength	$\lambda_c$	x-4	–	x+7	nm	Available center wavelengths are 1470, 1490, 1510, 1530, 1550, 1570, 1590, and 1610 nm
Side-mode Suppression Ratio	SMSR	30	–	–	dB	–
Transmitter Optical Output Power	$P_{out}$	0.0	–	5.0	dBm	Average power coupled into single-mode fiber
Receiver Optical Input Power (BER <10 <sup>-12</sup> with PRBS 2-7-1)	$P_{in}$	-28.0	–	-7.0	dBm	At 2.12 Gbps, 140°F (60°C) case temperature
Receiver Optical Input Power (BER <10 <sup>-12</sup> with PRBS 2-7-1)	$P_{in}$	-29.0	–	-7.0	dBm	At 1.25 Gbps, 140°F (60°C) case temperature
Receiver Optical Input Wavelength	$\lambda_{in}$	1450	–	1620	nm	–
Transmitter Extinction Ratio	OMI	9	–	–	dB	–
Dispersion Penalty at 62.1 miles (100 km)	–	–	–	3	dB	At 2.12 Gbps
Dispersion Penalty at 62.1 miles (100 km)	–	–	–	2	dB	At 1.25 Gbps



**Note**

- Parameters are specified over temperature and at end of life unless otherwise noted.
- When shorted distances of single-mode fiber are used, it is necessary to insert an in-line optical attenuator in the link to avoid overloading the receiver.

For information about safety, regulatory, and standards compliance, refer to the *Regulatory Compliance and Safety Information for the Cisco MDS 9000 Family*.

[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## Environmental and Optical Specifications for Cisco 4-Gbps CWDM SFP Transceivers

Table D-46 provides the environmental specifications for the Cisco 4-Gbps CWDM SFP transceivers.

**Table D-46 Environmental Specifications for Cisco 4-Gbps CWDM SFP Transceivers**

SFP	Operating		Storage	
	Maximum	Minimum	Maximum	Minimum
All Cisco 4-Gbps CWDM SFP Transceivers	40°C	0°C	85°C	-40°C

Table D-47 provides the optical specifications for Cisco 4-Gbps CWDM SFP transceivers.

**Table D-47 Optical Specification for Cisco 4-Gbps CWDM SFP Transceivers**

Parameters	Symbol	Minimum	Typical	Maximum	Units	Notes/Conditions
Transmitter Center Wavelength	$\lambda_c$	(x-6)	x	x+6	nm	Available center wavelengths are 1470, 1490, 1510, 1530, 1550, 1570, 1590, and 1610 nm
Side-mode Suppression Ratio	SMSR	30	–	–	dB	–
Transmitter Optical Output Power	$P_{out}$	1.0	–	5.0	dBm	Average power coupled into single-mode fiber
Receiver Optical Input Power (BER <10 <sup>-12</sup> with PRBS 2-23-1)	$P_{in}$	-15.7	–	0.0	dBm	140°F (60°C) case temperature
Link Budget	–	17.8	–	–	dB	–
Receiver Optical Input Wavelength	$\lambda_{in}$	1450	–	1620	nm	–
Transmitter Extinction Ratio	OMI	4	–	–	dB	–
Dispersion Penalty at 62.1 miles (100 km)	–	–	–	3	dB	At 2.12 Gbps



### Note

- In typical point-to-point deployments, all wavelengths have a minimum reach of 24.8 miles (40 km).
- Parameters are specified over temperature and at end of life unless otherwise noted.
- When shorted distances of single-mode fiber are used, it is necessary to insert an in-line optical attenuator in the link to avoid overloading the receiver.
- A maximum of 24 4-Gbps CWDM SFPs are supported in a single MDS switching module.

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

- When interoperating a Cisco 4-Gbps CWDM SFP transceiver with a Cisco 1/2-Gbps CWDM transceiver, the speed of ports on the Cisco 4-Gbps CWDM SFP transceiver must be manually configured to 1-Gbps or 2-Gbps.

For information about safety, regulatory, and standards compliance, refer to the *Regulatory Compliance and Safety Information for the Cisco MDS 9000 Family*.

## Cisco Gigabit Ethernet Transceivers

A 1-Gbps Gigabit Ethernet SFP transceiver is provided on the Cisco MDS 9000 IPS modules. [Table D-48](#) lists the transceiver supported on the Cisco MDS 9216.

**Table D-48 Cisco Gigabit Ethernet SFP Transceivers**

Transceiver Module Product Number	Description
DS-SFP-GE-T	1-Gbps Ethernet SFP



**Note**

DS-SFP-GE-T is not supported on Cisco MDS 9222.

## General Specifications for Cisco Gigabit Ethernet Transceivers

[Table D-49](#) provides the general specification for the Cisco Gigabit Ethernet SFP transceiver.

**Table D-49 General Specification for the Cisco Gigabit Ethernet SFP Transceivers**

SFP	Cable Type	Cable Distance
DS-SFP-GE-T	Category 5 UTP	100 m (328 ft)

## Environmental and Power Requirement Specifications for Cisco Gigabit Ethernet Transceivers

[Table D-50](#) provides the environmental specifications for the Cisco Gigabit Ethernet transceivers.

**Table D-50 Environmental Specifications for Cisco Gigabit Ethernet Transceivers**

SFP	Operating		Storage	
	Maximum	Minimum	Maximum	Minimum
DS-SFP-GE-T	40°C	0°C	85°C	-40°C

For information about safety, regulatory, and standards compliance, refer to the *Regulatory Compliance and Safety Information for the Cisco MDS 9000 Family*.

## Cisco DWDM SFP Transceivers

The Cisco 2-Gbps DWDM SFP modules enable enterprises and service providers to provide scalable, easy-to-deploy DWDM Fibre Channel services in their networks.

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

The main features of the Cisco DWDM SFP include:

- Support for International Telecommunication Union (ITU) 100-GHz wavelength grid.
- Match for wavelength plan of Cisco ONS 100-GHz product family.
- Fixed-wavelength SFP with 32 SFP models.

**Note**

---

A single Cisco MDS 9000 family switching module supports up to eight 2-Gbps DWDM SFPs.

---

For more information, refer to the data sheet at:

[http://www.cisco.com/en/US/prod/collateral/modules/ps5455/ps6576/product\\_data\\_sheet0900aecd80582763.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/prod/collateral/modules/ps5455/ps6576/product_data_sheet0900aecd80582763.html).

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***





## Cable and Port Specifications

---

This appendix provides the cable and port specifications, and includes the following sections:

- [Cables and Adapters Provided, page E-1](#)
- [Console Port, page E-2](#)
- [COM1 Port, page E-3](#)
- [MGMT 10/100/1000 Ethernet Port, page E-4](#)
- [MGMT 10/100 Ethernet Port, page E-6](#)
- [Supported Power Cords and Plugs, page E-7](#)

## Cables and Adapters Provided

The Cisco MDS 9500 Series accessory kit includes the following items:

- RJ-45 rollover cable
- DB-9F/RJ-45F PC—RJ-45 to DB-9 female DTE adapter (labeled “Terminal”)
- RJ-45/DSUB F/F adapter—RJ-45 to DB-25 female DTE adapter (labeled “Terminal”)
- RJ-45/DSUB R/P adapter—RJ-45 to DB-25 male DCE adapter (labeled “Modem”)



**Note**

---

Additional cables and adapters can be ordered from your customer service representative.

---



**Note**

---

If you purchased Cisco support through a Cisco reseller, contact the reseller directly. If you purchased support directly from Cisco Systems, contact Cisco Technical Support at this URL:

<http://www.cisco.com/warp/public/687/Directory/DirTAC.shtm>

---

[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## Console Port

The console port is an asynchronous RS-232 serial port with an RJ-45 connector. You can use the RJ-45 rollover cable and the RJ-45/DSUB F/F adapter or the DB-9F/RJ-45F PC terminal adapter to connect the console port to a computer running terminal emulation software.

## Console Port Pinouts

Table E-1 lists the pinouts for the console port on the Cisco MDS 9500 Series.

**Table E-1 Console Port Pinouts**

Pin	Signal
1 <sup>1</sup>	RTS
2	DTR
3	TxD
4	GND
5	GND
6	RxD
7	DSR
8	CTS

1. Pin 1 is connected internally to pin 8.

## Connecting the Console Port to a Computer Using the DB-25 Adapter

You can use the RJ-45 rollover cable and RJ-45/DSUB F/F adapter (labeled “Terminal”) to connect the console port to a computer running terminal emulation software. Table E-2 lists the pinouts for the console port, the RJ-45 rollover cable, and the RJ-45/DSUB F/F adapter.

**Table E-2 Port Mode Signaling and Pinouts with the DB-25 Adapter**

Console Port Signal	RJ-45 Rollover Cable		RJ4-5/DSUB F/F Terminal Adapter	Console Device
	RJ-45 Pin	RJ-45 Pin	DB-25 Pin	Signal
RTS	1	8	5	CTS
DTR	2	7	6	DSR
TxD	3	6	3	RxD
GND	4	5	7	GND
GND	5	4	7	GND
RxD	6	3	2	TxD
DSR	7	2	20	DTR
CTS	8	1	4	RTS

[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

## Connecting the Console Port to a Computer Using the DB-9 Adapter

You can use the RJ-45 rollover cable and DB-9F/RJ-45F PC terminal (labeled “Terminal”) to connect the console port to a computer running terminal emulation software. [Table E-3](#) lists the pinouts for the console port, the RJ-45 rollover cable, and the DB-9F/RJ-45F PC terminal.

**Table E-3** Port Mode Signaling and Pinouts with the DB-9 Adapter

Console Port	RJ-45 Rollover Cable		DB9F/RJ45F PC Terminal	Console Device
Signal	RJ-45 Pin	RJ-45 Pin	DB-9 Pin	Signal
RTS	1	8	8	CTS
DTR	2	7	6	DSR
TxD	3	6	2	RxD
GND	4	5	5	GND
GND	5	4	5	GND
RxD	6	3	3	TxD
DSR	7	2	4	DTR
CTS	8	1	7	RTS

## COM1 Port

The COM1 port is a serial port with a DB-9 connector. The COM1 port can be connected to a modem using the cable and adapters provided in the accessory kit.

## COM1 Port Pinouts

[Table E-4](#) lists the pinouts for the COM1 port on the Cisco MDS 9500 Series.



**Note**

Additional cables and adapters can be ordered from your customer service representative.

**Table E-4** COM1 Port Pinouts

Pin	Signal
1	DCD
2	RxD
3	TxD
4	DTR
5	GND
6	DSR
7	RTS

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Table E-4** COM1 Port Pinouts (continued)

Pin	Signal
8	CTS
9	RI

## Connecting the COM1 Port to a Modem

You can use the DB-9F/RJ-45F PC terminal (labeled “Terminal”) to connect to the COM1 port, and the RJ-45/DSUB R/P adapter (labeled “Modem”) to connect to the modem. You can use the RJ-45 rollover cable to connect these adapters.

Table E-5 lists the pinouts for the COM1 port, the DB-9F/RJ-45F PC terminal, RJ-45 rollover cable, and the RJ-45/DSUB R/P adapter.

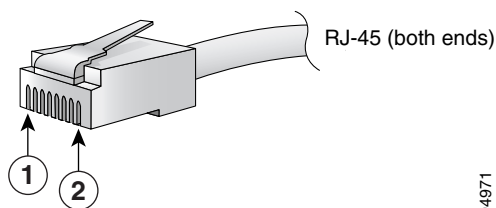
**Table E-5** Port Mode Signaling and Pinouts for Modem with DB-25 Connection

COM1 Port	DB-9F/RJ45F PC terminal	RJ-45 Rollover Cable		RJ-45/DSUB R/P Adapter	Modem
Signal	DB-9 Pin	RJ-45 Pin	RJ-45 Pin	DB-25 Pin	Signal
CTS	8	8	1	5	CTS
DSR	6	7	2	8	DCD
RxD	2	6	3	3	RxD
GND	5	5	4	7	GND
GND	5	4	5	7	GND
TxD	3	3	6	2	TxD
DTR	4	2	7	20	DTR
RTS	7	1	8	4	RTS

## MGMT 10/100/1000 Ethernet Port

The MGMT 10/100/1000 Ethernet port is an Ethernet port with an RJ-45 connector. You can use a modular, RJ-45, straight-through UTP cable to connect the management port to an external hub, switch, or router (see Figure E-1).

**Figure E-1** RJ-45 Interface Cable Connector



<b>1</b>	Pin 1	<b>2</b>	Pin 8
----------	-------	----------	-------

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

Table E-6 lists the connector pinouts and signal names for a 10/100/1000BASE-T management port (MDI) cable.



**Note**

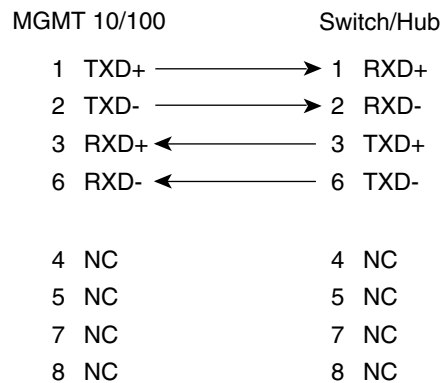
The RJ-45 interface only uses pins 1, 2, 3, and 6.

**Table E-6 10/100/1000BASE-T Management Port Cable Pinout (MDI)**

Pin	Signal
1	TD+
2	TD-
3	RD+
6	RD-
4	Not used
5	Not used
7	Not used
8	Not used

Figure E-2 shows a schematic of the 10/100/1000BASE-T cable required to connect the management port to a switch or hub (not provided with the switch).

**Figure E-2 Twisted-Pair 10/100/1000BASE-T Cable Schematic**



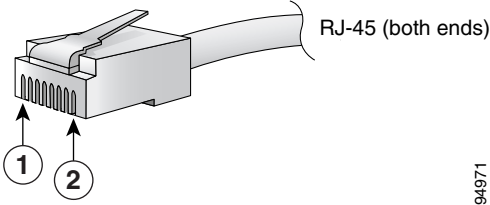
99343

Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).

# MGMT 10/100 Ethernet Port

The MGMT 10/100 Ethernet port is an Ethernet port with an RJ-45 connector. You can use a modular, RJ-45, straight-through UTP cable to connect the management port to an external hub, switch, or router (see Figure E-3).

Figure E-3 RJ-45 Interface Cable Connector



1	Pin 1	2	Pin 8
---	-------	---	-------

Table E-7 lists the connector pinouts and signal names for a 10/100BASE-T management port (MDI) cable.

  
**Note**

The RJ-45 interface only uses pins 1, 2, 3, and 6.

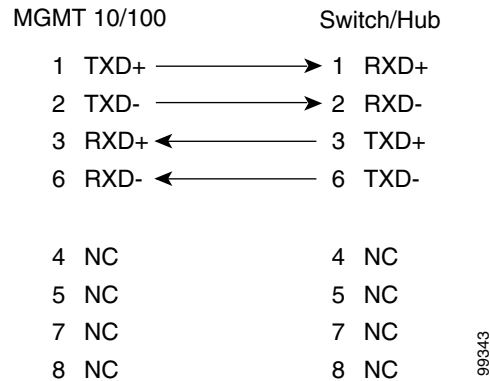
Table E-7 10/100BASE-T Management Port Cable Pinout (MDI)

Pin	Signal
1	TD+
2	TD-
3	RD+
6	RD-
4	Not used
5	Not used
7	Not used
8	Not used

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

Figure E-4 shows a schematic of the 10/100BASE-T cable required to connect the management port to a switch or hub (not provided with the switch).

**Figure E-4 Twisted-Pair 10/100BASE-T Cable Schematic**



## Supported Power Cords and Plugs

Each power supply has a separate power cord. Standard power cords or jumper power cords are available for connection to a power distribution unit having IEC 60320 C19 outlet receptacles. The jumper power cords, for use in cabinets, are available as an optional alternative to the standard power cords.

### Power Cords

The standard power cords have an IEC C19 connector on the end that plugs into the switch. The optional jumper power cords have an IEC C19 connector on the end that plugs into the switch, and an IEC C20 connector on the end that plugs into an IEC C19 outlet receptacle.



**Note**

Only the regular power cords or jumper power cords provided with the switch are supported.

Table E-8 lists the power cords for the Cisco MDS 9500 Series switches and provides their lengths in feet and meters.

**Table E-8 Power Cords for the MDS 9500 Series Switches**

Description	Length	
	Feet	Meters
<b>MDS 9513 and MDS 9509 - 3000W Power Supply</b>		
Power Cord, 125VAC 20A NEMA 5-20 Plug, North America/Japan	14	4.27
Power Cord, 250VAC 16A US/Japan, Src Plug NEMA 6-20	13.16	4
Power Cord, 250VAC 16A US/Japan, Src Plug NEMA L6-20	13.58	4.14

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Table E-8 Power Cords for the MDS 9500 Series Switches (continued)**

Description	Length	
	Feet	Meters
Power Cord, 250VAC 16A Europe, Src Plug CEE 7/7	13.65	4
Power Cord, 250VAC 16A International, Src Plug IEC 309	13.58	4.14
Power Cord, 250VAC 16A Switzerland, Src Plug SEV 5934-2 Type 23	8	2.5
Power Cord, 250VAC 16A South Africa, Src Plug EL208, SABS 164-1	14	4.27
Power Cord, 250VAC 16A Israel, Src Plug SI16S3	14	4.27
Power Cord, 250VAC 16A China, Src Plug GB16C	14	4.27
Power Cord, 250VAC 16A Australia, Src Plug AU20S3	14.76	4.5
Power Cord, 250VAC 16A Korea, Src Plug CEE (7) VII	14.83	4.5
Cabinet Jumper Power Cord, 250VAC 16A, C20-C19 Connectors	9	2.74
<b>MDS 9509 - 2500W Power Supply</b>		
Power Cord, 250VAC 20A NEMA, 6-20 Plug, USA	13.12	4
Power Cord, 250VAC 20A NEMA L6-20 Twist Lock Plug, USA	13.58	4.14
Power Cord, 250VAC 16A CEE 7/7 Plug, EU	13.12	4
Power Cord, 250VAC 16A IEC 309 Plug, International	13.58	4.14
Power Cord, 250VAC 16A SEV 1011 Plug, Switzerland	8	2.44
Power Cord, 250VAC SABS 1661 Plug, South Africa	14	4.27
Power Cord, 250VAC 16A SI16S3 Plug, Israel	14	4.27
Cabinet Jumper Power Cord, 250VAC 16A, C20-C19 Connectors	9	2.74
<b>MDS 9506</b>		
Power Cord, 250VAC 20A NEMA 6-20 Plug, US	13.94	4.25
Power Cord, 250VAC 20A NEMA L6-20 Twist Lock Plug, US	13.94	4.25
Power Cord, 250VAC 16A CEE 7/7 Plug, EU	13.94	4.25
Power Cord, 250VAC 16A IEC 309 Plug, INTL	13.94	4.25
Power Cord, 250VAC SEV 1011 Plug, SWITZ	13.94	4.25
Power Cord, 250VAC SABS 1661 Plug, South Africa	13.94	4.25
Power Cord, 250VAC 16A SI16S3 Plug, Israel	13.94	4.25
Power Cord, 250VAC 13A BS1363 Plug (13A fuse), UK	13.94	4.25
Power Cord, 250VAC 10A GB1002 Plug, China	13.94	4.25
Power Cord, 250VAC 13A KSC8305 Plug, Korea	13.94	4.25
Power Cord, 250VAC 15A CNS10917-2 Plug, Taiwan	13.94	4.25
Cabinet Jumper Power Cord, 250VAC 16A C20-C19 Connectors	9	2.74

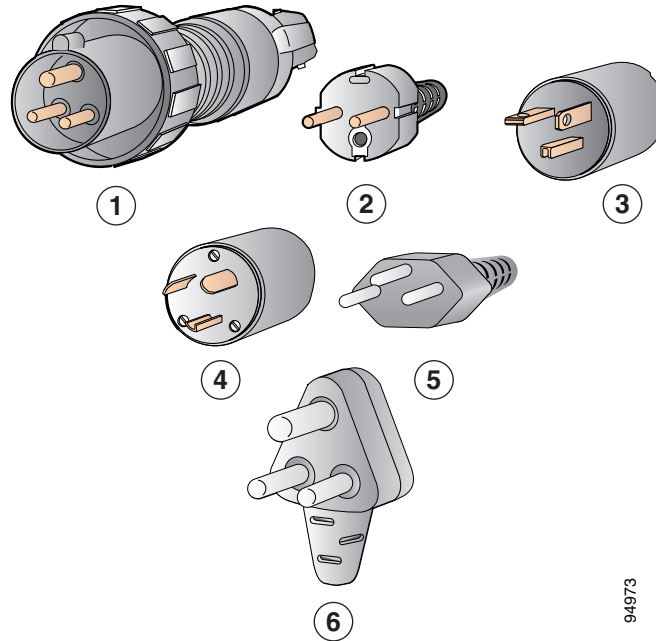


***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## Supported Plugs for 6000-W AC, 2500-W AC, and 1900-W AC Power Supplies

Figure E-5 shows the supported plugs for the 6000-W AC, 3000-W AC, 2500-W AC, and 1900-W AC power supplies.

**Figure E-5** 6000-W AC, 3000-W AC, 2500-W AC, and 1900-W AC Power Supply Plugs



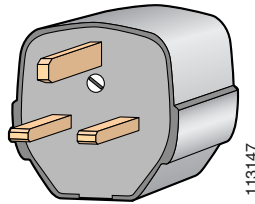
94973

<b>1</b>	International (6000 W, 3000 W, 2500 W, and 1900 W) IEC 309 (20 A)	<b>4</b>	North America (locking) (6000 W, 3000 W, 2500 W, and 1900 W) NEMA L6-20 plug (20 A)
<b>2</b>	Europe (6000 W, 3000 W, 2500 W, and 1900 W) CEE 7/7 (16 A)	<b>5</b>	Switzerland (6000 W, 3000 W, 2500 W, and 1900 W) 23 G SEV 1011 (16 A)
<b>3</b>	North America (non-locking) (6000 W, 3000 W, 2500 W, and 1900 W) NEMA 6-20 plug (20 A)	<b>6</b>	South Africa (6000 W, 3000 W, 2500 W, and 1900 W) EL 208, SABS 164-1 (16 A)

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

Figure E-6 shows an additional plug that is supported for the 1900-W AC power supply only.

**Figure E-6 Additional Power Supply Plug Supported for 1900-W Only**



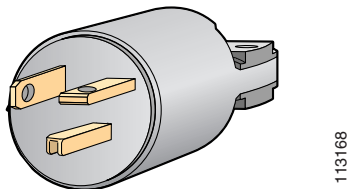
- |          |  |
|----------|--|
| <b>1</b> | United Kingdom<br>BS89/13, BS 1363/A<br>(13 A; replaceable fuse) |
|----------|--|

Figure E-7 shows an additional plug that is supported for the 3000-W and 2500-W power supply, using 110 VAC.



**Note** Using the plug in Figure E-7 at 110 VAC results in 1300 W available to the system.

**Figure E-7 Additional Power Supply Plug Supported for 3000-W and 2500-W 110 VAC Only**



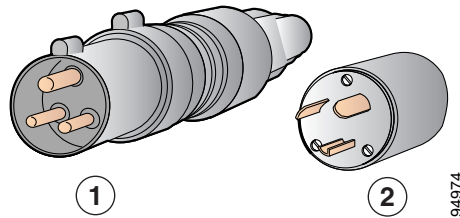
- |          |  |
|----------|--|
| <b>1</b> | NEMA 5-20P<br>North American power cord product ID: CAB-7513AC<br>110 VAC (20 A) |
|----------|--|

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## Supported Plugs for the 4000-W AC Power Supply

Figure E-8 shows the supported plugs for the 4000-W AC power supply. The power cable on the 4000 W power supply is nondetachable.

**Figure E-8** 4000-W Power Supply Plugs

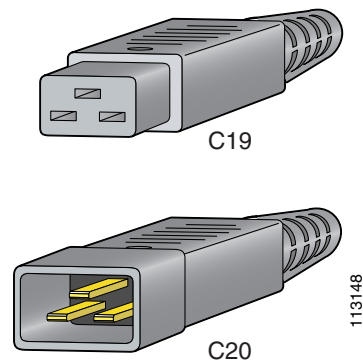


<b>1</b>	International (4000-W power supply) IEC 60309 (3 0A, 250 V)	<b>2</b>	North America (Locking) (4000-W power supply) NEMA L6-30 plug (30 A, 250 V)
----------	---	----------	---

## Jumper Power Cord

Figure E-9 shows the C19 and C20 connectors on the optional jumper power cord for the Cisco MDS 9500 Series. The C19 connector plugs into the C20 inlet on the Cisco MDS 9500 Series power supply, while the C20 connector plugs into the C19 receptacle of a power distribution unit for a cabinet.

**Figure E-9** End of C19 and C20 Connectors on Jumper Power Cord for Cisco MDS 9500 Series



<b>1</b>	C19 and C20 connectors on jumper power cord for Cisco 9500 Series Power cord product ID:CAB-C19-CBN 250 VAC 16 A, C20-C19 connectors
----------	--

**[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)**

## Power Supply AC Power Cords

Table E-9 lists the specifications for the 6000 W AC power cords that are available for the AC-input power supply. Included in the table are references to illustrations of the power cords.

**Table E-9** Power Supply AC Power Cords

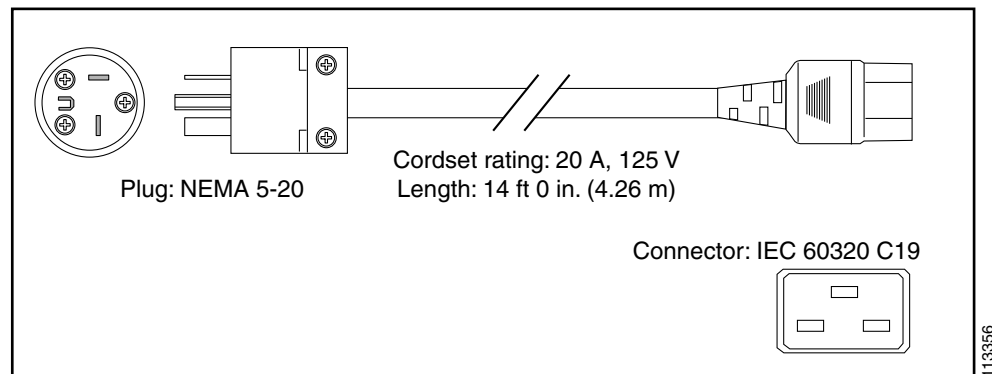
Locale	Power Cord Part Number	Source Plug Type	Cordset Rating	Power Cord Reference Illustration
North America/Japan	CAB-9K2A-NA	NEMA 5-20	20 A, 125 VAC	<a href="#">Figure E-10</a>
US/Japan	CAB-9K16A-US2	NMEA L6-20	16 A, 250 VAC	<a href="#">Figure E-11</a>
Australia	CAB-9K16A-AUS	AU20S3	16 A, 250 VAC	<a href="#">Figure E-12</a>
China	CAB-9k16A-CH	GB16C	16 A, 250 VAC	<a href="#">Figure E-13</a>
Switzerland	CAB-9K16A-SW	SEV 5934	16 A 250 VAC	<a href="#">Figure E-14</a>
Continental Europe	CAB-9K16A-EU	CEE7/7	16 A 250 VAC	<a href="#">Figure E-15</a>
Cabinet Jumper Power Cord	CAB-C19-CBN	C 20-C19	16 A 250 VAC	<a href="#">Figure E-16</a>

[Send documentation comments to mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com.](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com)

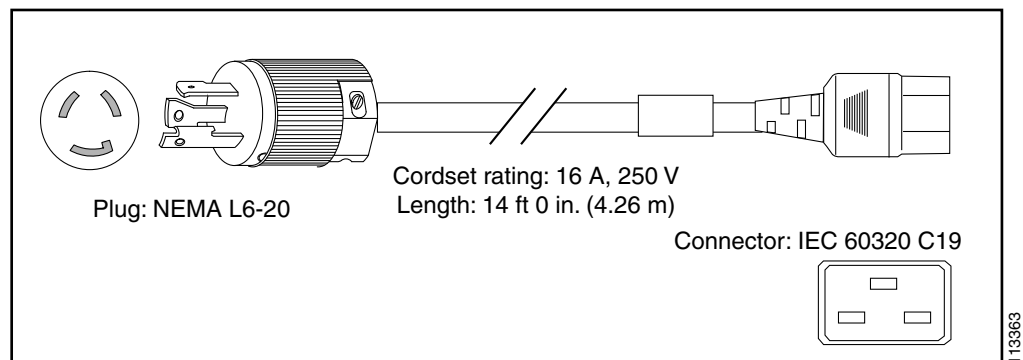
## AC Power Cord Illustrations

This section contains the AC power cord illustrations. An AC power cord can be used with several power supplies. See the power supply specifications tables for the correct AC power cord illustrations for your power supply.

**Figure E-10 CAB-9K20A-NA**

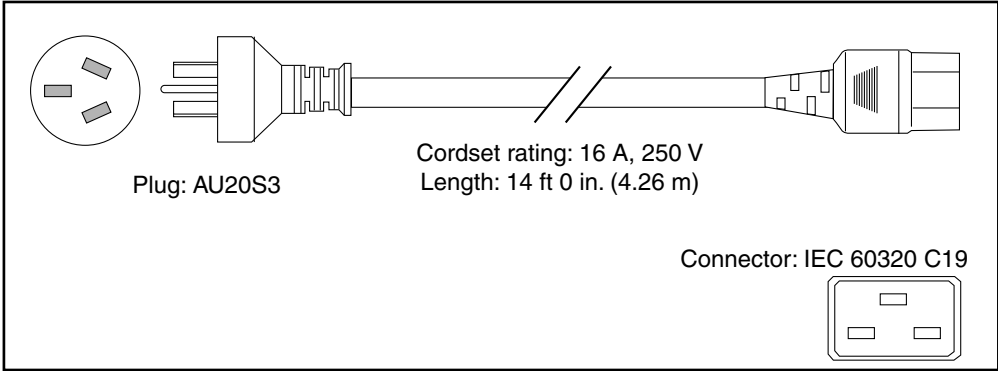


**Figure E-11 CAB-9K16A-US2**



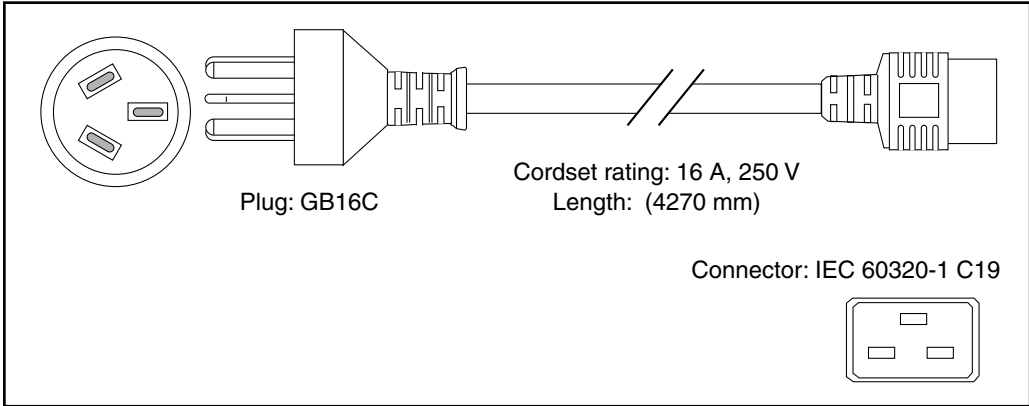
Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).

Figure E-12 CAB-9K16A-AUS



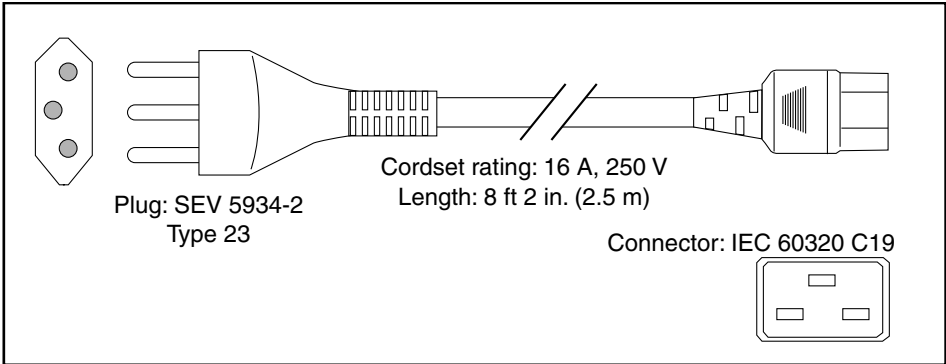
140586

Figure E-13 CAB-9K16A-CH



185066

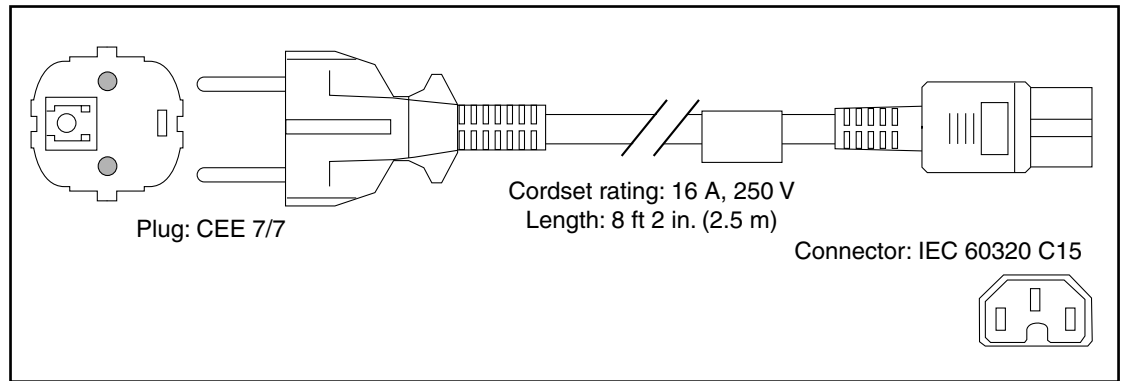
Figure E-14 CAB-9K16A-SW



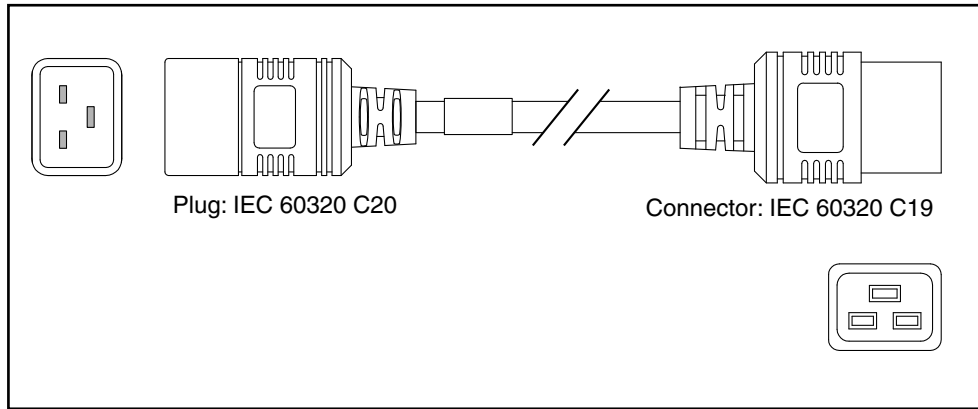
113364

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure E-15 CAB-9K16A-EU**



**Figure E-16 CAB-C19-CBN**



***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***





## APPENDIX **F**

# Site Planning and Maintenance Records

---

This appendix provides a Site Planning list and includes the following records to use when installing the Cisco MDS 9500 Series:

- [Contacting Customer Service, page F-1](#)
- [Site Preparation Checklist, page F-4](#)
- [Contact and Site Information, page F-6](#)
- [Chassis and Module Information, page F-7](#)



**Note**

---

For information on how to query the switch for configuration information, see *Cisco MDS 9000 Family CLI Configuration Guide* or the *Cisco MDS 9000 Family Fabric Manager Configuration Guide*.

---

## Contacting Customer Service

If you are unable to solve a startup problem after using the troubleshooting suggestions in this appendix, contact your customer service representative for assistance and further instructions. Before you call, have the following information ready to help your service provider assist you as quickly as possible:

- Date you received the switch.
- Chassis serial number. See the [“Finding the Chassis Serial Number”](#) section on page F-2.
- Type of software and release number.
- Maintenance agreement or warranty information.
- Brief description of the problem.
- Brief explanation of the steps you have already taken to isolate and resolve the problem.



**Note**

---

If you purchased Cisco support through a Cisco reseller, contact the reseller directly. If you purchased support directly from Cisco, contact Cisco Technical Support at this URL: <http://www.cisco.com/warp/public/687/Directory/DirTAC.shtm>

---

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

## Finding the Chassis Serial Number

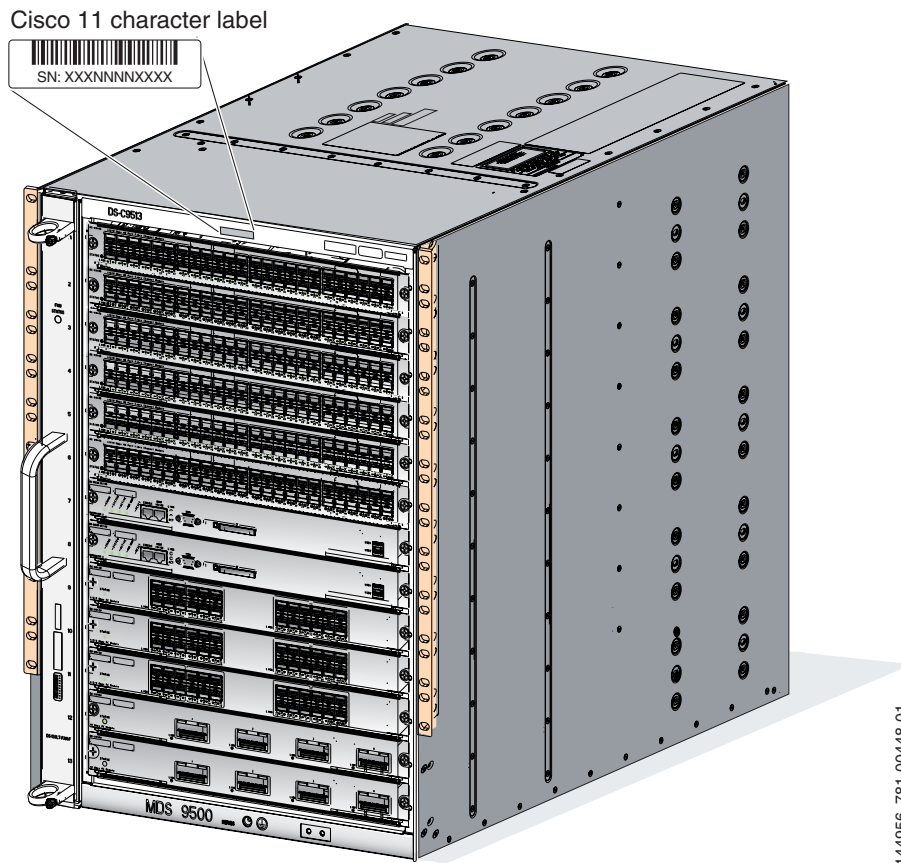


**Tip**

If you have CLI access, run the **show srom backplane 1** command to display the backplane contents, including the switch serial number.

Figure F-1 shows the location of the serial number label on the Cisco MDS 9513 Director.

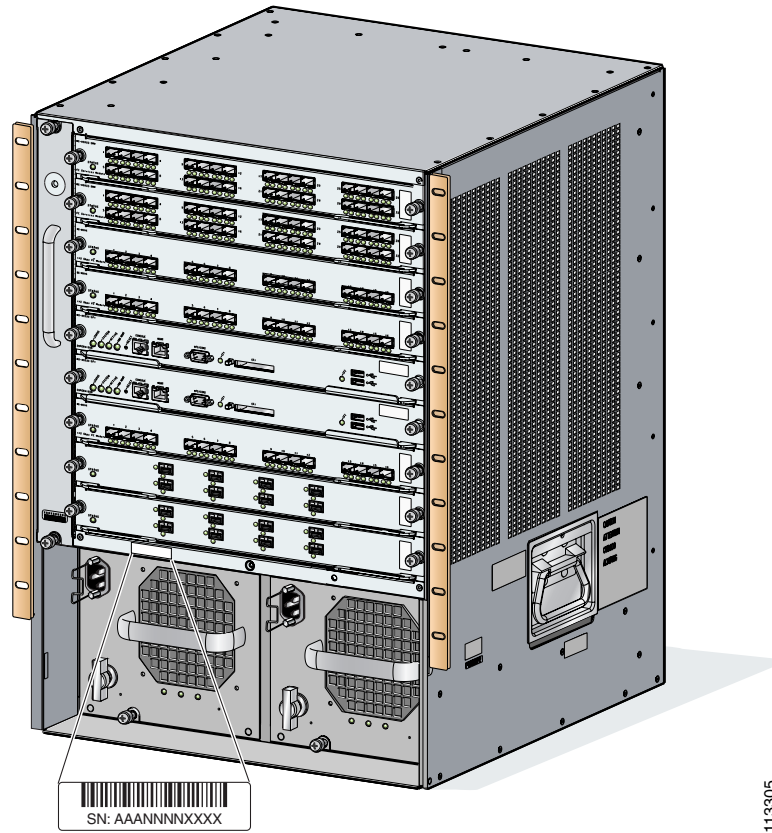
**Figure F-1 Serial Number Location on Cisco MDS 9513 Director**



In later releases of the Cisco MDS 9509 Director, the chassis serial number label was moved, as shown in Figure F-2. Earlier releases may have the serial number label on the right side instead of the left.

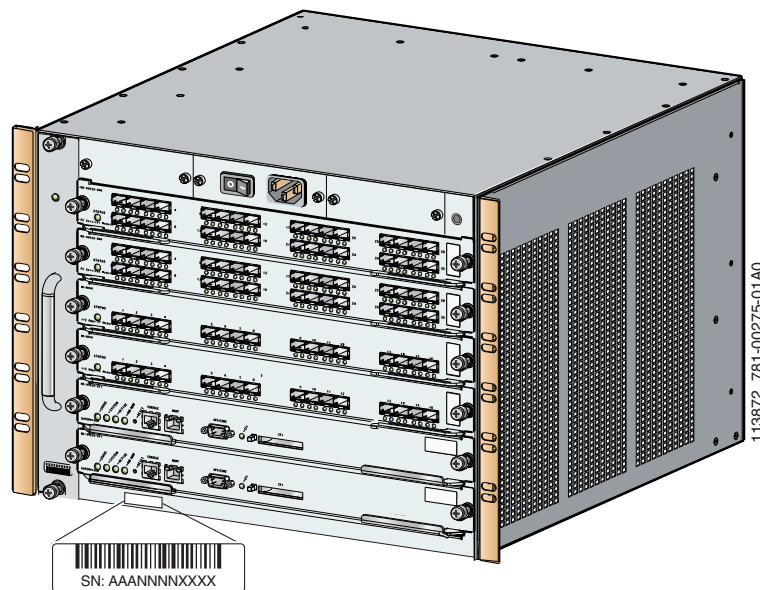
**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Figure F-2 Serial Number Location on Cisco MDS 9509 Director**



The Cisco MDS 9506 Director chassis serial number label is shown in [Figure F-3](#).

**Figure F-3 Serial Number Location on Cisco MDS 9506 Director**



***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## Site Preparation Checklist

Planning the location and layout of your equipment rack or wiring closet is essential for successful switch operation, ventilation, and accessibility. [Table F-1](#) lists the site planning tasks that Cisco recommends completing before installing the Cisco MDS 9500 Series.

Consider heat dissipation when sizing the air-conditioning requirements for an installation. See [Table D-1 on page D-1](#) for the environmental requirements. See the “[Power Specifications for the Cisco MDS 9513 Director](#)” section on [page D-6](#), the “[Power Specifications for the Cisco MDS 9509 Director](#)” section on [page D-9](#), and the “[Power Specifications for the Cisco MDS 9506 Director](#)” section on [page D-14](#) for power and heat ratings.

**Table F-1 Site Planning Checklist**

Task No.	Planning Activity	Verified By	Time	Date
1	Space evaluation: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Space and layout</li> <li>• Floor covering</li> <li>• Impact and vibration</li> <li>• Lighting</li> <li>• Maintenance access</li> </ul>			
2	Environmental evaluation: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ambient temperature</li> <li>• Humidity</li> <li>• Altitude</li> <li>• Atmospheric contamination</li> <li>• Air flow</li> </ul>			
3	Power evaluation: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Input power type</li> <li>• Power receptacles (20 A)<sup>1</sup></li> <li>• Receptacle proximity to the equipment</li> <li>• Dedicated (separate) circuits for redundant power supplies</li> <li>• UPS<sup>2</sup> for power failures</li> <li>• DC systems: proper gauge wire and lugs</li> </ul>			
4	Grounding evaluation: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Circuit breaker size</li> <li>• CO ground (AC- and DC-powered systems)</li> </ul>			

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Table F-1 Site Planning Checklist (continued)**

Task No.	Planning Activity	Verified By	Time	Date
5	Cable and interface equipment evaluation: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cable type</li> <li>• Connector type</li> <li>• Cable distance limitations</li> <li>• Interface equipment (transceivers)</li> </ul>			
6	EMI <sup>3</sup> evaluation: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Distance limitations for signaling</li> <li>• Site wiring</li> <li>• RFI<sup>4</sup> levels</li> </ul>			

1. Verify that each power supply installed in the chassis has a dedicated AC source or DC source circuit.
2. UPS = uninterruptible power supply
3. EMI = electromagnetic interference
4. RFI = radio frequency interference

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## Contact and Site Information

Use the following worksheet (Figure F-3) to record contact and site information.

**Table F-2**      **Contact and Site Information**

<b>Contact person</b>	
<b>Contact phone</b>	
<b>Contact e-mail</b>	
<b>Building/site name</b>	
<b>Data center location</b>	
<b>Floor location</b>	
<b>Address (line 1)</b>	
<b>Address (line 2)</b>	
<b>City</b>	
<b>State</b>	
<b>Zip code</b>	
<b>Country</b>	

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## Chassis and Module Information

Use the following worksheets (Table F-3 and Table F-4) to record information about the chassis and modules.

Contract number \_\_\_\_\_

Chassis serial number \_\_\_\_\_

Product number \_\_\_\_\_

**Table F-3 Network-Related Information**

<b>Switch IP address</b>	
<b>Switch IP netmask</b>	
<b>Host name</b>	
<b>Domain name</b>	
<b>IP broadcast address</b>	
<b>Gateway/router address</b>	
<b>DNS address</b>	
<b>Modem telephone number</b>	

**Table F-4 Module Information**

<b>Slot</b>	<b>Module Type</b>	<b>Module Serial Number</b>	<b>Notes</b>
<b>1</b>			
<b>2</b>			
<b>3</b>			
<b>4</b>			
<b>5</b>	<b>Supervisor</b>		

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

**Table F-4**      *Module Information (continued)*

Slot	Module Type	Module Serial Number	Notes
6	Supervisor		
7			
8			
9			

**Note**

Slots 7, 8, and 9 are only available in the Cisco MDS 9509 Director.





## INDEX

---

### Numerics

- 12-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching modules
  - description [1-35](#)
  - figure [1-35](#)
- 14/2-port Multiprotocol Services module. See MPS-14/2
- 16-port switching modules
  - description [1-38](#)
  - figure [1-38](#)
  - LEDs (table) [1-37, 1-40](#)
- 24-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching modules
  - description [1-35](#)
  - figure [1-35](#)
- 24-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel switching modules
  - description [1-33](#)
  - figure [1-33](#)
- 32-port Fibre Channel Advanced Services Module. See ASM
- 32-port Fibre Channel Storage Services Module. See SSM
- 32-port switching modules
  - description [1-37](#)
  - figure [1-38](#)
  - LEDs (table) [1-37, 1-40](#)
- 4/44-port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized Fibre Channel switching modules
  - description [1-33](#)
  - figure [1-33](#)
- 48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching modules
  - connectors [1-33, 1-34](#)
  - description [1-34](#)
  - figure [1-33, 1-34](#)
  - LEDs (figure) [1-34](#)
- 48-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel switching modules
  - description [1-33](#)

figure [1-33](#)

4-port 10-Gbps Fibre Channel switching modules

description [1-36](#)

figure [1-36](#)

---

### A

- AC power
  - installing (MDS 9509 Director) [2-57](#)
  - providing (MDS 9506 Director) [2-30, 2-32](#)
  - providing (MDS 9509 Director) [2-30, 2-32](#)
  - providing (MDS 9513 Director) [2-29](#)
  - removing (MDS 9509 Director) [2-56](#)
  - removing (MDS 9513 Director) [2-52](#)
- airflow specifications [D-4](#)
- ASM
  - description [1-48](#)
  - figure [1-48](#)
  - LEDs (table) [1-49](#)
- audience
  - description [1-xv](#)

---

### B

- backplane
  - description [1-8](#)
- batteries on CSM [2-50](#)
- binary images
  - downloading [1-48, 1-50](#)
- Bladeswitch [1-9](#)

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

## C

cabinet installation guidelines [2-2](#)

cabinets

perforated, requirements [C-3](#)

requirements [C-1](#)

See also racks

solid wall requirements [C-4](#)

space requirements [C-2](#)

cabling

COM1 port [E-3](#)

console port [E-2](#)

MGMT 10/100/1000 Ethernet port [E-4](#)

MGMT 10/100 Ethernet port [E-6](#)

requirements [B-2](#)

SFP transceivers [B-14, B-15](#)

Caching Services Module. See CSM

chassis

grounding [2-23](#)

installing guidelines [2-3](#)

unpacking [2-5](#)

chassis (MDS 9506 Director)

description [1-7](#)

features [1-7](#)

figure [1-7](#)

grounding (figure) [2-27](#)

installing in a rack (procedure) [2-15](#)

preinstallation [2-2](#)

serial number location [F-3](#)

chassis (MDS 9509 Director)

description [1-6](#)

features [1-6](#)

figure [1-6](#)

grounding [2-26](#)

installing in a rack (procedure) [2-11](#)

power supplies [2-11](#)

preinstallation [2-2](#)

serial number location [F-2](#)

chassis (MDS 9513 Director)

description [1-3](#)

features [1-3](#)

figure [1-4, 1-5](#)

installing in a rack (procedure) [2-7](#)

power supplies [1-10, 2-7, 2-28](#)

preinstallation [2-2](#)

serial number location [F-2](#)

Cisco MDS 9500 Series Multilayer Directors

description [1-1](#)

Cisco MDS Fabric Switch [1-9](#)

clock modules

description [1-8, 2-76](#)

installing (MDS 9506 Director) [2-86](#)

installing (MDS 9509 Director) [2-83](#)

installing (MDS 9513 Director) [2-79](#)

installing in MDS 9506 Director (procedure) [2-86](#)

installing in MDS 9509 Director (procedure) [2-79, 2-83](#)

removing (MDS 9506 Director) [2-84](#)

removing (MDS 9509 Director) [2-80](#)

removing (MDS 9513 Director) [2-76, 2-77](#)

removing from MDS 9506 Director (procedure) [2-83](#)

removing from MDS 9509 Director (procedure) [2-77, 2-80](#)

COM1 port

cabling [E-3](#)

connecting [B-4](#)

pinouts (table) [E-3](#)

support [B-4](#)

support (note) [B-4](#)

CompactFlash cards

installing [2-76](#)

LED on supervisor module [1-23](#)

removing [2-75](#)

Supervisor-1 modules [1-23](#)

Supervisor-2 modules [1-19](#)

Supervisor-2 modules, LEDs [1-19](#)

connecting

COM1 port [B-4](#)

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

console port [B-2](#)  
 Fibre Channel ports [B-9](#)  
 MGMT 10/100/1000 [B-6](#)  
 MGMT 10/100 Ethernet port [B-7](#)

console port  
   cabling [E-2](#)  
   connecting [B-2](#)  
   pinouts [E-2](#)

contact and site information [F-6](#)

crossbar fan modules  
   description [1-16](#)

crossbar modules  
   Cisco MDS 9513 support [1-25](#)  
   description [1-25](#)  
   installing [2-48](#)  
   location [1-25](#)  
   removing [2-47, A-5](#)  
   supervisor association [1-25](#)

crossbar switching fabric  
   description [1-22](#)  
   dual fabric configurations [1-17, 1-22](#)  
   mesh design [1-17](#)  
   Supervisor-2 modules [1-17](#)

CSM  
   batteries [2-50](#)  
   description [1-52](#)  
   installing [2-45](#)  
   internal (figure) [1-53](#)  
   LEDs (table) [1-54](#)  
   maintaining [2-50](#)  
   powering off [2-44](#)  
   removing [2-44](#)  
   requirement (note) [2-44](#)

CUP [1-41](#)

customer service, contacting [F-1](#)

CWDM transceivers  
   description [1-56](#)  
   SFP transceiver specifications [D-30](#)

---

## D

DC power  
   installing (MDS 9509 Director) [2-62](#)  
   providing (MDS 9506 Director) [2-34](#)  
   providing (MDS 9509 Director) [2-33](#)  
   removing (MDS 9509 Director) [2-61](#)

documentation  
   additional publications [1-xviii](#)

downloading software images  
   ASM-SFN image [1-48](#)  
   SSM image [1-50](#)

DWDM transceivers  
   description [1-57, D-34](#)

---

## E

electrostatic discharge (ESD) [2-19](#)

environmental specifications [D-1](#)

Ethernet port  
   MGMT 10/100 [B-7](#)  
   MGMT 10/100/1000 [B-6](#)

---

## F

fan modules  
   crossbar fan modules, description [1-16](#)  
   description [1-16](#)  
   failure (caution) [1-16](#)  
   LEDs [1-16](#)  
   removing and installing [2-68](#)

Fiber Connectivity [1-41](#)

fiber optic cables, maintaining [B-16](#)

Fibre Channel/Gigabit Ethernet SFP transceivers [1-56](#)

Fibre Channel ports  
   connecting [B-9](#)  
   connecting with LC-type cables (figure) [B-15](#)

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

---

## G

### Generation 3 Modules

Installing the MDS 9000 4/44-Port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized Module [A-3](#)

### Generation 1 modules

services modules [1-41](#)

switching modules [1-32](#)

### Generation 2 modules

switching modules [1-32](#)

### Generation 3 modules

switching modules [1-32](#)

Gigabit Ethernet/Fibre Channel SFP transceiver specifications [D-28](#)

### grounding

attaching the ESD wrist strap [2-19](#)

best practices [2-17](#)

chassis [2-23](#)

establishing the system ground [2-22](#)

required tools and equipment [2-22](#)

EIA shelf brackets [C-6](#)

equipment required [2-5](#)

guidelines [2-3](#)

power supplies (Cisco MDS 9513 Director) [2-54](#)

power supplies (MDS 9509 Director) [2-57, 2-62](#)

rack mount brackets [C-11](#)

rack-mounting guidelines [C-7](#)

services modules [2-38](#)

SFP transceiver cables [B-15](#)

SFP transceivers (note) [B-13](#)

shelf brackets [C-12](#)

supervisor modules [2-38, 2-40](#)

switching modules [2-38](#)

Telco shelf brackets [C-6](#)

X2 transceivers [B-11](#)

installing SFP transceivers [B-14](#)

### IPS modules

IPS-4 modules (figure) [1-47](#)

IPS-4 modules, description [1-46](#)

IPS-8 modules, description [1-46](#)

IPS-8 modules, figure [1-46](#)

LEDs (table) [1-47](#)

IP Storage Services module. See IPS modules

IPv6 [1-41](#)

---

## H

hardware compatibility matrix (table) [1-27](#)

### heat dissipation

Cisco MDS 9506 Director [D-16](#)

Cisco MDS 9509 Director [D-7, D-11](#)

### high availability

features [1-1](#)

---

## I

IBM BladeCenter [1-9](#)

### installing

chassis (MDS 9506 Director) [2-2](#)

chassis (MDS 9509 Director) [2-2](#)

chassis (MDS 9513 Director) [2-2](#)

CompactFlash cards [2-76](#)

crossbar modules [2-48](#)

---

## L

### LC-type cables

connecting to Fibre Channel ports [B-15](#)

figure [B-15](#)

### LEDs

ASM (table) [1-49](#)

clock modules [1-8, 1-16](#)

CSM (table) [1-54](#)

fan modules [1-16](#)

IPS modules (table) [1-47](#)

MDS 9513 Director power supplies (table) [1-11](#)

MPS-14/2 (table) [1-43, 1-45](#)

Supervisor-2 modules (table) [1-20](#)

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

switching modules (table) [1-37, 1-40](#)

## M

### maintaining

CSM [2-50](#)

CSM disk drives [2-51](#)

fiber optic cables [B-16](#)

SFP transceivers [B-16](#)

maintenance records [F-1](#)

### MDS 9506 Director

description [1-7](#)

grounding location (figure) [2-27](#)

heat dissipation [D-16](#)

installing clock modules (procedure) [2-86](#)

installing in a rack (procedure) [2-15](#)

power supply LEDs (table) [1-8, 1-15](#)

removing clock modules (procedure) [2-83](#)

### MDS 9509 Director

description [1-6](#)

figure [1-6](#)

grounding location (figure) [2-26](#)

heat dissipation [D-7, D-11](#)

installing clock modules (procedure) [2-79, 2-83](#)

installing in a rack (procedure) [2-11](#)

power supply LEDs (table) [1-8, 1-15](#)

removing clock modules (procedure) [2-77, 2-80](#)

### MDS 9513 Director

installing in a rack (procedure) [2-7](#)

### MGMT 10/100/1000 Ethernet port

cabling [E-4](#)

pinouts [E-4](#)

### MGMT 10/100/1000 port

connecting [B-6](#)

### MGMT 10/100 Ethernet port

cabling [E-6](#)

connecting [B-7](#)

pinouts [E-6](#)

### Migration Procedures

Generation 3 modules [A-3](#)

Installing MDS 9513 Fabric 2 Modules and Installing MDS 9000 24-port or 48-port 8-Gbps Modules [A-9](#)

Installing MDS 9513 Fabric 2 Modules and Running Cisco SAN-OS 3.x [A-5](#)

Installing the MDS 9000 4/44-Port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized Module [A-3](#)

Installing the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 Modules and Activating Higher Bandwidth by Reloading the Switch [A-10](#)

Migration Procedure for the MDS 9509 Director and MDS 9506 Director [A-12](#)

### modules

chassis compatibility [1-27](#)

specifications [D-4](#)

weight [D-5](#)

### MPS-14/2

description

LEDs (table) [1-43, 1-45](#)

software release requirements [1-44, 1-48](#)

## N

NEBS [2-19](#)

network connections, preparing [B-2](#)

new and changed information (table) [1-ix](#)

## O

open racks, standard (requirements) [C-5](#)

### organization

description [1-xv](#)

## P

### PEMs

installing [2-64](#)

removing [2-64](#)

physical specifications (table) [D-2](#)

### pinouts

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

- COM 1 port [E-3](#)
- console port [E-2](#)
- MGMT 10/100/1000 Ethernet port [E-4](#)
- MGMT 10/100 Ethernet port [E-6](#)
- plugs supported for power supplies [E-7](#)
- port
  - MGMT 10/100/1000 [B-6](#)
  - on supervisor module [1-22](#)
- port indexes
  - availability [1-28](#)
  - description [1-28](#)
  - Generation 1 limitations [1-28](#)
  - Generation 2 maximum [1-31](#)
  - Generation combination (example) [1-30](#)
  - Generation combination limitations [1-30](#)
- port interfaces
  - Supervisor-2 modules [1-18](#)
- power cord, jumper [E-11](#)
- power cords, length [E-7](#)
- powering up the switch [2-36](#)
- power supplies
  - chassis (MDS 9509 Director) [2-11](#)
  - chassis (MDS 9513 Director) [2-7, 2-28](#)
  - circuits [2-4](#)
  - description [1-9](#)
  - installing (Cisco MDS 9506 Director) [2-67](#)
  - installing (Cisco MDS 9513 Director) [2-54](#)
  - installing (MDS 9509 Director) [2-57, 2-62](#)
  - LEDs [1-11](#)
  - LEDs (table) [1-11](#)
  - MDS 9506 Director LEDs (table) [1-8, 1-15](#)
  - MDS 9509 Director LEDs (table) [1-8, 1-15](#)
  - MDS 9513 Director [1-10](#)
  - MDS 9513 Director (figure) [1-10](#)
  - removing (Cisco MDS 9506 Director) [2-67](#)
  - removing (MDS 9509 Director) [2-56, 2-61](#)
  - removing (MDS 9513 Director) [2-52](#)
  - starting up the switch [2-28](#)
  - supported plugs [E-7](#)

- power supplies (Cisco MDS 9506 Director)
  - removing and installing PEMs [2-64](#)
  - specifications [D-14](#)
- power supplies (Cisco MDS 9509 Director)
  - specifications [D-6, D-9](#)
- power supplies (MDS 9506 Director)
  - description [1-15](#)
- power supplies (MDS 9509 Director)
  - description [1-12](#)
- pre-installation
  - guidelines [2-2](#)
  - rack mount brackets [C-7](#)

---

## R

- rack-mount installation options [2-2](#)
- racks
  - EIA installing [C-10](#)
  - open, requirements [C-5](#)
  - required equipment [C-8](#)
  - requirements [C-1](#)
  - See also cabinets.
  - space requirements [C-2](#)
  - Telco installing [C-9](#)
  - Telco requirements [C-6](#)
- records
  - chassis and module information [F-7](#)
  - contact and site information [F-6](#)
  - site planning and maintenance [F-1](#)
- removing
  - CompactFlash cards [2-75](#)
  - crossbar modules [2-47, A-5](#)
  - CSM [2-44](#)
  - power supplies (MDS 9509 Director) [2-56, 2-61](#)
  - power supplies (MDS 9513 Director) [2-52](#)
  - services modules [2-45](#)
  - SFP transceiver cables [B-14](#)
  - SFP transceivers [B-12](#)
  - shelf brackets [C-12](#)

**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

supervisor modules [2-39](#)  
 switching modules [2-45](#)  
 X2 transceivers [B-11](#)

## S

SAN extension [1-41](#)

serial number

location (MDS 9506 Director) [F-3](#)  
 location (MDS 9509 Director) [F-2](#)  
 location (MDS 9513 Director) figure [F-2](#)

services modules

ASM [1-48](#)  
 CSM [1-52](#)  
 description [1-41](#)  
 Generation 1 modules [1-41](#)  
 installing [2-38, 2-45](#)  
 IPS modules [1-46](#)  
 MPS-14/2 module [1-44](#)  
 MSFM-18/4 module [1-42](#)  
 MSM-18/4 module [1-41](#)  
 removing [2-45](#)  
 specifications [D-4](#)  
 SSM [1-50](#)

SFP and SFP+ transceivers

specifications [D-22](#)

SFP transceivers

cabling [B-14, B-15](#)  
 CWDM [1-56, D-30](#)  
 description [1-56, B-12, D-22](#)  
 DWDM [1-57, D-34](#)  
 Fibre Channel [1-56](#)  
 Fibre Channel/Gigabit Ethernet [1-56](#)  
 Fibre Channel/Gigabit Ethernet supported [D-28](#)  
 Fibre Channel specifications [D-23](#)  
 Fibre Channel supported [D-23](#)  
 Gigabit Ethernet [1-56](#)  
 installing [B-14](#)  
 latches supported [B-12](#)

removing [B-12](#)

shelf bracket

Cisco MDS 9500, installation [C-13](#)  
 installing Telco/EIA [C-6](#)

shelf brackets

description [C-13](#)

site planning preparation checklist [F-4](#)

specifications

airflow [D-4](#)  
 cables [E-1](#)  
 environmental [D-1](#)  
 heat dissipation for Cisco MDS 9506 Director [D-16](#)  
 heat dissipation for Cisco MDS 9509 Director [D-7, D-11](#)  
 MDS 9513 Director [D-6](#)  
 modules [D-4](#)  
 physical (MDS 9506 Director) [D-3](#)  
 pinouts [E-1](#)  
 power, MDS 9506 Director [D-14](#)  
 power, MDS 9509 Director [D-6, D-9](#)  
 SFP and SFP+ transceivers [D-22](#)

SSM

alarm LEDs [1-50](#)  
 description [1-50](#)  
 figure [1-50](#)  
 LEDs (table) [1-51](#)  
 power-on LEDs [1-50](#)  
 ready LEDs [1-50](#)  
 self-test passed LEDs [1-50](#)  
 self-test running LEDs [1-50](#)

Supervisor-1 modules

CompactFlash cards [1-23](#)  
 control and management [1-21](#)  
 Ethernet port [B-7](#)  
 features [1-21](#)  
 figure [1-21](#)  
 LEDs [1-23](#)  
 LEDs (figure) [1-23](#)  
 LEDs (table) [1-23](#)

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

- memory options [1-22](#)
  - nondisruptive restart [1-21](#)
  - processor [1-22](#)
  - redundant central arbiter [1-21](#)
  - support (note) [1-21](#)
  - warm switchover [1-22](#)
  - Supervisor-2
    - Ethernet port [B-6](#)
  - Supervisor-2 modules
    - CompactFlash cards [1-19](#)
    - CompactFlash cards LEDs [1-19](#)
    - control and management [1-18](#)
    - description [1-17](#)
    - features [1-17](#)
    - figure [1-17](#)
    - integrated crossbar switching fabric [1-17](#)
    - LEDs [1-19](#)
    - LEDs (figure) [1-19](#)
    - LEDs (table) [1-20](#)
    - LEDs description [1-19](#)
    - memory options [1-18](#)
    - nondisruptive restart [1-18](#)
    - port interfaces [1-18](#)
    - processor [1-18](#)
    - redundant central arbiter [1-18](#)
    - warm switchover [1-18](#)
  - supervisor module
    - port interfaces [1-22](#)
  - supervisor modules
    - description [1-16](#)
    - installing [2-38, 2-40](#)
    - removing [2-39](#)
    - specifications [D-4](#)
  - switching modules
    - 12-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching modules [1-35](#)
    - 16-port 2-Gbps Fibre Channel (figure) [1-38](#)
    - 24-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching modules [1-35](#)
    - 24-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel switching modules [1-33](#)
    - 32-port 2-Gbps Fibre Channel (figure) [1-37](#)
    - 4/44-port 4-Gbps Host-Optimized Fibre Channel switching modules [1-33](#)
    - 48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching modules [1-34](#)
    - 48-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel switching modules [1-33](#)
    - 4-port 10-Gbps Fibre Channel switching modules [1-36](#)
    - description [1-32](#)
    - downloading binary image [1-48, 1-50](#)
    - features [1-39](#)
    - Generation 1 modules [1-32](#)
    - Generation 2 modules [1-32](#)
    - Generation 3 modules [1-32](#)
    - installing [2-38, 2-45](#)
    - LEDs (table) [1-37, 1-40](#)
    - removing [2-45](#)
    - specifications [D-4](#)
    - system grounding [2-17](#)
- 
- ## T
- Telco racks (requirements) [C-6](#)
  - transceivers
    - description [1-55](#)
    - supported SFP transceivers [1-55](#)
    - supported X2 transceiver [1-55](#)
  - troubleshooting
    - contacting customer service [F-1](#)
- 
- ## W
- weight of modules [D-5](#)
- 
- ## X
- X2 transceivers



**Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).**

- description [1-55, D-19](#)
- installing [B-11](#)
- removing [B-11](#)
- supported (table) [D-20](#)
- Numerics
  - 12-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching modules
    - description [36](#)
    - figure [37](#)
  - 14/2-port Multiprotocol Services module. See [MPS-14/2](#)
  - 16-port switching modules
    - description [39](#)
    - figure [39](#)
    - LEDs (table) [38, 41](#)
  - 24-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching modules
    - description [36](#)
    - figure [36](#)
  - 24-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel switching modules
    - description [34](#)
    - figure [34](#)
  - 32-port Fibre Channel Advanced Services Module. See [ASM](#)
  - 32-port Fibre Channel Storage Services Module. See [SSM](#)
  - 32-port switching modules
    - description [38](#)
    - figure [39](#)
    - LEDs (table) [38, 41](#)
  - 4/44-port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized Fibre Channel switching modules
    - description [35](#)
    - figure [35](#)
  - 48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching modules
    - connectors [34, 35](#)
    - description [35](#)
    - figure [34, 35](#)
    - LEDs (figure) [35](#)
  - 48-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel switching modules
    - description [34](#)
    - figure [34](#)
  - 4-port 10-Gbps Fibre Channel switching modules
    - description [37](#)
    - figure [37](#)
- A
  - AC power
    - installing (MDS 9509 Director) [57](#)
    - providing (MDS 9506 Director) [30, 32](#)
    - providing (MDS 9509 Director) [30, 32](#)
    - providing (MDS 9513 Director) [29](#)
    - removing (MDS 9509 Director) [56](#)
    - removing (MDS 9513 Director) [52](#)
  - airflow specifications [4](#)
  - ASM
    - description [49](#)
    - figure [49](#)
    - LEDs (table) [50](#)
  - audience
    - description [xv](#)
- B
  - backplane
    - description [8](#)
  - batteries on CSM [50](#)
  - binary images
    - downloading [49, 51](#)
  - Bladeswitch [9](#)
- C
  - cabinet installation guidelines [2](#)
  - cabinets
    - perforated, requirements [3](#)
    - requirements [1](#)
    - See also [racks](#)
    - solid wall requirements [4](#)
    - space requirements [2](#)
  - cabling
    - COM1 port [3](#)
    - console port [2](#)
    - MGMT 10/100 Ethernet port [6](#)
    - MGMT 10/100/1000 Ethernet port [4](#)
    - requirements [2](#)
    - SFP transceivers [14, 15](#)
  - Caching Services Module. See [CSM](#)
  - chassis
    - grounding [23](#)
    - installing guidelines [3](#)
    - unpacking [5](#)
  - chassis (MDS 9506 Director)
    - description [7](#)
    - features [7](#)
    - figure [7](#)
    - grounding (figure) [27](#)

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

- installing in a rack (procedure) 15
- preinstallation 2
- serial number location 3
- chassis (MDS 9509 Director)
  - description 6
  - features 6
  - figure 6
  - grounding 26
  - installing in a rack (procedure) 11
  - power supplies 11
  - preinstallation 2
  - serial number location 2
- chassis (MDS 9513 Director)
  - description 3
  - features 3
  - figure 4, 5
  - installing in a rack (procedure) 7
  - power supplies 10, 7, 28
  - preinstallation 2
  - serial number location 2
- Cisco MDS 9500 Series Multilayer Directors
  - description 1
- Cisco MDS Fabric Switch 9
- clock modules
  - description 8, 76
  - installing (MDS 9506 Director) 86
  - installing (MDS 9509 Director) 83
  - installing (MDS 9513 Director) 79
  - installing in MDS 9506 Director (procedure) 86
  - installing in MDS 9509 Director (procedure) 79, 83
  - removing (MDS 9506 Director) 84
  - removing (MDS 9509 Director) 80
  - removing (MDS 9513 Director) 76, 77
  - removing from MDS 9506 Director (procedure) 83
  - removing from MDS 9509 Director (procedure) 77, 80
- COM1 port
  - cabling 3
  - connecting 4
  - pinouts (table) 3
  - support 4
  - support (note) 4
- CompactFlash cards
  - installing 76
  - LED on supervisor module 24
  - removing 75
  - Supervisor-1 modules 23
  - Supervisor-2 modules 19
  - Supervisor-2 modules, LEDs 19
- connecting
  - COM1 port 4
  - console port 2
  - Fibre Channel ports 9
  - MGMT 10/100 Ethernet port 7
  - MGMT 10/100/1000 6
- console port
  - cabling 2
  - connecting 2
  - pinouts 2
- contact and site information 6
- crossbar fan modules
  - description 16
- crossbar modules
  - Cisco MDS 9513 support 25
  - description 25
  - installing 48
  - location 25
  - removing 47, 5
  - supervisor association 25
- crossbar switching fabric
  - description 22
  - dual fabric configurations 17, 22
  - mesh design 17
  - Supervisor-2 modules 17
- CSM
  - batteries 50
  - description 53
  - installing 45
  - internal (figure) 54
  - LEDs (table) 55
  - maintaining 50
  - powering off 44
  - removing 44
  - requirement (note) 44
- CUP 42
- customer service, contacting 1
- CWDM transceivers
  - description 57

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

- SFP transceiver specifications 28
- D
  - DC power
    - installing (MDS 9509 Director) 62
    - providing (MDS 9506 Director) 34
    - providing (MDS 9509 Director) 33
    - removing (MDS 9509 Director) 61
  - documentation
    - additional publications xviii
  - downloading software images
    - ASM-SFN image 49
    - SSM image 51
- E
  - electrostatic discharge (ESD) 19
  - environmental specifications 1
  - Ethernet port
    - MGMT 10/100 7
    - MGMT 10/100/1000 6
- F
  - fan modules
    - crossbar fan modules, description 16
    - description 16
    - failure (caution) 16
    - LEDs 16
    - removing and installing 68
  - Fiber Connectivity 42
  - fiber optic cables, maintaining 16
  - Fibre Channel ports
    - connecting 9
    - connecting with LC-type cables (figure) 15
  - Fibre Channel/Gigabit Ethernet SFP transceivers 57
- G
  - Generation 3 Modules
    - Installing the MDS 9000 4/44-Port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized Module 3
  - Generation 1 modules
    - services modules 42
    - switching modules 33
  - Generation 2 modules
    - switching modules 33
  - Generation 3 modules
    - Migration Procedures 3
    - switching modules 33
  - Gigabit Ethernet/Fibre Channel SFP transceiver specifications 26
- grounding
  - attaching the ESD wrist strap 19
  - best practices 17
  - chassis 23
  - establishing the system ground 22
  - required tools and equipment 22
- H
  - hardware compatibility matrix (table) 27
  - heat dissipation
    - Cisco MDS 9506 Director 16
    - Cisco MDS 9509 Director 7, 11
  - high availability
    - features 1
- I
  - IBM BladeCenter 9
  - installing
    - chassis (MDS 9506 Director) 2
    - chassis (MDS 9509 Director) 2
    - chassis (MDS 9513 Director) 2
    - CompactFlash cards 76
    - crossbar modules 48
    - EIA shelf brackets 5
    - equipment required 5
    - guidelines 3
    - power supplies (Cisco MDS 9513 Director) 54
    - power supplies (MDS 9509 Director) 57, 62
    - rack mount brackets 10
    - rack-mounting guidelines 6
    - services modules 38
    - SFP transceiver cables 15
    - SFP transceivers (note) 13
    - shelf brackets 11
    - supervisor modules 38, 40
    - switching modules 38
    - Telco shelf brackets 5
    - X2 transceivers 11
  - installing SFP transceivers 14
  - IP Storage Services module. See IPS modules
  - IPS modules
    - IPS-4 modules (figure) 48
    - IPS-4 modules, description 47
    - IPS-8 modules, description 47
    - IPS-8 modules, figure 47
    - LEDs (table) 48

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

- IPv6 42
- L
- LC-type cables
  - connecting to Fibre Channel ports 15
  - figure 15
- LEDs
  - ASM (table) 50
  - clock modules 8, 16
  - CSM (table) 55
  - fan modules 16
  - IPS modules (table) 48
  - MDS 9513 Director power supplies (table) 11
  - MPS-14/2 (table) 44, 46
  - Supervisor-2 modules (table) 20
  - switching modules (table) 38, 41
- M
- maintaining
  - CSM 50
  - CSM disk drives 51
  - fiber optic cables 16
  - SFP transceivers 16
- maintenance records 1
- MDS 9506 Director
  - description 7
  - grounding location (figure) 27
  - heat dissipation 16
  - installing clock modules (procedure) 86
  - installing in a rack (procedure) 15
  - power supply LEDs (table) 8, 15
  - removing clock modules (procedure) 83
- MDS 9509 Director
  - description 6
  - figure 6
  - grounding location (figure) 26
  - heat dissipation 7, 11
  - installing clock modules (procedure) 79, 83
  - installing in a rack (procedure) 11
  - power supply LEDs (table) 8, 15
  - removing clock modules (procedure) 77, 80
- MDS 9513 Director
  - installing in a rack (procedure) 7
- MGMT 10/100 Ethernet port
  - cabling 6
  - connecting 7
  - pinouts 6
- MGMT 10/100/1000 Ethernet port
  - cabling 4
  - pinouts 4
- MGMT 10/100/1000 port
  - connecting 6
- Migration Procedures
  - Generation 3 modules 3
  - Installing MDS 9513 Fabric 2 Modules and Installing MDS 9000 24-port or 48-port 8-Gbps Modules 9
  - Installing MDS 9513 Fabric 2 Modules and Running Cisco SAN-OS 3.x 5
  - Installing the MDS 9000 4/44-Port 8-Gbps Host-Optimized Module 3
  - Installing the MDS 9513 Fabric 2 Modules and Activating Higher Bandwidth by Re-loading the Switch 10
  - Migration Procedure for the MDS 9509 Director and MDS 9506 Director 12
- modules
  - chassis compatibility 27
  - specifications 4
  - weight 5
- MPS-14/2
  - description
  - LEDs (table) 44, 46
  - software release requirements 45, 49
- N
- NEBS 19
- network connections, preparing 2
- new and changed information (table) ix
- O
- open racks, standard (requirements) 4
- organization
  - description xv
- P
- PEMs
  - installing 64
  - removing 64
- physical specifications (table) 3
- pinouts
  - COM 1 port 3
  - console port 2
  - MGMT 10/100 Ethernet port 6
  - MGMT 10/100/1000 Ethernet port 4

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

- plugs supported for power supplies 7
- port
  - MGMT 10/100/1000 6
  - on supervisor module 22
- port indexes
  - availability 28
  - description 28
  - Generation 1 limitations 28
  - Generation 2 maximum 32
  - Generation combination (example) 31
  - Generation combination limitations 31
- port interfaces
  - Supervisor-2 modules 18
- power cord, jumper 11
- power cords, length 7
- power supplies
  - chassis (MDS 9509 Director) 11
  - chassis (MDS 9513 Director) 7, 28
  - circuits 4
  - description 9
  - installing (Cisco MDS 9506 Director) 67
  - installing (Cisco MDS 9513 Director) 54
  - installing (MDS 9509 Director) 57, 62
  - LEDs 11
  - LEDs (table) 11
  - MDS 9506 Director LEDs (table) 8, 15
  - MDS 9509 Director LEDs (table) 8, 15
  - MDS 9513 Director 10
  - MDS 9513 Director (figure) 10
  - removing (Cisco MDS 9506 Director) 67
  - removing (MDS 9509 Director) 56, 61
  - removing (MDS 9513 Director) 52
  - starting up the switch 28
  - supported plugs 7
- power supplies (Cisco MDS 9506 Director)
  - removing and installing PEMs 64
  - specifications 14
- power supplies (Cisco MDS 9509 Director)
  - specifications 6, 9
- power supplies (MDS 9506 Director)
  - description 15
- power supplies (MDS 9509 Director)
  - description 12
- powering up the switch 36
- pre-installation
  - guidelines 2
  - rack mount brackets 7
- R
- rack-mount installation options 2
- racks
  - EIA installing 9
  - open, requirements 4
  - required equipment 7
  - requirements 1
  - See also cabinets.
  - space requirements 2
  - Telco installing 8
  - Telco requirements 5
- records
  - chassis and module information 7
  - contact and site information 6
  - site planning and maintenance 1
- removing
  - CompactFlash cards 75
  - crossbar modules 47, 5
  - CSM 44
  - power supplies (MDS 9509 Director) 56, 61
  - power supplies (MDS 9513 Director) 52
  - services modules 45
  - SFP transceiver cables 14
  - SFP transceivers 12
  - shelf brackets 11
  - supervisor modules 39
  - switching modules 45
  - X2 transceivers 11
- S
- SAN extension 42
- serial number
  - location (MDS 9506 Director) 3
  - location (MDS 9509 Director) 2
  - location (MDS 9513 Director) figure 2
- services modules
  - ASM 49
  - CSM 53
  - description 42
  - Generation 1 modules 42
  - installing 38, 45
  - IPS modules 47
  - MPS-14/2 module 45
  - MSFM-18/4 module 43

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

- MSM-18/4 module 42
- removing 45
- specifications 4
- SSM 51
- SFP transceivers
  - cabling 14, 15
  - CWDM 57, 28
  - description 57, 12, 22
  - Fibre Channel 57
  - Fibre Channel specifications 23
  - Fibre Channel supported 23
  - Fibre Channel/Gigabit Ethernet 57
  - Fibre Channel/Gigabit Ethernet supported 26
  - Gigabit Ethernet 57
  - installing 14
  - latches supported 12
  - removing 12
  - specifications 22
- shelf bracket
  - Cisco MDS 9500, installation 12
  - installing Telco/EIA 5
- shelf brackets
  - description 12
- site planning preparation checklist 4
- specifications
  - airflow 4
  - cables 1
  - environmental 1
  - heat dissipation for Cisco MDS 9506 Director 16
  - heat dissipation for Cisco MDS 9509 Director 7, 11
  - MDS 9513 Director 6
  - modules 4
  - physical (MDS 9506 Director) 3
  - pinouts 1
  - power, MDS 9506 Director 14
  - power, MDS 9509 Director 6, 9
  - SFP transceivers 22
- SSM
  - alarm LEDs 51
  - description 51
  - figure 51
  - LEDs (table) 52
  - power-on LEDs 51
  - ready LEDs 51
  - self-test passed LEDs 51
  - self-test running LEDs 51
- supervisor module
  - port interfaces 22
- supervisor modules
  - description 16
  - installing 38, 40
  - removing 39
  - specifications 4
- Supervisor-1 modules
  - CompactFlash cards 23
  - control and management 21
  - Ethernet port 7
  - features 21
  - figure 21
  - LEDs 24
  - LEDs (figure) 24
  - LEDs (table) 24
  - memory options 22
  - nondisruptive restart 21
  - processor 22
  - redundant central arbiter 21
  - support (note) 21
  - warm switchover 22
- Supervisor-2
  - Ethernet port 6
- Supervisor-2 modules
  - CompactFlash cards 19
  - CompactFlash cards LEDs 19
  - control and management 18
  - description 17
  - features 17
  - figure 17
  - integrated crossbar switching fabric 17
  - LEDs 19
  - LEDs (figure) 19
  - LEDs (table) 20
  - LEDs description 19
  - memory options 18
  - nondisruptive restart 18
  - port interfaces 18
  - processor 18
  - redundant central arbiter 18
  - warm switchover 18

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***

## switching modules

- 12-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching modules 36

- 16-port 2-Gbps Fibre Channel (figure) 39

- 24-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching modules 36

- 24-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel switching modules 34

- 32-port 2-Gbps Fibre Channel (figure) 38

- 4/44-port 4-Gbps Host-Optimized Fibre Channel switching modules 35

- 48-port 4-Gbps Fibre Channel switching modules 35

- 48-port 8-Gbps Fibre Channel switching modules 34

- 4-port 10-Gbps Fibre Channel switching modules 37

- description 33

- downloading binary image 49, 51

- features 40

- Generation 1 modules 33

- Generation 2 modules 33

- Generation 3 modules 33

- installing 38, 45

- LEDs (table) 38, 41

- removing 45

- specifications 4

- system grounding 17

## T

- Telco racks (requirements) 5

## transceivers

- description 56

- supported SFP transceivers 56

- supported X2 transceiver 56

## troubleshooting

- contacting customer service 1

## W

- weight of modules 5

## X

### X2 transceivers

- description 56, 19

- installing 11

- removing 11

- supported (table) 20

***Send documentation comments to [mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com](mailto:mdsfeedback-doc@cisco.com).***